



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

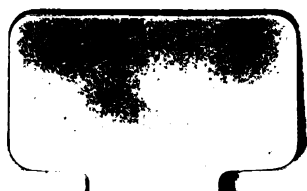
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

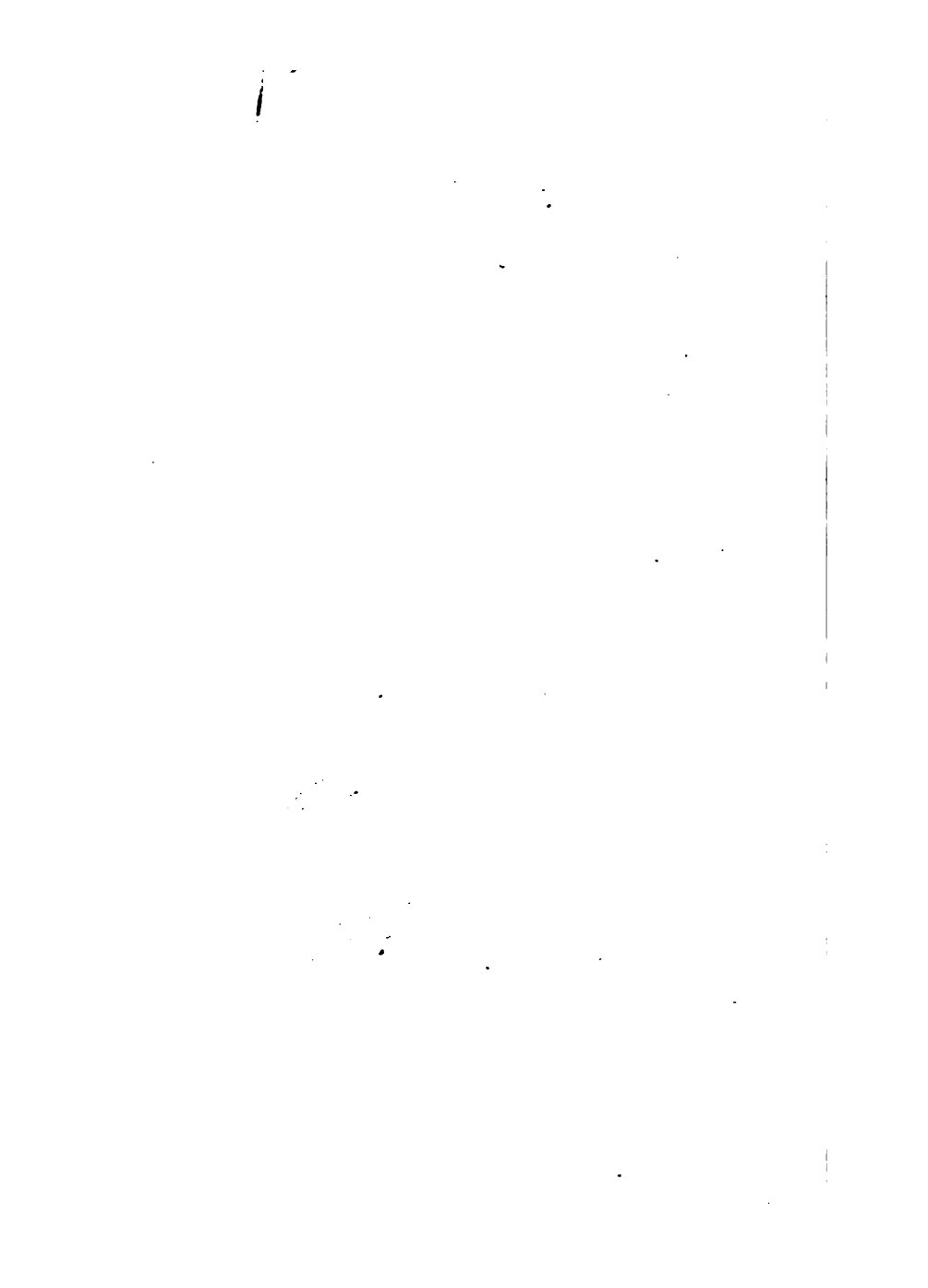
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE HISTORY OF THE
-1800-1810-1820-







The Royal School Series.



HISTORY OF ENGLAND

FOR JUNIOR CLASSES.

WITH MAPS, NOTES, AND QUESTIONS.



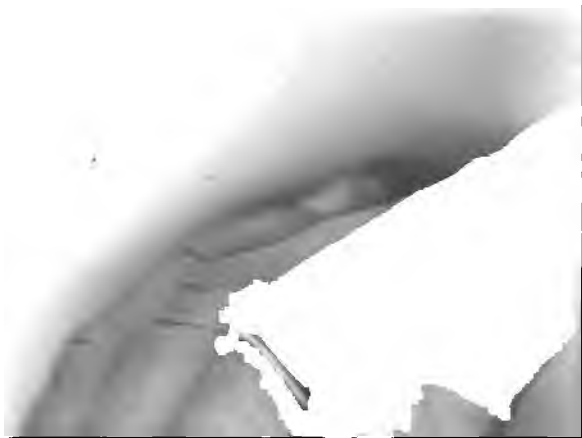
LONDON:

T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW;
EDINBURGH; AND NEW YORK.

1876.

226 h. 383.

1



The Royal School Series.

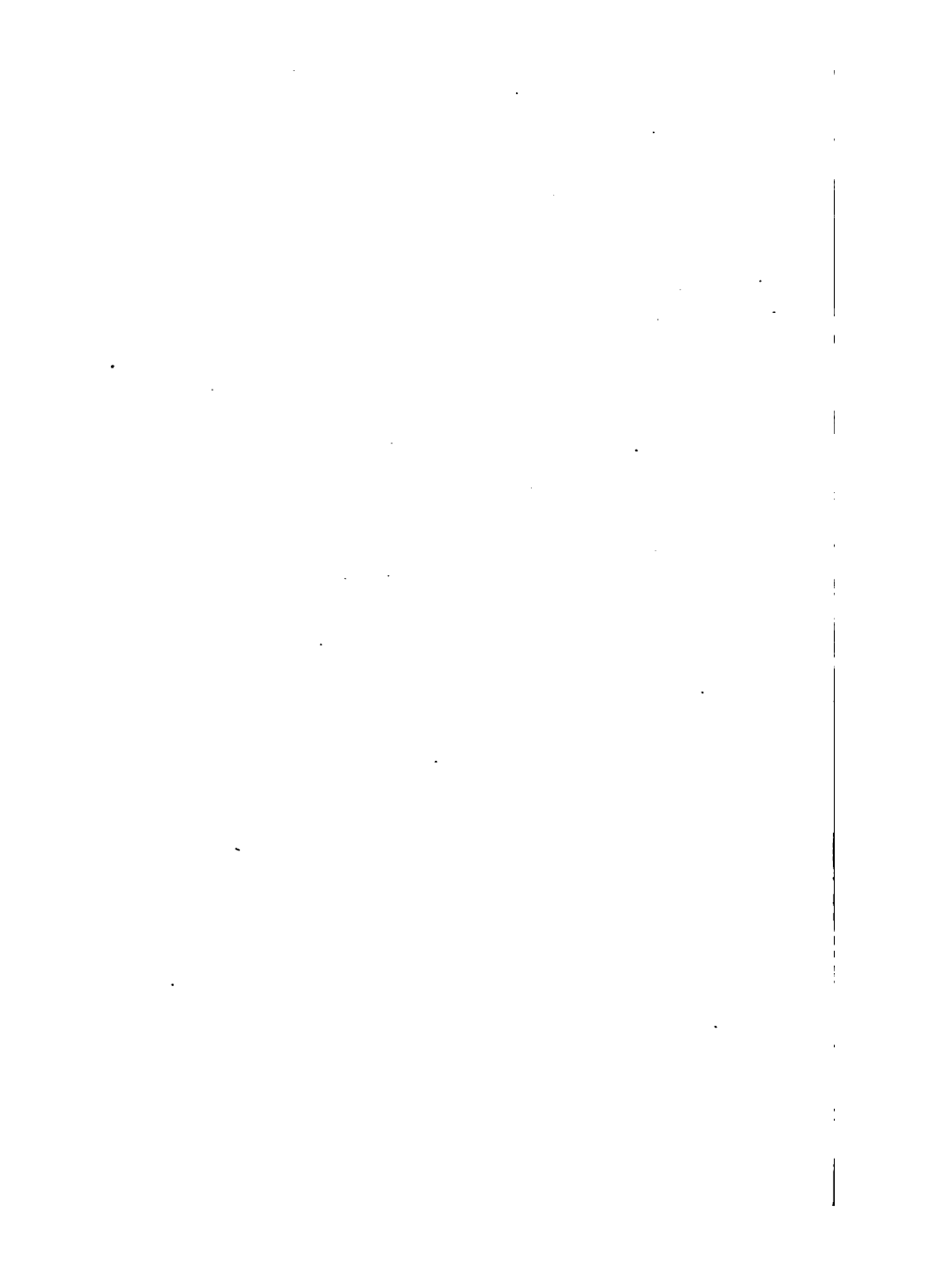


HISTORY OF ENGLAND

FOR JUNIOR CLASSES.

WITH MAPS, NOTES, AND QUESTIONS.





PREFATORY NOTE.

THIS book is intended for the use of Junior Classes, and may be employed as a reading-book when practice in the reading of historical narrative is required. It has been abridged from the "Royal" History of England, and like it is divided into Chapters according to the leading features by which each historical period is characterized. At the same time, the commencement and the close of each Dynasty and each Reign are distinctly marked. Prominence is given to the "Great Events" of English History. The Maps, Notes, and Questions will be found invaluable educational aids.

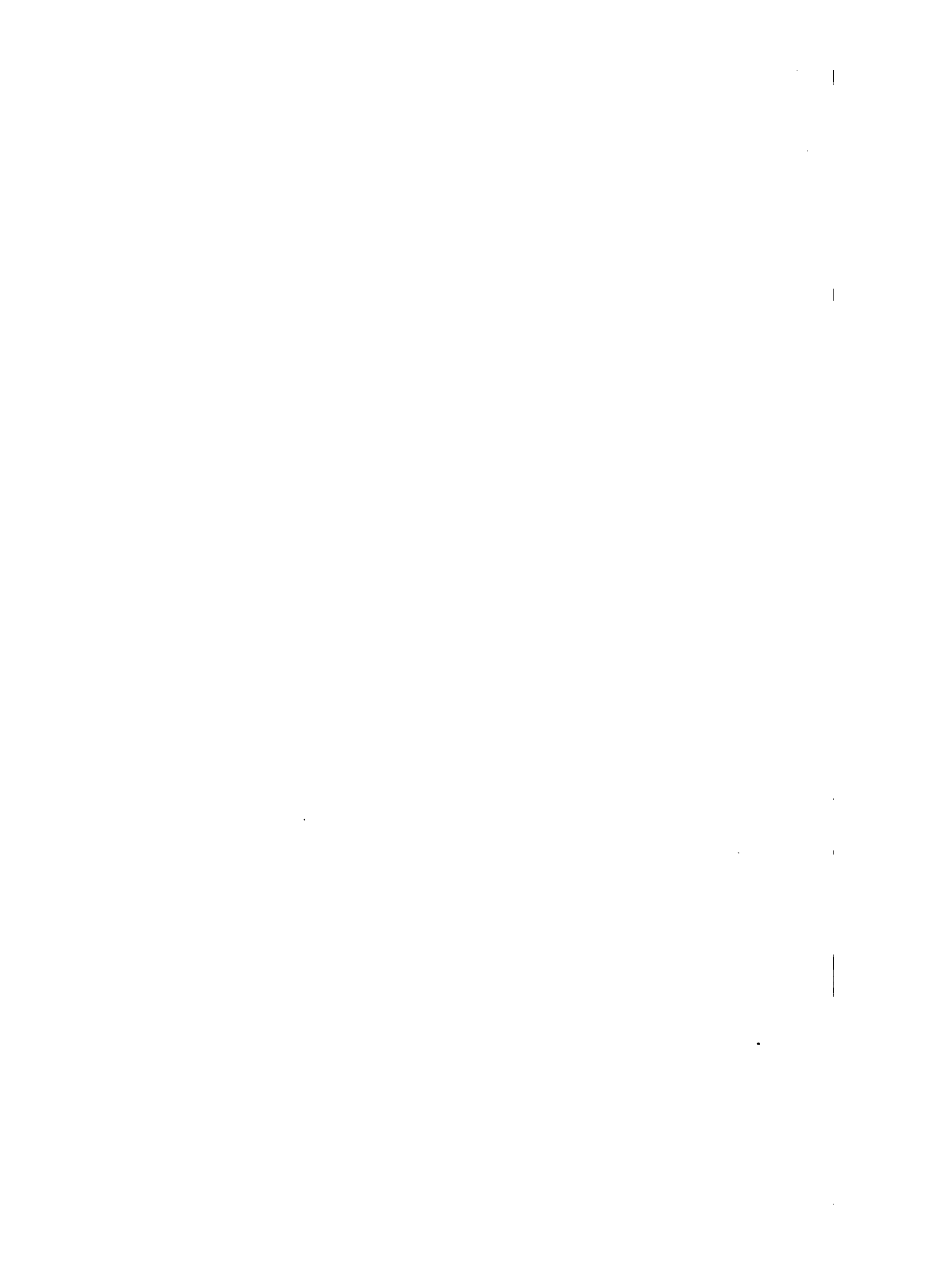
Hand-Book adapted to the "Junior" History.

DATE BOOK OF ENGLISH HISTORY. (For Junior Classes.) Pp. 64. Price 4d.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

THE "ROYAL" HISTORY OF ENGLAND. In Two Volumes, Price 1s. 6d. each; or the two in one, Price 2s. 6d.

. The Books and Chapters of the "Code" Histories correspond exactly with those of the "Royal."



Chronological Table of Contents.

INTRODUCTION.

I. Celtic Britain.....	17	84. Battle of Mons Grampius....	20
II. The Romans in Britain—		121. Rampart—Tyne and Solway..	20
B.C.		139. Antonine's Wall.....	20
55. Caesar's First Visit.....	18	208. Wall of Severus.....	21
54. Caesar's Second Visit.....	19	286. The Saxon Pirates.....	21
A.D.		304. Persecution of Christians....	22
43. Britain a Roman Province.....	19	306. Constantine the Great Pro-	
59. Overthrow of Boadicea.....	19	claimed at York.....	22
78. Agricola Governor.....	20	410. Withdrawal of the Roman	
82. Agricola's Chain of Forts.....	20	Legions.....	22

THE OLD ENGLISH KINGDOMS.

CHAPTER I.—THE ENGLISH CONQUEST.

449. Hengest and Horsa land in		457-603. Foundation of the Old	
Kent.....	24	English States.....	25

CHAPTER II.—CHRISTIANITY IN ENGLAND.

432. St. Patrick in Ireland.....	28	597. Arrival of Augustine.....	30
563. Columba in Iona.....	28	627. Paulinus at York.....	31
Æthelbert and Bertha.....	29	664. Synod of Whitby.....	31

CHAPTER III.—THE RIVAL KINGDOMS.

603. Bernicia and Deira united,		633. Edwin slain at Hatfield.....	32
and Northumbria formed... 32		784. Offa of Mercia Overlord....	33
626. Edwin of Northumbria		800. Accession of Egbert in Wessex	33
Overlord.....	32	827. Egbert of Wessex Overlord.	33

CHAPTER IV.—THE STRUGGLE WITH THE DANES.

787. The Danes on the North-east		835. Egbert defeats them at H-	
Coast.....	34	gest's Down.....	

868. They conquer East Anglia...	35	878. Alfred victorious at Ethan-	36
870. Mercia Tributary to them...	35	dune.....	36
871. <i>ALFRED</i> , King of Wessex...	35	Peace of Wedmore.....	36
Alfred defeated at Wilton...	35	892. Hasting's Invasion.....	38
876. The Danes seize Exeter.....	36	895. The Danes driven out.....	38
878. Alfred in Athelney.....	36	901. Death of Alfred.....	38

CHAPTER V.—THE DANISH CONQUEST.

912. The Norsemen settle in		978. The Witan at Caine.....	41
France.....	39	980. Æthelred the Unready levies	
924. Edward, Overlord of all		Dane-geld.....	41
Britain.....	40	1002. Massacre of the Danes.....	41
937. Æthelstan victorious at		1013. Sweyn's Invasion.....	41
Brunanburh.....	40	1016. Canute's Invasion.....	42
946. Dunstan banished.....	40	1017. Canute sole King.....	42

CHAPTER VI.—THE DANISH KINGS.

1017. <i>CANUTE</i>	43	1020. Leofric, Earl of Mercia.....	44
The Four Earldoms.....	43	1035. <i>HAROLD I.</i>	45
1020. Godwin, Earl of Wessex.....	44	1040. <i>HARDICANUTE</i>	45

CHAPTER VII.—THE ENGLISH RESTORATION.

1042. <i>EDWARD THE CONFESSOR</i> ..	46	1057. Arrival of Edward the Æthel-	
1051. Banishment of Earl Godwin		ing.....	48
and his Family.....	47	1065. Tostig expelled from Nor-	
1052. Visit of William of Normandy		thumbria.....	49
to England.....	47	1066. <i>HAROLD II.</i>	49
1053. Godwin restored.....	47	Harold victorious at Stam-	
Harold succeeds Godwin....	48	ford Bridge.....	49

CHAPTER VIII.—SOCIAL CONDITION: OLD ENGLISH PERIOD.

Government—Morality—Daily Life—The Monasteries—The Language, &c. 51

FEUDAL MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.—THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS.

1066. William lands at Pevensey..	53	1066. Negotiations.....	60
Marches to Hastings.....	59	Advance of the Normans....	61
Harold at Senlac Hill.....	60	The Death of Harold.....	62

CHAPTER II.—THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

1066. William marches on London.	64	1069. Revolt in the North.....	65
<i>WILLIAM I.</i>	64	1071. Hereward subdued and the	
1077. Revolt of the English.....	65	Conquest complete.....	66

CHAPTER III.—FEUDALISM IN ENGLAND.

1072. The Feudal System.....	67	1087. <i>WILLIAM II.</i>	68
1086. Domesday Book.....	67	1088. Odo's Plot on behalf of	
The Curfew Bell.....	67	Robert.....	68
1087. Death of the Conqueror.....	68	Odo exiled.....	69

CHAPTER IV.—THE CROWN AGAINST THE CHURCH: I. ANSELM.

1093. Anselm, Archbishop.....	69	1100. Henry marries Edith-Matilda	71
1097. Flight of Anselm.....	70	1101. Robert invades England....	71
1096. Rufus gains Normandy.....	70	1106. Robert taken prisoner at	
1100. <i>HENRY I.</i>	70	Tenchebrai.....	71
Charter of Liberties.....	70	1107. Settlement with Anselm....	71

CHAPTER V.—GROWTH OF THE BARONS' POWER.

1119. Henry secures Normandy....	72	1139. Maud's Invasion.....	74
1120. Death of Prince William....	72	1141. Battle of Lincoln.....	74
1125. The Angevin Marriage.....	72	1142. Flight of Maud.....	75
1135. <i>STEPHEN</i>	73	1152. Treaty of Winchester.....	75
1138. Battle of the Standard.....	73	1154. Death of Stephen.....	75

CHAPTER VI.—NORMAN CUSTOMS AND NORMAN LIFE.

Chivalry—The Tournament—Courts of Justice—Baronial Castles—Meals— Dress, &c.....	76
---	----

CHAPTER VII.—THE CROWN AGAINST THE CHURCH: II. BECKET.

1154. <i>HENRY II.</i>	79	1172. Henry receives the Homage	
1162. Becket, Archbishop.....	79	of the Irish.....	80
1164. Constitutions of Claren-		Capture of William of Scot-	
don.....	80	land.....	81
1170. Murder of Becket.....	80	1181. The Assize of Arms.....	81
1171. Strongbow in Ireland.....	80	Circuits of Justice.....	81

CHAPTER VIII.—ENGLAND SEVERED FROM FRANCE.

1189. Disaffection of the French		1193. Richard in Captivity.....	83
Barons.....	82	1199. French War.....	83
<i>RICHARD I.</i>	82	<i>JOHN</i>	84
1190. The Third Crusade.....	82	1204. Loss of English Possessions	
1191. Acre taken.....	82	in France.....	84

CHAPTER IX.—MAGNA CHARTA.

1208. The Papal Interdict.....	85	1215. The King at Oxford.....	86
1213. The Council in St. Paul's....	85	At Runnymede.....	86

CHAPTER X.—THE CROWN AGAINST THE BARONS.

1216. Appeal to Louis of France... 89	1258. Revolt of the Barons under HENRY III..... 89	De Montfort..... 90
1217. Defeat of Louis at Lincoln... 89	The Provisions of Oxford... 90	
1219. De Burgh, Regent..... 89	1264. The Battle of Lewes..... 90	
1225. Confirmation of the Great Charter..... 89	1265. The Commons called to Parliament..... 91	
1228. Death of Langton..... 90	Battle of Evesham..... 91	
1232. Disgrace of De Burgh..... 90	1270. Edward joins the Crusade... 91	
1236. Influx of Foreigners..... 90	1272. EDWARD I..... 91	

CHAPTER XI.—WARS WITH WALES AND SCOTLAND.

1282. Reduction of Wales..... 93	1307. EDWARD II..... 94
1292. Edward Umpire in the Scot- tish Dispute..... 93	1310. Articles of Reform..... 95
1296. Edward overruns Scotland... 93	1314. Battle of Bannockburn... 95
1297. Wallace victorious at Stir- ling Bridge..... 94	1321. Lancaster's Rising..... 95
1298. Wallace defeated at Falkirk. 94	1327. Flight of the King..... 96
1305. Execution of Wallace..... 94	EDWARD III..... 96
1307. Edward marches toward Scot- land..... 94	1328. Treaty of Northampton— Scotland Independent... 96
	1330. Execution of Mortimer..... 96
	1333. Battle of Halidon Hill..... 97

CHAPTER XII.—THE FIRST FRENCH WAR.

1338. Edward claims the French Crown..... 98	1348. The Black Plague..... 100
1340. Battle of Sluys..... 98	1351. Statute of Labourers..... 100
1346. Renewed Invasion—Battle of Crecy..... 99	1356. Battle of Poitiers—Cap- ture of King John..... 101
Battle of Nevil's Cross..... 100	1360. Treaty of Breigny..... 101
1347. Capture of Calais..... 100	1374. Weakness of the English in France..... 101

CHAPTER XIII.—THE BARONS AGAINST THE COMMONS.

1376. Barons of the Royal Council 102	1377. RICHARD II..... 103
The Good Parliament..... 102	1380. The Poll Tax..... 104
Death of the Black Prince.. 103	1381. Tyler's Insurrection..... 104
1377. Wyclif before the Bishop of London..... 103	1385. Invasion of Scotland..... 105
	1388. Battle of Otterbourne..... 105

CHAPTER XIV.—SOCIAL CONDITION: TIME OF THE ANGEVINS.

Dwellings—Wages—Dress—Sports—Learning, &c..... 106
--

CHAPTER XV.—THE LANCASTRIAN REVOLUTION.

1398. Hereford banished..... 108	1405. Capture of James I. of Scotland..... 109
1399. Richard deposed..... 108	1413. HENRY V..... 111
HENRY IV..... 108	1414. Persecution of the Lollards. 111
1401. Statute of Heretics..... 109	1417. Execution of Oldcastle..... 111
1403. Battle of Shrewsbury..... 109	

CHAPTER XVI.—THE SECOND FRENCH WAR.

1415. Henry claims the French Crown	112	1428. Siege of Orleans	118
Battle of Agincourt	112	1429. Joan of Arc	114
1419. Normandy subdued	118	1431. Death of the Maid	114
1420. Treaty of Troyes	118	1444. Truce for Two Years	114
1422. HENRY VI.	118	1451. Expulsion of the English from France	114

CHAPTER XVII.—WARS OF THE ROSES: DESTRUCTION OF FEUDALISM.

1447. Death of Gloucester and of Beaufort	115	(Lancastrians victorious)..	117
1450. Death of Suffolk	115	1461. Henry deposed	117
Cade's Rebellion	115	EDWARD IV.	118
1455. Wars of the Roses begin.	117	Battle of Towton (Yorkists victorious)	118
First Battle of St. Albans (Yorkists victorious)	117	1464. Battle of Hedgeley Moor (Yorkists victorious)	118
1459. Battle of Bloreheath (Yorkists victorious)	117	Battle of Hexham (Yorkists victorious)	118
1460. Battle of Northampton—Henry taken prisoner	117	Edward marries Lady Elizabeth Grey	118
Battle of Wakefield (Lancastrians victorious)—York slain	117	1464. Warwick quarrels with Edward	118
1461. Battle of Mortimer's Cross (Yorkists victorious)	117	1470. Flight of Edward	118
Second Battle of St. Albans	117	1471. Battle of Barnet	118
		Battle of Tewkesbury (Yorkists victorious)	118

CHAPTER XVIII.—CAXTON AND THE PRINTING-PRESS.

1468. Caxton at Bruges	120	1474. The Almonry at Westminster	120
1471. Caxton at Cologne—his first Book	120	1491. Death of Caxton	120

CHAPTER XIX.—SOCIAL CONDITION: FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

Extinction of Villanage—Government—Manor-Houses—Meals—Dramatic Performances, &c.	120
---	-----

ABSOLUTE MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.—ASCENDENCY OF THE CROWN.

1475. Renewed claim to the French Crown	122	1483. RICHARD III.	124
The Bought Treaty	122	Murder of the Princes	124
1483. EDWARD V.	123	Buckingham's Rising	124
Richard of Gloucester, Regent	123	1485. Battle of Bosworth Field.	124
Gloucester, Protector	123	HENRY VII.	125
		Henry marries Elizabeth of York	125

CHAPTER II.—AGGRANDISEMENT OF THE CROWN.

1486. Simnel's Imposture.....	126	1502. Marriage of Margaret Tudor and James IV. of Scot- land.....	128
1487. Battle of Stoke.....	127		
1492. French War.....	127	1509. <i>HENRY VIII.</i>	129
Warbeck's Imposture.....	127	Battle of Guinegate.....	129
1494. Poyning's Law in Ireland..	128	Battle of Flodden.....	130
1499. Surrender and Death of Warbeck.....	128	Epoch of Modern History..	130

CHAPTER III.—PERSONAL GOVERNMENT.

1515. Wolsey a Cardinal.....	181	1520. The Reformation in Ger- many.....	182
1518. Wolsey Papal Legate.....	181	1521. Henry, Defender of the Faith.....	182
Wolsey Minister of State..	181	1523. Wolsey and the Commons..	182
1519. Charles V. Emperor.....	181	1525. Francis I. a Prisoner.....	183
1520. The Field of the Cloth of Gold.....	182		

CHAPTER IV.—THE FALL OF WOLSEY.

1527. Doubts regarding the King's Marriage.....	184	1529. The Trial.....	185
		1530. Wolsey's Fall and Death....	185

CHAPTER V.—THE CROWN AGAINST THE POPE.

1530. The Divorce Case submitted to the Universities.....	187	1537. Birth of Prince Edward— Death of Jane Seymour..	188
1533. Cranmer, Archbishop.....	187	1539. Statute of the Six Articles..	188
Henry marries Anne Boleyn	187	1540. Henry marries Anne of Cleves.....	189
1534. Henry declared Head of the Church.....	187	Execution of Cromwell....	189
1536. Suppression of the minor Monasteries.....	187	Henry marries Catherine Howard.....	189
The Pilgrimage of Grace...	187	1542. Execution of Catherine Howard.....	189
1539. Suppression of the greater Monasteries.....	188	1543. Henry marries Catherine Parr.....	189
1536. Incorporation of Wales with England.....	188	1547. Execution of Surrey.....	189
Execution of Anne Boleyn..	188	<i>EDWARD VI.</i>	189
Jane Seymour, Queen.....	188	Hertford, Protector.....	189
1539. The Great Bible published	188	Battle of Pinkie.....	140

CHAPTER VI.—THE REFORMATION.

1549. Forty-two Articles of Re- ligion prepared.....	141	1553. Lady Jane Grey proclaimed	142
1550. Northumberland, Protector	142	<i>MARY I.</i>	142
1552. Somerset beheaded.....	142	Execution of Northumber- land.....	142

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

CHAPTER VII.—THE MARIAN REACTION.

1553. Gardiner, Chief Minister ...	143	1554. Parliament submits to Rome	144
Cranmer and Ridley im-		Execution of Rogers	144
prisoned	143	1555. Execution of Ridley and	
1554. Mary marries Philip of Spain	143	Latimer	144
Execution of Lady Jane		1556. Execution of Cranmer	144
Grey and Dudley	144	1558. Calais recovered by France..	144

CHAPTER VIII.—PROTESTANTISM RESTORED.

1558. ELIZABETH	145	1572. Execution of Norfolk	146
1562. The Thirty-nine Articles...	145	1569. Rising of the Roman Cath-	
1568. Mary Stewart in England ..	146	olics of the North	146

CHAPTER IX.—SUPREMACY AND UNIFORMITY.

1566. Rise of the Puritans	147	1586. Death of Sir Philip Sidney..	148
1559. Act of Supremacy	147	Babington's Conspiracy	148
Act of Uniformity	147	1587. Execution of Mary Stewart.	148
1583. Court of High Commission		1588. The Spanish Armada	148
gets new Powers	147	1598. Tyrone's Rebellion in Ire-	
1572. Massacre of St. Bartholomew	147	land	149
1576. Rise of the Dutch Republic.	147	1601. Execution of Essex	150
1586. Leicester in the Netherlands	148	1603. Death of Elizabeth	150

CHAPTER X.—SOCIAL CONDITION: SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

Crime—Houses—Style of Living—Sports—Revival of Learning, &c.....	151
--	-----

CHAPTER XI.—THE UNION OF THE CROWNS.

1603. JAMES I.	155	1605. The Gunpowder Plot.....	156
The Main and the Bye Plot	156	1611. Plantation of Ulster.....	157
1604. Hampton Court Conference	156	1612. Death of Prince Henry.....	157

CHAPTER XII.—KING BY DIVINE RIGHT.

1614. Supplies and Redress of		1620. Emigration of the Pilgrim	
Grievances	158	Fathers	159
James's Second Parliament.	158	1621. Degradation of Bacon	159

CHAPTER XIII.—THE CROWN AGAINST THE COMMONS.

1621. Protest of the Commons	160	1628. Death of Buckingham	161
1623. Prince Charles in Spain....	160	The Petition of Right	161
1625. CHARLES I.	160	1631. Strafford's Thorough	162
1626. Charles's Second Parliament		The Star Chamber	162
dismissed	161	1634. Ship Money	162
Revival of Benevolences	161	1640. The Short Parliament	162

CHAPTER XIV.—THE LONG PARLIAMENT.

1640. First meeting of the Long		1641. Roundhead and Cavalier...	165
Parliament	163	1642. Attempted Arrest of the	
1641. Execution of Strafford.....	164	Five Members	165
The Grand Remonstrance	164	The Militia Bill	166

CHAPTER XV.—THE CIVIL WAR.

1642. Declaration at Nottingham	167	1645. Execution of Laud	169
Battle of Edgehill	169	Battle of Naseby	170
1642. Siege of Gloucester raised by Essex	169	Battle of Philiphaugh	170
Cromwell's Ironsides	169	1646. Charles's Surrender to the Scots at Newark	170
The Solemn League and Covenant	169	1648. Pride's Purge	171
1644. Battle of Marston Moor	169	1649. Trial of the King	171
		His Execution	171

CHAPTER XVI.—THE COMMONWEALTH.

1649. The Council of Government	173	1653. Expulsion of the Long Par- liament	174
Reduction of Ireland	173	OLIVER, PROTECTOR	174
1650. Charles II. in Scotland	173	1658. RICHARD, PROTECTOR	175
Dunbar Drive	173	1659. Resignation of Richard	175
1651. Battle of Worcester	173		

CHAPTER XVII.—RESTORATION OF MONARCHY.

1659. The Parliament reinstated	176	1664. Conventicle Act	178
1660. A Convention	177	1665. Five-Mile Act	178
CHARLES II.	177	War with Holland	178
1661. Restoration of Episcopacy	177	The Plague in London	179
Corporation Act	177	1666. The Fire of London	179
1663. Act of Uniformity	178	Bullion Green	179

CHAPTER XVIII.—THE STRUGGLE RENEWED.

1668. The Triple Alliance	180	1679. The Council of Thirty	182
1670. Secret Treaty of Dover	180	Habeas Corpus Act	182
The Cabal Ministry	181	1680. Whig and Tory	183
1673. The Test Act—applied to the Duke of York	181	1681. Parliament at Oxford	183
1678. The "Popish Plot"	181	Charles an Absolute Mon- arch	183

CHAPTER XIX.—ABSOLUTE MONARCHY RESTORED.

1683. The Eye House Plot	184	1685. The Bloody Assize	186
1685. JAMES II.	184	1686. The Dispensing Power	186
Monmouth's Rebellion	185	1687. James's Interference with the Universities	186
Sedgemoor	185		

CHAPTER XX.—THE REVOLUTION.

1688. Declaration of Indulgence	187	1688. Flight of James	188
Trial of the Seven Bishops	187	1689. Declaration of Right	188
William of Orange	187	The Revolution complete	188

CHAPTER XXI.—SOCIAL CONDITION: THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

Population—Chief Towns—Coffee-houses, &c.	189
---	-----

LIMITED MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.—CONSTITUTIONAL GOVERNMENT.

1689. WILLIAM III. and MARY II. 193	1690. Battle of the Boyne..... 194
Toleration Act..... 194	1692. Massacre of Glencoe..... 195
Bill of Rights..... 194	1694. Triennial Parliaments Bill.. 196
Killiecrankie..... 194	Death of Queen Mary..... 197
Siege of Londonderry..... 194	1695. The Darien Scheme..... 197

CHAPTER II.—THE GRAND ALLIANCE: THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

1688. Origin of the Cabinet..... 198	1704. Battle of Blenheim..... 200
1701. War of the Spanish Succession..... 198	Capture of Gibraltar..... 200
Act of Settlement..... 199	1706. Battle of Ramillies..... 201
The Grand Alliance..... 199	1707. Battle of Almanza..... 201
1702. Death of William III. 199	1708. Battle of Oudenarde..... 201
ANNE..... 199	1709. Battle of Malplaquet..... 201
Marlborough Captain-General 199	1713. Treaty of Utrecht..... 201
	1714. Treaty of Rastadt..... 201

CHAPTER III.—THE ASCENDENCY OF THE COMMONS.

1704. Harley in the Ministry..... 202	1710. Harley Premier..... 203
1707. The Scottish Union..... 202	1711. Marlborough dismissed from his office..... 204
1708. Mrs. Masham in the Palace. 203	1712. Harley's creation of Peers 204
1708. Dismissal of Harley..... 203	1714. GEORGE I..... 204
1710. Trial of Sacheverell..... 203	

CHAPTER IV.—THE 'FIFTEEN: THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

1715. Rising of the Earl of Mar in Scotland..... 208	1716. The Septennial Act..... 209
1716. Departure of the Pretender. 208	1718. The Quadruple Alliance... 209
	1720. The South Sea Scheme..... 209

CHAPTER V.—WALPOLE IN POWER.

1721. Walpole Premier..... 211	1733. The Excise Bill..... 212
1722. Bishop Atterbury banished. 211	1737. Death of Queen Caroline... 212
1724. Wood's Halfpence..... 211	1739. Spanish War..... 212
1727. GEORGE II..... 211	1742. Resignation of Walpole.... 213

CHAPTER VI.—THE 'FORTY-FIVE.

1740. War of the Austrian Succession..... 213	1745. Invasion of England..... 215
1743. Battle of Dettingen..... 214	1746. Battle of Falkirk..... 215
1745. Battle of Fontenoy..... 214	Battle of Culloden..... 216
Battle of Prestonpans.... 215	Flight of Prince Charles... 216
	1748. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.. 217

CHAPTER VII.—THE GREAT COMMONER.

1746. Pitt Paymaster of the Forces 218	1757. The Newcastle-Pitt Ministry..... 219
1756. The Seven Years' War... 218	1758. The Black Hole of Calcutta. 219
Admiral Byng shot..... 218	

1757. Clive's Victory at Plassey ..	220	1760. <i>GEORGE III.</i>	222
1759. The Plains of Abraham ..	221	1761. The Family Compact	222
1760. Conquest of Canada	222	Resignation of Pitt	222

CHAPTER VIII.—LIFE IN ENGLAND: THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

Streets—Drees—Promenades, &c.	223
------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER IX.—AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

1763. Treaty of Paris	225	1777. Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga	228
Prosecution of John Wilkes	225	1778. Death of Chatham	228
1765. The American Stamp Act	226	1781. Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown	228
1775. Battle of Bunker Hill	227	1783. Independence acknowledged	229
1776. Declaration of Independence	228		

CHAPTER X.—INDIA.

1765. Lord Clive in Bengal	229	1783. William Pitt, the younger, Premier	230
1773. The Regulating Act—Warren Hastings	230	The Board of Control	230
1780-83. War with Hyder Ali	230	1788-95. Impeachment of Warren Hastings	231
1783. Coalition Ministry	230	1799. Annexation of Mysore	232
Fox's India Bill	230		

CHAPTER XI.—THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

1789. The Bastille stormed	233	1797. Mutiny at the Nore	234
1791. Canada Constitutional Act	233	Battle off Cape St. Vincent	234
1793. Louis XVI. and his Queen guillotined	233	Battle off Camperdown	234
1795. First Coalition against France	234	1798. Battle of the Nile	235
		1801. Battle of Alexandria	235
		The Irish Union	236

CHAPTER XII.—THE CONTINENTAL WARS.

1799. Second Coalition against France	237	1804. Third Coalition against France	239
1800. Armed Neutrality—League of Northern Powers	237	1805. Battle of Trafalgar	239
1801. Bombardment of Copen- hagen	238	1806. Death of Pitt and of Fox	240
1802. Treaty of Amiens	238	Fourth Coalition against France	240
1803. Renewal of War	238	Berlin Decree	240
1804. Pitt's Second Ministry	238	1807. Orders in Council	240
Napoleon, Emperor	239	Second Bombardment of Copenhagen	241

CHAPTER XIII.—THE PENINSULAR WAR.

1808. Joseph Buonaparte, King of Spain	242	1810. Torres Vedras	244
Battle of Vimiera	242	Burdett Riots in London	244
1809. Battle of Corunna	242	1812. Battle of Salamanca	245
Battle of Talavera	243	1813. Battle of Vitoria	245
The Walcheren Expedition	244	Battle of Toulouse	245
		First Peace of Paris	245

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS.

XV

CHAPTER XIV.—WATERLOO.

1815. The Vienna Congress.....	247	1815. Battle of Waterloo.....	249
Return of Napoleon to France	247	Napoleon at St. Helena.....	250
Engagements at Quatre Bras		Second Peace of Paris....	250
and Ligny.....	248	The National Debt.....	250

CHAPTER XV.—PARLIAMENTARY REFORM.

1815. Great Distress in England —The Corn Act.....	251	1820. The Cato Street Conspir- acy.....	253
1817. Riots and Seditious Meet- ings.....	251	1828. Wellington Premier.....	254
1819. The affair of Peterloo.....	252	Repeal of the Test and Cor- poration Acts.....	254
Birth of the Princess Vic- toria.....	252	1829. Roman Catholic Emanci- pation.....	254
1820. Death of George III.....	253	1830. <i>WILLIAM IV.</i>	254
<i>GEORGE IV.</i>	253	1832. The Reform Act.....	255

CHAPTER XVI.—FINANCIAL REFORM.

1833. Emancipation of Slaves....	256	1842. Sliding-Scale Corn Act.....	258
1834. New Poor Law.....	256	The Income Tax.....	258
1835. Municipal Reform Act.....	256	1843. Agitation for Repeal in Ire- land.....	259
1837. <i>VICTORIA</i>	257	Conquest of Sindh.....	259
Canadian Rebellion.....	257	1845. Sikh War.....	259
1838. Anti-Corn-Law League.....	257	1846. Repeal of the Corn Laws....	260
The Chartists.....	257		

CHAPTER XVII.—COLONIAL PROGRESS.

1847. Responsible Government in Canada.....	261	1851. The Great Exhibition.....	262
1849. The Punjab Annexed.....	262	Australian Gold.....	263
		1852. Death of Wellington.....	263

CHAPTER XVIII.—THE CRIMEAN WAR AND THE INDIAN MUTINY.

1853. Russia in the Principalities.	264	1855. Evacuation of Sebastopol..	266
1854. Declaration of War by Eng- land and France.....	264	Bombardment of Sveaborg..	266
Battle of the Alma.....	264	1857. The Indian Mutiny.....	266
Battle of Balaklava.....	264	Siege of Delhi.....	267
Battle of Inkermann.....	265	1858. Relief of Lucknow.....	268
1855. The Palmerston Ministry....	266	Abolition of the East India Company.....	269

CHAPTER XIX.—PROGRESS OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

Steam-ships and Railways—The Penny Postage and the Telegraph—Iron- clads and Turret-ships—African Exploration, &c.....	269
---	-----

CHAPTER XX.—THE CONSTITUTION.

Its Composite Character—The Sovereign—The House of Lords—The House of Commons—The Cabinet—Law-making.....	273
Colonies and Dependencies	276

APPENDIX—Summary of Recent Events.....	277
Pronunciation of Proper Names	281
INDEX	283

SKETCH MAPS.

Roman Wall—Forth and Clyde ..	21	Sedgemoor	185
Roman Wall—Tyne and Solway ..	21	East of Ireland—The Boyne	195
The English Migrations	25	The Low Countries	200
The Old English Kingdoms	27	Bengal—Plassay	219
The Strait of Dover—Hastings	59	Canada—Quebec.....	221
France in Provinces	74	The United States	227
Banks of the Thames—Runnymede.....	87	Southern India.....	231
Banks of the Severn—Evesham ..	91	The Nile and Aboukir Bay.....	235
Basin of the Forth—Stirling	94	The South-west of Spain.....	243
North-west of France—Crecy and Agincourt	99	The North-east of Spain	246
England—Wars of the Roses	116	Belgium—Waterloo.....	248
England—The Civil War	168	The Punjab	260
		The Crimea	265
		Delhi and Oudh.....	267

GENEALOGICAL TREES.

The Old English Line	56	Connecting the Angevins and the Tudors.....	125
The Norman Line	57	Connecting the Tudors and the Stewarts.....	155
Connecting the Norman Kings and the Angevins	78	Connecting the Stewarts and the House of Brunswick.....	206
Balliol and Bruce	93	The House of Brunswick and its branches	207
Descendants of Philip III. of France	98		
Connecting the Angevins and the Houses of Lancaster and York ..	110		

ENGLAND.

INTRODUCTION.

I.—CELTIC BRITAIN.

Before 55 B.C.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. The Celts. | 10. Agricola's Forts. |
| 2. Their Condition and Customs. | 11. Agricola in Scotland. |
| 3. State of the Country. | 12. The Earthen Ramparts. |
| 4. The Mistress of the World. | 13. The Wall of Severus. |
| 5. Caesar's First Visit to Britain. | 14. The Saxon Pirates. |
| 6. Caesar's Second Visit. | 15. Christianity in Britain. |
| 7. Britain a Roman Province. | 16. The Romans Withdraw. |
| 8. Boadicea. | 17. Effects of the Roman Occupation. |
| 9. Agricola in Britain. | 18. Traces in the Language. |

1. THE earliest inhabitants of Britain of whom anything is certainly known were **Celts**—people of the same race as the early inhabitants of Gaul (France). They were a brave and hardy people, fond of war and the chase; but civilization and the useful arts had made little progress among them when the Romans first came in contact with them, in the first century before the Christian era.

2. The natives of the interior lived a pastoral life. They sowed no corn: they lived on milk and flesh. Those in the far north were often obliged to feed on the roots and fruits that grew wild in the woods. They clad themselves in skins, leaving their limbs and chests bare; and these they stained blue with the juice of a plant called *woad*. Those who lived in the south-east were, from intercourse with the Continent, more civilized than the others. They wore woollen clothes, woven in many colours; and they adorned themselves with chains and ornaments of bronze, and sometimes of silver and gold. The

Welsh, and the Gaels of Scotland and of Ireland, are the descendants of these ancient Britons.

3. In the early period referred to, the country was covered with marsh and forest, except in the south-east, where there were some patches of rudely-tilled ground. The rude monumental stones found in different parts of England, the cromlechs¹ of Anglesey, and the stone circles of Stonehenge,² are by some supposed to be Celtic remains. Others, however, believe them to be relics of an earlier race.

II.—THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN.

55 B.C. to 410 A.D.—465 years.

4. The little that we know regarding the Celtic inhabitants of Britain we have learned from the **Romans**, who first visited the island in 55 B.C. The Roman Republic was at that time the most powerful State in the world. Indeed, nearly the whole of the then known world was subject to its sway. For nearly a century Greece³ had been a Roman province; and Carthage,⁴ Rome's most powerful rival, had been lying in ruins. Her dominions extended from the Euphrates in the east to the Atlantic in the west, and from the Danube and the Rhine to Africa; and she styled herself, not unreasonably, the Mistress of the World.

5. The general who had pushed the Roman conquests furthest northward was **Julius Caesar**.⁵ While subduing the tribes of Gaul, he had heard of Britain and the Britons. He was ambitious of being the first Roman to visit the unexplored land, and probably of adding it to his conquests. He crossed

¹ *Cromlech*.—A large flat stone resting on two or three stone uprights. Cromlechs are found in Anglesey and other parts of Wales, and in Devonshire and Cornwall in England.

² *Stonehenge*.—Two circles of huge stones in the south of Salisbury Plain, in Wiltshire. The general opinion till lately was that they were the remains of a Druidical temple. It has recently been surmised that their purpose was astronomical.

³ *Greece*.—Made a Roman province in 146 B.C.

⁴ *Carthage*.—On north coast of Africa, near Tunis; founded 878 B.C.

⁵ *Julius Caesar*.—One of the greatest of the Romans, born 100 B.C. He became the most powerful man in the State. His rivals suspected him of aiming at sovereignty, and assassinated him in the Senate House, 43 B.C.

the Strait of Dover with 80 ships and 12,000 troops. The Britons defended their shores bravely, and the Romans had difficulty in landing. At length the standard-bearer of the Tenth Legion¹ leaped into the sea, crying, "Follow me;" and the soldiers dashed through the surf. Once on shore, Roman discipline prevailed over rude valour, and the invaders made good their ground. Four days later, however, a storm shattered the fleet; and Caesar, afraid lest his retreat should be cut off, repaired his ships and returned to Gaul. He had been absent only seventeen days.

6. Caesar returned, the following summer, with an army of 32,000 foot and 2,000 horse. He forced the natives to submit to him, and to promise a yearly tribute to Rome. The Roman troops were then withdrawn to Gaul. The chief results of Caesar's visits to Britain were, that they made the island and the civilized world better known to each other, and that their commercial dealings were increased.

7. The Romans left Britain undisturbed for nearly a century after Caesar's departure. They returned in 43 A.D., and then the Roman conquest of Britain really began. They established themselves on the north bank of the Thames, and penetrated westward as far as Southampton Water. Britain then became a Roman province, ruled by Roman Governors, and often visited by Roman Emperors.

8. In the year 58 the Britons revolted, and threatened to drive the Romans out of their island. They were led by Boadicea, Queen of the Icenians (in what is now Norfolk). While the greater part of the Roman army was in the north, they massacred the garrisons of Colchester and London. On its return, the Romans defeated the Britons with terrible slaughter. Boadicea fled, and soon afterwards died. It is said that she poisoned herself, to avoid falling into the hands of the Romans.

9. To Julius Agricola² belongs the credit of having made

¹ Legion.—In the Roman army a body of soldiers, comprising troops of all arms,—infantry, cavalry, and engineers. It rarely exceeded 6,000 in number, and may be regarded as a complete army in miniature.

² Julius Agricola.—Born 37, died 93 A.D. He became Consul (chief magistrate) of Rome in 77. Said to have been poisoned by order of a jealous emperor.

Britain a Roman province in more than in name. Agricola was fortunate in having his operations described by his son-in-law Tacitus, the Roman historian. From his writings, we know that Agricola was a wise and humane ruler, as well as a skilful soldier. He penetrated further north than any Roman general had done before him; and he reconciled the natives to the Roman rule by introducing among them the arts of peace and the manners of civilized life.

10. In the year 80 A.D. he entered **Albin** or **Caledonia** (Scotland), and drove the native Britons northward before him. He advanced with his army as far as to the Tay; but hopeless of being able to hold all the land he had overrun, he resolved to fix on the line of the Forth and the Clyde, where the island is narrowest, as the northern boundary of the province. Between the estuaries of these rivers he threw up, in 82 A.D., a **chain of forts** to guard the frontier.

11. Agricola subsequently made two incursions into Caledonia. In the latter of these, in 84 A.D., he gained a great victory over the Britons, at a place called **Mons Grampius**,¹ or Graupius. Agricola caused his fleet to examine the coasts of Britain. It sailed round the country, and discovered that it was an island. Agricola left Britain in 85 A.D.

12. The continued attacks of the Caledonians during the next thirty-five years had the effect of making the Romans fall back from Agricola's line of forts. In 121, an **earthen rampart**, afterwards called the Picts' Wall, was thrown up between the Tyne and the Solway Firth. In 139, however, the lost ground was recovered, at least for a time. In that year the Caledonians were driven once more beyond Agricola's forts. These forts were connected and strengthened by an **earthen rampart**, called, after the Emperor, Antonine's Wall, and in later times Graham's or Grime's Dike.

13. This, however, did not check the inroads of the North Britons. The Roman governors tried to quiet them with

¹ *Mons Grampius*.—Ardoch, in Perthshire, 8 miles north of Dunblane, has generally been named as the scene of this battle, in the belief that it was

fought near the Grampian Mountains. The Roman camp near Ardoch, too, is the most complete example of such structures in the country.



THE ROMAN WALL BETWEEN THE TYNE AND THE SOLWAY.



THE ROMAN WALL BETWEEN THE FORTH AND THE CLYDE.

bribes; but that plan failed. At length the Emperor **Severus** was obliged to visit the island in person. So infirm was he with age and disease that he had to be carried **208** on a litter at the head of his army; yet he led it **A.D.** through the mountain fastnesses, and reached the shores of the Moray Firth. In this expedition he lost 50,000 men, and to little purpose; for, on his return, he again withdrew the frontier to the Tyne and the Solway. He strengthened the rampart between the Tyne and the Solway with a wall, which still bears his name. The Romans never succeeded in permanently extending their conquests further north.

14. South Britain continued quiet and prosperous under Roman rule till the later part of the third century, when its eastern shores began to be infested by pirates from the opposite shores of the North Sea. The Romans called them **Saxons**; and in 286 they appointed an officer, with the title, "Count of the Saxon Shore," whose special duty it was to watch for and to repel their attacks.

15. Among the Romans who settled in Britain there were some Christians. Christianity is said to have been introduced into the island before the end of the first century. During the

fierce persecution in the end of the third century, several Britons suffered death. Chief of them was **Alban**,¹ who died at Verulam in 304. The persecution was checked by Constantius Chlorus, who became Emperor in 305; and whose wife, Helena, was a British lady. He died in 306, at York, where his son, **Constantine the Great**, was proclaimed Emperor.

16. At last the incursions of the Goths and other northern tribes into Italy became so frequent, that the Roman soldiers were withdrawn from Britain to guard the heart of the
410 Empire. Levies of the British youth were employed
 A.D. in the Roman service, in Gaul and elsewhere on the Continent. In 410, the Roman Emperor, finding it advisable to contract the limits of the Empire, withdrew the Roman legions, and all signs of authority.

17. The Romans taught the Britons to develop the resources of their country. They opened up the island by making roads paved with stone. These were called *Strata*; whence our word Street. They also laid the foundation of a thriving trade, Rome and her continental provinces affording a good market for British produce. The chief exports at this time were corn, cheese, lime, chalk, oysters, and pearls. British cattle, horses, and dogs were much prized; and large supplies of tin, lead, iron, with some gold and silver, were drawn from the island. A gold coinage was in use shortly after Caesar's time. Specimens have been found stamped with figures of cattle.

18. As the Romans were essentially a military nation, the words which they left behind them in the language relate to their position in the island, as an army in occupation of a conquered land. Their towns were military stations, strongly fortified, and were called in Latin *castra*, or "camps." This word can be recognized in various forms in such names as Chester, Winchester, Leicester, and Doncaster. The Latin word *colonia* can be traced in Lincoln and Colchester; and the city of Bath, although not now called by a Roman name, was a leading Roman watering-place, as recent discoveries of long-buried temples and statues have shown.

¹ *Alban*.—After him the church and town of St. Albans (Hertfordshire) were named. St. Albans occupies the site of the ancient Verulam.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the earliest known inhabitants of Britain? What kind of people were they? When did the Romans first come in contact with them?

2. How did the natives of the interior live? How were they clad? How did they decorate their bodies? Who were more civilised than these? Who are descendants of these ancient Britons?

3. With what was the country then covered? Where was the ground partially tilled? What are cromlechs and stone circles by some supposed to be? And by others?

4. From whom have we derived our knowledge of the Celtic Britons? What was then the position of Rome? How far did her dominions extend?

5. Who had pushed the Roman arms furthest northward? When did he hear of Britain? What led him to visit it? With what army did he do so? How did the natives behave? What was the decisive step? How long did the Romans remain on the island on this occasion?

6. When did Caesar return? With what army? What did he accomplish? What were the chief results of Caesar's visits to Britain?

7. How long was it before the Romans returned? Where did they establish themselves? What did Britain then become?

8. When did the Britons revolt? Who led them? What garrisons did they massacre? How was this cruelty revenged? What was the end of Boadicea?

9. What Roman general really subdued Britain? By whom were his do-

ings described? What kind of man was Agricola? How did he reconcile the natives to Roman rule?

10. When did he enter Caledonia? How far did he penetrate into the country? Where did he fix the frontier of the province? Why? How did he guard it?

11. When did Agricola make his last incursion into Caledonia? Whom did he defeat? Where? What discovery did his fleet make? When did Agricola leave Britain?

12. What was the effect of the continued attacks of the Caledonians? Where was a rampart built in 121? When was the lost ground recovered? What wall was then built?

13. What plan for quieting the Britons was then tried? With what result? Who was then obliged to visit the island? How far northward did he go? What shows that this expedition was of little use?

14. Who began to infest the eastern shores of Britain in the third century? What officer did the Romans therefore appoint?

15. When is Christianity said to have been introduced? In what persecution did Britons suffer? Who was the chief martyr? What Emperor died at York? Who was proclaimed there?

16. What led to the withdrawal of the Roman troops from Britain? In what year did they finally leave the island?

17. How did the Romans open up the island? What were the chief exports from Britain?

18. To what do the words left by the Romans in the island relate? Give examples.

THE OLD ENGLISH KINGDOMS.

CHAPTER I.

THE ENGLISH CONQUEST.

449 to 603 A.D.—154 Years.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. Helplessness of the Britons—
The Picts and the Scots. | 3. The Three English Tribes. |
| 2. The Coming of the English. | 4. The English States. |
| | 5. The Welsh States. |

1. THE Britons, who had lived in peace under Roman protection, were in a wretched plight when left to themselves. The Picts and the Scots, breaking through the ungarded walls, pillaged the northern country. The Vikings¹ of the North Sea coasts, who had hardly been kept in check by the Roman fleets, descending on the east and the south, sailed up the rivers in their light flat-bottomed skiffs, burning and slaying without mercy. Vortigern, a British prince, is said to have asked the aid of the Vikings against the Picts. The men he invited were Jutes, or people of Jutland; men of great size, with blue eyes, ruddy complexion, and yellow hair; practised in war, using the axe, the sword, the spear, and the mace.

2. The story of the Teutonic settlement in Britain, though true in some points, rests on uncertain tradition. It is, that two Jutish chiefs, named Hengest and Horsa,² were hired by Vortigern, and landed at Ebbsfleet, on the coast of Thanet in Kent. After they had repelled the enemies of Vortigern, they turned their arms against himself, seized Kent, and invited their kindred over to share the spoil. For more than a century after this, bands of these Teutonic invaders continued to pour on the southern and eastern shores of Britain, driving the inhabitants west and north before

¹ Vikings.—That is, “sons of the *vic*” or *vic*, the Norse word for a bay or creek. The word, therefore, means bay-dwellers, or creekers. It should be remembered that the termination is *-ing*, not *-king*.

² Hengest and Horsa.—“Hengest” means *horse*, and “Horsa” means *mare*. As the standard of Kent has been a horse from early times, the story has been supposed to mean that the Jutes were led by their standards.

them. They came not only as soldiers to conquer the country, but as colonists to occupy it with their wives and children. The Britons, having for centuries felt the scourge of the Saxons, called all the invaders by that name; but, in truth, they belonged to three tribes—the Jutes, the Saxons, and the Angles or Anglians.



3. The **Jutes**¹ settled in Kent and on the Isle of Wight. The **Saxons**, from **Holstein**² and **Friesland**³ settled chiefly in the south. The **Angles**, from **Schleswig**,⁴ landed on the east

¹ *Jutes*.—By some the name *Jute* is held to be the same as *Geat*; that is, *Goth*. The name *Jutland* has no reference to land jutting. It means simply the land of the Jutes. *Wight* is probably the same word as *Geat* and *Jute*.

² *Holstein*.—A duchy of Germany (formerly of Denmark).

³ *Friesland*.—In Holland; south and east of the *Zuider Zee*.

⁴ *Schleswig*.—North of Holstein. Part of Schleswig is still called *Angeln*.



coast and soon spread over the midland and northern districts, occupying most of the land. All these were kinsmen, brothers, as it were, of the same family. They spoke the same tongue—**English**; they worshipped the same gods (chief of whom was Odin or Woden); and they were ruled by the same laws and customs. When they had made the land fairly their own, they

called it after themselves, England, **England**,—"the land of the English."

4. The number of independent States¹ was constantly changing. The following list comprises the whole of them:—

- I. **Kent**, founded by Jutes under Hengest, 457 A.D.
- II. **Sussex** (South Saxons), founded 490 A.D.
- III. **Wessex** (West Saxons), founded by Cerdic, 519 A.D.
- IV. **Essex** (East Saxons), founded 527 A.D.
- V. **Middlesex** (Middle Saxons), soon absorbed in Essex.
- VI. **Bernicia** (Anglians), founded 547 A.D.
- VII. **Deira** (Anglians), combined with Bernicia into **Northumbria**, 603 A.D.
- VIII. **East Anglia** (Anglians), founded 576 A.D.; divided into North-folk and South-folk.
- IX. **Middle Anglia** (Anglians), west of East Anglia.
- X. **Southumbria** (Anglians), south of the Humber.
- XI. **Mercia**, or the **Marches**, (including **Middle Anglia** and **Southumbria**), the midland region, from East Anglia to Wales, and from the Humber to the Thames; founded 582 A.D.

5. The **Welsh**,² as the English called the Britons, fought bravely for their country. Their chief leader was **Arthur**, King of the Silures in South Wales; but much of his history is legendary, being derived from poets and chroniclers who, long afterwards,³ wrote about him and his "Knights of the Round Table." Still, there is no reason to doubt that he gained many victories over the heathen, as the Welsh, who were then Christians, called the English. He gained a great victory over the West Saxons at **Mount Badon** (Badbury, Dorsetshire), which checked the advance of the West Saxons for a whole generation. Shortly after 552, however, the West Saxons crossed the Thames, and advanced northward and westward. The Welsh were now driven into the remote west, and were separated into three provinces,—**West Wales** (Cornwall and Dorset), **North Wales** (Wales proper), and **Cumbria**.

¹ *Independent States*.—The name "Heptarchy" used to be applied to these States, in the belief that there were seven separate settlements, and seven independent kingdoms. But the number of States exceeded seven, while the number of independent States was generally much smaller. Besides, the word "Heptarchy" means properly government by seven persons, not seven governments. For these reasons the

name has been abandoned.

² *Welsh*.—That is, "foreigners," or "barbarians." The Greeks, in like manner, called all those who spoke languages which they did not understand, "barbarians."

³ *Long afterwards*.—The legends of Arthur had their origin among the Celts of Brittany, and were first embodied in history by Geoffrey of Monmouth, who died in 1154 A.D.

QUESTIONS.—1. In what state were the Britons after the departure of the Romans? Who harassed them in the north? Who, in the east and the south? Whose aid did they ask? Whence did these men come? What was their character?

2. On what does the story of the Teutonic settlement of Britain rest? The names of the Jutish leaders? Where did they land? When? What did they do after they had repelled the Picts? How long, after this, did Teutonic bands continue to arrive? What did the Britons call them? Why? To what different tribes did they belong?

3. Where did the Jutes settle? Where did the Saxons? Whence did they come? Whence did the Anglians come? Where did they settle? Which tribe occupied most of the land? What had the three tribes in common? What did they call the land?

4. What is said regarding the number of separate States? Name those which at any time had a separate standing.

5. What did the English call the Britons? Who was their chief leader? Whence is his history derived? Where did he gain a great victory over the English? Into what parts of the country were the Welsh afterwards driven?

CHAPTER II.

CHRISTIANITY IN ENGLAND.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Early Apostles of Christianity in Britain. 2. Columba and Augustine. 3. Bertha and her Chaplain. 4. Æthelbert's Letter to Gregory the Great. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Gregory and the English Slaves. 6. Arrival of the Missionaries 7. Their Public Reception. 8. Augustine first Archbishop of Canterbury. 9. Paulinus first Archbishop of York. |
|--|---|

1. It was not long until the great spiritual power known as the Church of Rome, which arose on the ruins of Pagan Rome, began to extend its influence to the British Isles. **432** A.D. In 432 A.D., Pope Celestine sent a priest, afterwards known as St. Patrick, to convert the Scots in Ireland. More than a century later (about 563 A.D.), Columba of Donegal, a man of noble birth and remarkable qualities, **563** A.D. landed with twelve monks on the Scottish coast. Their object was the conversion of the Picts, as the natives of Caledonia, or Scotland, were then called. Settling in Iona, a bare little island south-west of Mull, Columba, the Apostle of Scotland, established there a school of teachers and preachers, who did noble missionary work in Scotland and in the north of England during those dark times.

2. Columba was a missionary in the true sense. Augustine, who was sent from Rome by Gregory the Great in 597 A.D., came rather as an ambassador, and his object was to plant the Papal power on the shores of Britain. The landing of August-

tine cannot therefore properly be called the first introduction of Christianity into England. Christianity was there before; and its lamp was shining, though with faint and fitful gleams, by many a humble hearth far away among the mountains of Wales and the islands of Scotland.¹

3. *Æthelbert*, an *Aesking*¹ of Kent, had married *Bertha* (*Bercta*), daughter of the Frankish King of Paris, and a professed Christian. Within a church at **Canterbury** the chaplain of this lady, who had come with her from Gaul, held a regular Christian service, to which curiosity, rather than any deeper motive, attracted many of the Kentish people. *Æthelbert* went on worshipping his idols, *Thor* and *Odin*, for fully thirty years after his marriage; but he must in the meantime have grown familiar with some of the doctrines preached in the little chapel of *St. Martin*. The ground was therefore somewhat prepared for the operations of *Augustine* and his associates, and their labours were correspondingly lightened.

4. A letter from *Æthelbert* to *Gregory*, requesting a mission to Britain, was the first step in this important transaction. The gentle words of *Bertha*, and her influence over her husband, had wrought out this result; and the Frankish chaplain was in all likelihood the scribe on the occasion. Gladly *Gregory* responded to the call; for his active mind had been long ago attracted by the distant isle, in the hope of winning over it a victory more enduring than the triumphs of the *Caesars*.

5. He had once seen some **English slaves** on view in the Roman market, where their blue eyes, yellow hair, and fair complexion contrasted strongly with the dark locks and swarthy cheeks of Southern captives. On inquiring who and whence they were, his fancy was struck by the scriptural significance of the answers he received. "*Angles!*" he exclaimed; "not *Angles*, but *angels*." "From *Deira*? Then they shall be snatched *de ira*—from wrath." "Name of their king, *Ælla*! That is *Alleluiah*." Some such youths he had collected with the design of training them for a mission to England; but the project failed. The arrival of *Æthelbert's* letter filled his heart

¹ *Aesking*, meaning "son of *Aesc*," *Aesc*, or "the ash-tree." The termination -*ing* is the Old English suffix meaning "son of."

with joy. Selecting for the work Augustine, the prior of the convent to which he had himself belonged, he despatched that priest with forty monks to the distant shores of Kent.

6. These men, frightened by the accounts they received of the islanders, lingered in Gaul, and sent back their leader to beg for a recall. But Gregory had willed it; they must go on.

Accompanied, therefore, by Frankish bishops, whose
597 language was not unlike that of the men of Kent, **they**
A.D. **crossed the sea,** and wondered to find themselves in a fair and smiling land. A message from Æthelbert reassured them yet more. Bidding them welcome, and thanking them for having come so far to do him good, he said that they might remain as long as they pleased. He then agreed to give the foreign monks an audience in the open air, in sight of the assembled men of Kent.

7. The meeting must have been an impressive scene. Somewhere in the island of Thanet a double throne was set up in the open air. When the King and Queen had ascended their royal chairs, sounds of sacred music were heard in the distance. The rough Jutes stood around in silent wonder. Nearer came the song, and the words of Latin psalms and litanies, chanted by the voices of the monks, grew distinct as **the procession** advanced. Dressed in gorgeous robes of silk and gold, with a picture of the Saviour carried aloft, and a silver crucifix flashing in every hand, the monks reached the foot of the throne. Augustine spoke through his Frankish friends, setting forth the blessings and hopes that flowed from the faith he professed. The answer of the King was cautious; but the delighted face of Queen Bertha filled the missionaries with hope. Before long Augustine sent a letter to Gregory announcing the baptism of the Kentish king, and the conversion of ten thousand Jutes!

8. Augustine, appointed **Archbishop of Canterbury**, entered with zeal on the duties of his see. His grand object was to bring all in Britain under Roman sway. He held a conference with the simple priests of the Celts; but they resented the interference of the foreign monk. A second meeting had the same result. Repelled by Augustine's proposals, but undaunted by his threats, they broke off the conference, and went back to their mountains.

9. About twenty years after the arrival of Augustine, Æthelburh, the daughter of Æthelbert and Bertha, became the wife of King Edwin (Eadwine) of Deira. She was accompanied to Bamborough Castle by **Paulinus**, a Christian bishop, through whose preaching Edwin and the Northumbrians were converted to Christianity. In 627, Paulinus became the first Archbishop of York. Not long afterwards, **Aidan** went from Iona to Holy Isle, and founded the See of Lindisfarne. There were thus introduced into Northumbria two ecclesiastical authorities—that of the Church of Iona, and that of the Church of Rome. There naturally arose a dispute between **664** them. At the Synod of Whitby in 664, it was decided **A.D.** that Northumbria should owe allegiance to the Bishop of Rome alone. Thereupon the monks of Lindisfarne returned to Iona.

QUESTIONS.—1. Whom did Pope Celestine send to convert the Scots in Ireland? When did Columba land in Scotland? Where did he settle?

2. What difference in character was there between Columba and Augustine? Why should the landing of Augustine not be called the first introduction of Christianity into England?

3. How was Christianity first introduced into Kent? Where was the first Christian church there? How long did Æthelbert continue a pagan after his marriage?

4. What step did Æthelbert take? Through whose influence had this result been reached?

5. What had attracted Gregory's attention to the English? Narrate the

incident. What did Gregory do on receiving Æthelbert's letter?

6. What delayed the missionaries in Gaul? Who accompanied them to Kent? What message did Æthelbert send them?

7. Describe the reception of the monks by the King. What was Augustine soon able to announce to Gregory?

8. To what office was Augustine appointed? What was his grand aim? What was the result of his conferences with the Celts?

9. How was Christianity introduced into Northumbria? Who was the first Archbishop of York? Who founded the See of Lindisfarne? What dispute naturally arose? How was it settled? When? Where?

CHAPTER III.

THE RIVAL KINGDOMS.

1. Ascendancy of Northumbria.
2. Edwin Overlord.
3. Rise of Mercia.

4. Decline of Northumbria.
5. Offa Overlord.
6. Egbert Overlord.

1. **WHEN** the English States were not fighting with the Welsh, they were generally engaged in struggling for the mastery over one another. In this struggle the smaller and weaker States

had naturally to yield to the more powerful, and in course of time the number of independent States came to be greatly reduced. **603** Northumbria was the first to gain the ascendancy. King Æthelfrith of Bernicia seized Deira,¹ drove the North Britons beyond the Forth, and ruled from the Forth to the Wash. Four years later he forced many of the Mercians, including those of Southumbria and Middle Anglia, to submit to him. Kent and Northumbria thus came to be rivals for power in the east of England, as Kent and Wessex were in the south.

2. King Æthelfrith was slain in 617, and was succeeded by Edwin (Eadwine) of Deira, whom he had dispossessed in 603. Æthelbert had died a year before, and the power of Kent had begun to decline in the hands of his successor. Edwin had little trouble, therefore, in detaching East Anglia and Essex from Kent, and including them in his own overlordship. He secured the friendship of Kent by marrying Æthelburh, the daughter of Æthelbert. Wessex alone remained **626** powerful enough to dispute his supremacy. In 626 he subdued Wessex, and was acknowledged as Overlord of all England. To protect his northern frontier from the attacks of the Britons, he built a castle on a steep rock near the Forth. After its founder it was called Eadwinesburh,—**Edinburgh**.

3. Penda, King of Mercia,² made Edwin's conversion to Christianity a cause of quarrel with him. Penda made himself the champion of the old heathen faith, hoping to recover the independence of his kingdom thereby. He allied himself with the Welsh of Strathclyde, who had for six years been in arms against Edwin. They marched into Northumbria, and in a great battle at **Hatfield**,³ Edwin was slain. Thereafter confusion prevailed in Northumbria for a year or two, until Oswald, Edwin's nephew, came to the throne. In 635 he utterly crushed the Welsh of Strathclyde.⁴

¹ *Seized Deira*.—Thus Bernicia and Deira were united, and Northumbria was formed.

² *Mercia*.—That is, "the march-land," or border-land, because it was originally the frontier land between the English and the Welsh.

³ *Hatfield*.—Four miles north-east of Doncaster.

⁴ *Strathclyde*.—This district originally extended from the middle of England to the Firth of Clyde, including the western coasts both of England and of Scotland.

4. Meantime the power of Mercia had been growing rapidly under Penda. He made himself master of all England from the Humber to the Thames, and was for some years the most powerful King in England. But Northumbria by-and-by revived; Penda was slain, and Mercia once more submitted to Northumbria. The struggle was resumed by Wulfere, who greatly extended Mercia, driving the West Saxons south of the Thames, and advancing even to London. But **Egfrith** (Ecgrith) of Northumbria defeated Wulfere in 683. Two years later, Egfrith was slain in battle with the Picts, and then the supremacy of Northumbria came to an end; so entirely did the position of each State depend on the personal character and prowess of its ruler.

5. The struggle for supremacy was then continued between Mercia and Wessex. For a time Wessex was successful under Ine, who made a famous code of laws. But a change came when Offa, the greatest of the Mercian Kings, got the throne in 758. Offa drove back the Welsh, and built a rampart called **Offa's Dike**, from the mouth of the Dee to that of the Wye. He then annexed East Anglia, and was acknowledged as Overlord by Kent. In 784 he gained supremacy **784** over Northumbria and Wessex by keeping a son-in-law **A.D.** on the throne of each. Offa was practically **Overlord of all England** till his death in 794.

6. The rivals of Offa's sons-in-law took refuge at the court of **Charles the Great** (Charlemagne), King of the Franks, who espoused their cause. On the death of the King of Wessex (800), Charles sent over **Egbert** (Ecgeberht), the **800** exiled Prince, to claim the throne; and the West Saxons **A.D.** took him for their King. A few years later the exiled Prince of Northumbria was restored, and Mercia was thus weakened in the north. In 823, Egbert defeated the Mercians at **Ellandune** in Wiltshire. Four years later, **827** both Mercia and Northumbria submitted to Wessex, **A.D.** and Egbert became **Overlord of all England**. In his charters he sometimes called himself *Rex Anglorum*,—"King of the English."

QUESTIONS.—1. What struggle went | was thus reduced? Which State first
on among the English States? What | gained the ascendancy? What King
(546) 3

first extended its bounds? What States were rivals for power in the east of England? With what State had Kent to compete in the south?

2. Who succeeded Æthelfrith? What States did he detach from Kent? How did he secure the friendship of Kent? What did he become in 626? How did he protect his northern frontier?

3. Who then made war on Edwin? On what ground? With whom did he ally himself? What battle was fought? Who was slain? What followed in Northumbria? Who restored order? Whom did he crush?

4. Whose power had meantime been growing? What caused it to decline

again? In what direction did Wulfere extend Mercia? What put an end to the supremacy of Northumbria?

5. What States then strove for the mastery? Which succeeded at first? Who was the greatest of the Mercian Kings? How did he protect his frontier from the Welsh? How did he gain supremacy over Northumbria and Wessex? What did he then become? How long did he remain so?

6. How were Wessex and Northumbria detached from Mercia? Where did Egbert defeat the Mercians? When? When did Egbert become Overlord of all England? What is he called in some of his charters?

CHAPTER IV.

THE STRUGGLE WITH THE DANES.

1. Arrival of the Danes.
2. Breaking up of Egbert's Kingdom.
3. The Danes Conquer East Anglia.
4. Accession of Alfred the Great.
5. The Danes take Mercia and Northumbria.
6. The Danes Return to Wessex.

7. Alfred in Hiding.
8. The Battle of Edington.
9. The Peace of Wedmore.
10. Alfred's Work during the Peace.
11. Alfred's Laws.
12. Defence of the Kingdom.
13. Hasting's Invasion.

1. The Danes or Norsemen began to be troublesome in Egbert's time. They were Scandinavians, from Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, and therefore men of kindred race with the English. As early as 787 they had begun to ravage the north-eastern coast; but now they attacked the south, and tried to force their way into the heart of the country. They

835 allied themselves with the Welsh of Cornwall, and **A.D.** troubled Wessex greatly on the west. Egbert marched against them in 835, and inflicted on them a great defeat at **Hengest's-Down** (Hengestesdun) in Cornwall. This, however, was only a temporary check.

2. Egbert died in 836, and was succeeded by Æthelwulf, his son. During his reign, and the reigns of three of his sons, the struggle with the Danes continued. In the time of Æthelred I, his third son (866-871), England was dismembered again, and the overlordship of Wessex came to an end as completely as those of Northumbria and Mercia had done. At

Æthelred's death it seemed doubtful whether even Wessex would remain in the hands of the English.

3. Great numbers of Danes landed in East Anglia in 866. In the following year they took York; and Northumbria at once submitted to them. The next year they conquered East Anglia. They bound **Edmund**¹ (Eadmund), the **868** King, to a tree, and shot him to death with arrows. **A.D.** **Guthrum**, the Danish leader, then assumed the crown of East Anglia, and many Danes settled there. Mercia was next invaded, and in 870 its English King became tributary to the Dane.

4. Thus, when **Alfred** succeeded his brother Æthelred in 871, Wessex had lost Northumbria, East Anglia, and Mercia; and the renewal of the Danish attack on **871** Wessex itself was not likely to be long delayed. **A.D.** Whether England should continue to be ruled by Englishmen, depended mainly on the conduct of Wessex; and the resistance of Wessex depended on the skill and spirit of its young King. Alfred was now in his twenty-second year, and had previously been more remarkable for his love of study than for his warlike spirit. It is, however, a proof of the confidence the men of Wessex had in him, that in their time of peril they pressed the crown on him, to the exclusion of his infant nephew, Æthelwald.

5. At first King Alfred, in his zeal for the reform of abuses, excited so much discontent among his subjects, that they were unwilling to face the Danes for the sake of so harsh a ruler. But the ravages of the invaders grew more formidable every day. A battle was fought at **Wilton** in Wiltshire, in which Alfred was defeated. He then entered into negotiations with the Danes, who withdrew from Wessex on receiving a large sum. Their ravages were next carried into Mercia and Northumbria, where they burned and butchered without mercy. In 874, the English King of Mercia fled to Rome; and the Danes gave the throne to one of his nobles, on condition that he should pay tribute to them. In Northumbria they settled on the land, and divided it among themselves, as the English had done four centuries before.

¹ *Edmund*.—An abbey was built over | around it was called St. Edmundsbury; his tomb; and the town which gathered | now Bury-St.-Edmunds, in Suffolk.

6. Alfred fitted out a fleet to guard his coast. This fleet did good service, gaining several victories over the Danes, and preventing them from landing. But in 876 they returned in force, and having secured the Welsh as allies, they seized

877 **Exeter.** Alfred besieged them there the following
A.D. spring (877), and forced them to surrender. They promised to leave Wessex, and retired into Mercia. They returned suddenly in the winter of 878, led by Guthrum, the East-Anglian King. Alfred fled in disguise, and with a few followers sought refuge in Somerset.

7. The chroniclers of his life tell a story of his retirement, which has formed a subject for picture and for poem. The wife of his humble host, a neat-herd, set him to watch cakes; but, in his absence of mind, he let them burn. She scolded him soundly—some say, struck him—saying that, lazy as he was in turning them, he would be active enough in eating them. His hiding-place was **Athelney**,¹ a marshy island formed by the meeting of the rivers Parret and Tone; and here he remained some months, visited at times by his nobles, who were gradually and secretly gathering strength for a fierce struggle.

8. Hearing that the Danes had been surprised and beaten by the Earl of Devon, Alfred resolved to strike the blow at once. He is said to have visited the Danish camp in the disguise of a harper. He saw the carelessness of the Danes, heard their plans discussed, and then, stealing from the camp, called his friends together in Selwood Forest. The summons was joyfully received. The English and the Danes met at the foot

878 **of Edington** (Ethandune), a hill in Wiltshire, and the
A.D. victory was Alfred's. He laid siege to the Danish camp, and in fourteen days forced Guthrum to capitulate.

9. Then followed the **Peace of Wedmore** (Somersetshire). Guthrum and many of his followers agreed to become Christians, and the chief was baptized with the name **Æthelstan**. The Danes solemnly vowed to leave Wessex; and they were allowed to hold Essex, East Anglia, and the north-east of Mercia, as vassals of Wessex. The rest of Mercia was annexed to Wessex, and was governed for Alfred by **Æthelred**, to whom Alfred

¹ *Athelney*.—That is, *Ætheling-igge*, or the "Isle of Nobles."

gave his daughter *Æthelfled* (*Æthelflæd*) in marriage. England was thus divided into two parts,—the one Danish, the other English. The dividing line may be drawn roughly from the mouth of the Lea through Bedford to Shrewsbury. North-east of that line was the **Danelagh**, or country of the Dane-folk. The Mercian part of the Danelagh came afterwards to be called **The Five Boroughs**, as the five chief towns in it—Derby, Lincoln, Leicester, Stamford, and Nottingham—formed a kind of league for its defence.

10. The country now enjoyed a **long peace**. The Danes did not attempt to drive the English out of the country, as the English had driven out the Welsh. The Danes and the English were people of the same race, and were so closely allied in speech that they had no difficulty in living together, and by-and-by they became one people. Alfred devoted the years of peace to those measures for the improvement of his people which form his best title to the name Great. He encouraged learning, both by his example and by his laws. His court was the home of many distinguished scholars; and we owe to the King himself several works, among which are translations of *Æsop's Fables* and *Bede's History of the English Church*. He founded schools, and passed a law enforcing on the nobles the education of their children.

11. Alfred¹ also framed a **code of laws**, in which the chief enactments of *Æthelbert* and *Ine* had place; and these he executed with such stern impartiality that crime became rare. We can trace to his wisdom the practical application of many principles of modern English law. He enacted that it was a capital offence to plot against the King. The division of the land into **shires**, **hundreds**, and **tithings** or tenths, which had existed before, but which he remodelled and improved, enabled him to hold all parts of the country under strict control; and the respect for his name was so great, that it became a common saying, that golden ornaments might be hung up by the roadside, and no robber would dare to touch them.

12. Alfred was no less mindful of the defence of his king-

¹ *Alfred*.—Many customs and institutions whose origin is obscure have usually been assigned to Alfred, as a ready and likely way of accounting for their existence; for example, trial by jury, and the University of Oxford.

dom. He built strong castles, both inland and on the shore, where an enemy could be best withstood. He organized a militia system, according to which all men capable of bearing arms were divided into three sets. One body occupied the towns as garrisons, while the other two were by turn engaged in military service and in the cultivation of the land.

13. So, in 892, when there was a fresh invasion by Danes, who crossed from France, led by Hasting, Alfred was well prepared to meet them. Hasting landed in Kent, crossed into Essex, and obtained aid from the Danes of East Anglia. They marched right across Mercia into Wales, expecting, no doubt, to get the assistance of the Welsh; but Æthelred, Alfred's son-in-law, followed them, and defeated them with great slaughter in 894. Driven from their stronghold at Chester the following year, the Danes returned to Essex. Alfred and Æthelred marched against them. Their skiffs crowded the Lea; but Alfred, by digging a trench beside the river, shallowed the stream, and caused the Danish vessels to run aground, 901 when they fell an easy prey to his troops. This drove A.D. the pirates back to France. The rest of Alfred's reign was peace. He died in 901, aged fifty-two, and was succeeded by his son Edward, surnamed "The Elder."

- QUESTIONS.—1. Who began to be troublesome in Egbert's time? Who were the Danes? When had they begun to attack England? Where did they attack it now? With whom did they ally themselves? Where did Egbert defeat them? When?
2. Who succeeded Egbert? What occurred in Æthelred's time? In what position was Wessex at his death?
3. When did the Danes conquer East Anglia? How did they treat the King? Who assumed the crown? What kingdom was next attacked?
4. When did Alfred succeed? In what position was Wessex then? What was at stake? On what did the issue depend? For what had Alfred hitherto been remarkable?
5. What at first made Alfred's people discontented? What was the result of the Battle of Wilton? What induced the Danes to withdraw from Wessex?
- Where did they then carry their ravages? What influence did they gain in Mercia? How did they deal with Northumbria?
6. Of what use was Alfred's fleet? What place did the Danes seize in 876? Where did they go, on surrendering? What did they do in the winter of 878? What was Alfred forced to do?
7. What story is told of him in his retirement? Where was his hiding-place? How long did he remain there? For what were his nobles secretly preparing?
8. What induced Alfred to resolve on an immediate stroke? How is he said to have gained knowledge of the Danish plans and position? Where did he summon his friends? What battle was fought? Who gained the victory?
9. What peace followed? To what did the Danes agree? What were they allowed to hold? Who held the rest of

Mercia? What line separated the Danish portion of England from the English portion? What was the Danish portion called? What was the Mercian part of it called?

10. What difference was there between the Danish settlement and the English one? Why was this? To what did Alfred devote the years of peace? What literary works did he produce? How did he encourage education?

11. How did he diminish crime?

What enabled him to control all parts of the country? What saying shows the respect for his name?

12. How did he provide for the defence of his kingdom?

13. When was there a fresh invasion of Danes? Who was their leader? Who aided him? Where did they march? Who followed them? Where did the Danes go when driven from Chester? How were they finally defeated? When did Alfred die?

CHAPTER V.

THE DANISH CONQUEST.

1. The Norsemen Settle in France.
2. Edward Overlord of all Britain.
3. Battle of Brunanburh.
4. Rise of Dunstan.
5. Dunstan's Policy.

6. The Witan at Calne.
7. Æthelred the Unready.
8. The Massacre of the Danes.
9. Return of Canute.
10. A Dane King of England.

1. WHILE Edward was King, a host of Norsemen, led by **Rolf the Ganger**,¹ settled in the country of the Franks. Charles the Simple, King of the West Franks, in 912 gave Rolf a piece of land at the mouth of the Seine for **912** himself and his followers, on condition that the Norse- **A.D.** men should become Christians and cease ravaging the Frankish coasts. Rolf and his son added greatly to their territory, which came to be called **Normandy**, or "the land of the Norsemen." From Rolf and his followers were descended William, Duke of Normandy, and the Normans who conquered England in 1066. But long before that time the Normans had become Frenchmen; for it is remarkable that the Teutonic settlers in France, unlike the Teutonic settlers in Britain, gave up their own speech for that of the natives.

2. After the death of Æthelred of Mercia, in 911, his widow **Æthelfled** ruled with great vigour. She made a determined effort to recover the Five Boroughs from the Danes; and after five years' fighting she had captured Derby and Leicester, when she died, 918. Her brother **Edward** took the government of

¹ *The Ganger*.—That is, "the Goer." Rolf was so called, it is said, because he was so long-legged that none of the small horses of the North could carry him, and he had therefore to perform his expeditions on foot.

Mercia into his own hands, and continued the struggle with the Danes. In this he was so successful, that in 924 he was acknowledged as Overlord by all England, and even by the Scots and by the Welsh of Strathclyde and Wales. Thus Edward was not only Overlord of the English—as Edwin and Offa and Egbert had been—but Overlord of all Britain. He was the first to assume the title of King of England; but shortly after achieving this greatness, he died, in 925.

3. **Æthelstan**, Edward's son, was barely seated on the throne when the Northumbrians and the North Welsh revolted. Both revolts were soon quelled; but a more formidable rising occurred in 937, when the Scots, the North Welsh, and the English Danes, joined Anlaf of Denmark, who appeared with a great fleet in the Humber. Æthelstan marched against the allies, and defeated them in a great battle at **Brunanburh**.¹ Edmund I., his half-brother and successor, secured the friendship of the Scots by granting them Strathclyde or Cumbria. He was stabbed at the supper-table by a robber whom he had banished six years before.

4. **Edwy** began to reign in 946. He quarrelled with **Dunstan**, a powerful churchman whom Edmund had made Abbot of Glastonbury, and banished him from his court and kingdom. Mercia and Northumbria again revolted, and made **Edgar**, the King's brother, their King. Dunstan was recalled to Mercia by Edgar, who became King of Wessex, also, on his brother's death. In a few years Dunstan was made Archbishop of Canterbury and chief Minister.

5. In order to break the power of Northumbria, Edgar, by Dunstan's advice, divided it into three portions. **Lothian**, between the Forth and the Tweed, was given to the King of Scots, and formed the nucleus of the Anglo-Scottish kingdom. The remainder was divided into two Earldoms,—the one from the Tweed to the Tees (Northumbria), the other from the Tees to the Humber (Deira or Yorkshire). Dunstan strove to foster

¹ *Brunanburh*.—Said to have been in Lincolnshire; but there is no certainty as to the locality. As, however, the invaders entered the country by the Humber, and as they would naturally march southward, the battle is most likely to have been fought in Lincolnshire.

strict monasticism in England, and to make the Church supreme in the government of the country. His policy alienated the secular clergy as well as the freemen.

6. The contest between Dunstan and the national clergy came to a crisis in 978, during the reign of Æthelred II. The clergy claimed the right to marry, which the Church of Rome refused to permit. The Witan met at **Calne** in Wiltshire to discuss the disputed points; and while Dunstan was appealing to Heaven for vengeance against his opponents, who were all collected at one end of the room, the joists gave way beneath the national party, and the prelate's enemies were hurled to the earth in a heap of dead and wounded. It has been said that he had caused the beams to be half sawn through, previous to the assembling of the Witan. Famine and plague cast a gloom over the land, which grew deeper two years later, when the Danes renewed their ravages. 978
A.D.

7. Æthelred, who was surnamed "The Unready,"—that is, the improvident or foolish,—tried to get rid of the Danes by buying them off. For this purpose he levied a tax called *Dane-geld*, amounting to twelve pence in the year upon each hide of land for all classes except the clergy; but this foolish policy had no other effect than to bring the pirates back to the English shores. They returned in 997 in greater numbers than ever, and harassed Wessex for five years. They were again bought off, and each time this was repeated their demands increased. Many of them did not actually go away, but settled in Wessex as peaceful citizens. 997
A.D.

8. Æthelred, in his folly, devised the mad scheme of a general massacre of the Danes in Wessex. The bloody deed was perpetrated ruthlessly on the festival of **St. Brice**. Burning with rage, Sweyn (Swegen), King of Denmark, whose sister was among the slain, burst on the coasts; and, returning again and again, during four years, took a terrible revenge. He returned in 1013, determined to conquer England. Mercia and Northumbria joined him, and then Wessex was reduced to the direst straits. At last Oxford and Winchester fell before the invaders. Sweyn was proclaimed King at Bath, and soon after at **London**. Nov. 13,
1002
A.D.

1013

A.D.

don. Æthelred fled to Normandy, the native place of Emma, his second wife. Sweyn died three weeks afterwards, leaving his conquests to his son Canute¹ (Cnut). But the English, having recalled Æthelred, supported him so vigorously that Canute was forced in turn to abandon the island.

9. Æthelred, now triumphant, provoked renewed incursions by repeated murders of his Danish subjects; and his untiring foe, Canute, once more landed in England. The Dane was pushing towards the capital, leaving a track of blood and ashes behind him, when Æthelred died. He was succeeded by Edmund, his eldest son.

10. Edmund II., surnamed "Ironside," struggled bravely for seven months to secure the throne of his father, during which London was assaulted twice, without success, by the Danes under Canute. But at last, after a meeting at Olney, an island in the Severn,—where, some writers say, a duel was fought between the rivals,—they agreed to a division of the kingdom; Edmund holding the counties south, the Dane those north of the Thames. The Dane-geld was to be levied in both districts alike, but was to be applied to the support of the Danish fleet. A month after this agreement Edmund died, and Canute was acknowledged as King from one end of England to the other.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where did the Norsemen settle during Edward's reign? Who was their leader? What was their settlement by-and-by called? Who were the descendants of these Norsemen? Wherein did they differ from the Teutonic settlers in Britain?

2. Who ruled Mercia after Æthelred's death? What towns did she capture from the Danes? Who governed Mercia after her death? What success had he against the Danes? Of what was he Overlord? What title was he the first to assume? When did he die?

3. Who succeeded? What great victory did he gain? How did Edmund secure the friendship of the Scots?

4. When did Edwy begin to reign? With whom did he quarrel? What led

to Dunstan's return to England? To what offices was he appointed?

5. How was the power of Northumbria broken? How did Dunstan offend the secular clergy?

6. When did the contest between Dunstan and the national clergy come to a crisis? What occurred at Caine?

7. By what means did Æthelred try to get rid of the Danes? What name was given to the tax which he levied? What effect had his policy? Where did many Danes settle?

8. What mad scheme did Æthelred next devise? When was the deed perpetrated? Who revenged the cruelty? When did he return with the view of conquering England? What provinces joined him? What towns did he take?

¹ Canute.—Pronounce *Cd-noot*.

Where was he proclaimed King? Where did Æthelred go? Who died soon afterwards? Who was his successor? What did the English then do? What success had Æthelred?

9. How did Æthelred provoke another

invasion? What followed? Who succeeded Æthelred?

10. How long did Edmund struggle to secure the crown? What agreement was made? When did Edmund die? Who was acknowledged as King?

CHAPTER VI.

THE DANISH KINGS.

Canute (son of Sweyn).....	A.D. 1017
Harold I. (son).....	1035
Hardicanute (half-brother).....	1040-1042

1. Removal of the English Princes.
2. The Four Earldoms.
3. Earls Godwin and Leofric.
4. Popular Traditions about Canute.

5. Canute's Later Days.
6. Reign of Harold I.
7. Return of the English Princes.
8. Reign of Hardicanute.

1. **CANUTE.**¹—The Danish King's first care was to remove all rivals. The surviving sons of Æthelred II. were Edwy, Edward, and Alfred. Edwy he caused to be murdered. Edward and Alfred were in Normandy with their mother, Emma, and were thus out of his reach. But he married Emma, though she was much older than he, promising that the crown should go to his and her children. Edward and Edmund, the infant sons of Edmund Ironside, were conveyed to Sweden, and thence to Hungary; where Edmund died in youth. Edward married a niece of the Queen of Hungary. Their son was Edgar the Ætheling, whom William the Conqueror excluded from the throne.

2. The better to govern his kingdom, Canute divided it into four great earldoms, — Wessex, Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumbria. He gave Mercia to an English noble who had helped him to secure the throne. He gave East Anglia to one Dane, and Northumbria to another, and he reserved Wessex for himself. Though he had won the crown by unsparing cruelty, he proved a wise and popular ruler. The object of his policy was to blend Danes and Englishmen together; and it was really by him that all England was permanently brought under one strong government. To reconcile the English to his

¹ *Canute*.—Son of Sweyn of Denmark. Married, for his second wife, Emma of Normandy, widow of Æthelred II. Reigned 18 years.

rule, he sent most of his Danish sailors and soldiers back to Denmark, retaining only a body-guard of six thousand men.

3. In 1020, Canute made **Godwin** (Godwine), an Englishman, Earl of Wessex; and about the same time **Leofric**, another Englishman, Earl of Mercia. These two Earls **1020** ere long became the most powerful men in England.

A.D. Godwin heartily supported Canute's policy, and took an active share in his wars. It was through his influence chiefly that the Old English line was restored in 1042: the King Harold who was slain at Senlac was his son.

4. Canute became a favourite with his people, and many interesting stories have been handed down regarding his justice and his wisdom. Though these stories may not be exactly true, they yet show the popular estimate of his character:—Having on one occasion killed a soldier in a fit of anger, he, in presence of his body-guard, laid aside his crown and sceptre, and begged them to pronounce sentence on him. All were silent, and Canute imposed on himself a fine nine times greater than the legal sum. Again: at Southampton he is said to have rebuked the flattery of his courtiers, by setting his chair on the shore and commanding the waves to retire. While the tide was flowing round his feet, he sternly blamed the folly of those who compared a weak earthly king to the Great Ruler of the Universe.

5. The claim of this King to the title of "Great" rests partly on his wise government, which made England one kingdom; partly, also, on the extent of his dominions. Besides England, he ruled over Norway, Sweden, and Denmark; and he is said to have exacted homage from Malcolm of Scotland. In his later days he became religious in life, endowed monasteries, and built churches. He went, staff in hand, clad in pilgrim's gown, to Rome. There he obtained from the Pope exemption for English pilgrims from the heavy dues then levied on travellers. He also introduced the Christian faith into Denmark. He died at Shaftesbury, and was buried at Winchester. By his first wife he had two sons, Sweyn and Harold. His second wife, Emma, widow of Æthelred, bore him a son and a daughter—the former named Hardicanute (Harthacnut). To Sweyn was

allotted Norway; Harold seized England; Hardicanute was forced to content himself with Denmark.

6. *HAROLD I.*¹—By Canute's desire, the crown of England was to have devolved on Hardicanute; but **Harold**, surnamed "Harefoot," seized it without delay. The Witan, meeting at Oxford, divided the country between the **1036** rival Princes; assigning to Harold London and the **A.D.** counties north of the Thames; to Hardicanute, the district south of that river. The latter, however, trifled away his time in Denmark, and left the support of his claims to his mother Emma and Earl Godwin.

7. About this time, Edward, son of Æthelred, landed at Southampton, to assert his right to the throne; but, being menaced by a formidable force, he abandoned the enterprise. His brother Alfred, who was soon afterwards enticed over from Normandy by a letter from Emma, met a cruel death at Ely, where his eyes were torn out by the officers of Harold. Emma in alarm fled to the court of Baldwin, Count of Flanders. Harold died at Oxford in 1040.

8. *HARDICANUTE.*²—Hardicanute (Harthacnut) was on his way to England with a large fleet, when he heard of Harold's death. On his arrival, he was at once acknowledged King; but great discontent was at first excited by the **1040** oppressive taxes he imposed. He wreaked a poor re- **A.D.** venge on Harold's dead body, which was by his order dug up, beheaded, and flung into the Thames. The blame of Alfred's murder was by many, though without any good reason, cast on Earl Godwin, and he lost favour with the King; but his peers having sworn to his innocence, he was reinstated. As a peace-offering, he presented to Hardicanute a ship, of which the stern was plated with gold, and which bore eighty warriors glittering with decorations of gold and silver. Hardicanute died suddenly at Lambeth, at the marriage-feast of a Danish noble, and was buried at Winchester.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was Canute's first care? Who were the surviving sons of Æthelred II.? What became of Edwy? How were the other two saved? Whom did Canute marry? What became of the sons of Edmund Ironside? Who was Edward's son? 2. Into what earldoms did Canute

¹ *Harold I.*—Son of Canute. Reigned 5 years. ² *Hardicanute.*—Son of Canute and Emma of Normandy. Reigned 2 years.

divide his kingdom? To whom did he give them? What kind of ruler did he turn out to be? What was the object of his policy? What was really done by him? What was done with his Danish sailors and soldiers?

3. Who became Earl of Wessex in 1020? Who was made Earl of Mercia about the same time? What did these two men become?

4. Mention the stories that are told about Canute. What do they show?

5. On what does Canute's claim to the title "Great" rest? What countries besides England did he rule? What kind of life did he lead in his later days? What privilege did he ob-

tain from the Pope? Where did he die? What family did he leave?

6. Whom did Canute name as his successor? Who did succeed him? What arrangement did the Witan make? How was Harold left in possession of the whole country?

7. What other Prince claimed the throne? What was the fate of his brother Alfred?

8. Where did Hardicanute hear of Harold's death? How did he at first excite discontent? What indignity did he put on his brother's corpse? How did Earl Godwin fall out of favour? How was he reinstated? What was his peace-offering to the King?

CHAPTER VII.

THE ENGLISH RESTORATION.

Edward, the Confessor (son of Æthelred II.).....	A.D. 1042
Harold II. (son of Earl Godwin).....	1066

1. The English Restoration.
2. Beginning of Norman Influence.
3. Revolt of Earl Godwin.
4. Visit of Duke William of Normandy.
5. Restoration of Earl Godwin and his Sons.
6. Rise of Earl Harold.

7. Return of Edward the Ætheling.
8. Great Power of the Ealdormen.
9. Rise of Edwin and Morcar—Tostig in Exile.
10. Death of Edward—Harold Elected King.
11. Accession of Harold.
12. Invasion of the Norsemen.

1. **EDWARD, THE CONFESSOR.**¹—Edward, son of Æthelred and half-brother of Hardicanute, being then in England, received the crown. He owed this chiefly to the influence of Godwin, whose power had been steadily growing since Canute's death. The surviving son of Edmund Ironside had a prior claim to the throne; but this was forgotten in the joy with which the people hailed the restoration of the English line. So great was the favour with which Edward was received, that he was permitted to take back all grants that had been made by his predecessors—an act rendered necessary by the poverty of the throne. His re-

¹ *Edward*.—Son of Æthelred II. and daughter of Earl Godwin. Reigned 24 years. Emma of Normandy. Married Editha,

sources were further increased by the confiscation of treasure amassed by his unnatural mother, Emma.

2. The King was about forty at his accession, and had spent twenty-seven years at the Norman Court. It is not surprising, therefore, that he regarded with peculiar favour the friends of his youth, and bestowed upon Normans some of the chief offices of State. The French language and French fashions were adopted at the English Court. Lawyers wrote their deeds and clergymen their sermons in Norman French.

3. This displeased the English, and **Earl Godwin** was foremost in revolt. Godwin's power was now at its greatest. The King had married his daughter Editha. His own earldom embraced all England south of the Thames. One son, Harold, was Earl of East Anglia; another son, Sweyn, possessed most of Mercia. Godwin's great influence aroused the jealousy of the King's Norman friends, who soon found an opportunity of matching their power with his. A bloody fray had taken place at Dover, a town under Godwin's protection, between the burghers and the retainers of Eustace, a Norman Count who had married the King's sister. Edward, instigated by his Norman favourites, commanded Godwin to punish the insolent citizens; but the Earl took the field rather than submit. A delay took place, until the Great Council should decide the points in dispute. In the meantime Godwin's army fell away **1051** from him; for his grasping policy was by no means A.D. liked by the English. He and his family were forced to seek refuge abroad, some in Flanders, and some in Ireland. The Queen was deprived of her lands, and placed in custody of Edward's sister, the Abbess of Wherwell in Hampshire.

4. As soon as this revolt began, Edward asked aid from **William, Duke of Normandy**; but when the fleet of that Prince appeared off the English shore, all need for help had passed away. Nevertheless, the Norman landed **1052** with his knights, and was hospitably entertained by A.D. Edward, who, it is related, promised to name him heir to the crown. William heard French spoken on all sides; saw Dover, Canterbury, and the leading towns defended by Norman garrisons; and noted many other signs of Norman influence.

5. The same year Godwin and his sons returned. The

English refused to fight against them ; and the King, by advice of Bishop Stigand, made a truce with them, and referred the dispute to the Witan. Thereupon the Norman bishops and nobles fled, some to Scotland, and some beyond seas. The Witan restored Godwin and his sons to their lands, and outlawed the foreigners. But Godwin did not long enjoy his triumph. He died early in 1053, and his son **Harold** succeeded both to his earldom of Wessex and to his influence.

6. In 1054, Siward, Earl of Northumbria, led a large army into Scotland, dethroned **Macbeth**, and restored **Malcolm**, a son of the murdered **Duncan**. Siward died in the following year, and the Witan gave his earldom to **Tostig**,

1055 **Harold's** brother. This still further extended **Harold's**
 A.D. power. At this time the two other earldoms were also held by members of one family,—**Mercia** by **Leofric**, and **East Anglia** by **Leofric's** son, **Ælfgar**. **Ælfgar**, charged with treason and outlawed, fled to **Wales**. He joined the **Welsh King** in an invasion of **England**. **Harold** was sent against them, and both then and afterwards gained great glory by his victories over the **Welsh**. He imposed on the **Welsh** a law dooming every **Welshman** found east of **Offa's Dike** to lose his right hand.

7. To remove the danger of a disputed succession, **Edward**, by the advice of the Witan, sent for **Edward the Ætheling**, son of **Edmund Ironside**, then an exile in **Hungary**.

1057 He came with his wife, **Agatha**, and three children,
 A.D. **Edgar**, **Margaret**, and **Christina** ; but he died soon after his arrival. About this time **Harold**, having been shipwrecked on the **Norman coast**, was seized by **William**, and, it is said, was made to swear over sacred relics to support his claim to the **English throne**.

8. In the same year **Earl Leofric** died, and was succeeded by his son **Ælfgar**, who had been restored to his earldom of **East Anglia**. The latter earldom was then given to **Gyrth**, another of **Harold's** brothers, while he parted with **Essex** and **Kent** to a third brother, **Leofwine**. Thus the whole of **England** was held by the four sons of **Godwin**, except that part which belonged to their rival, **Ælfgar**. We hear little during all these years about **King Edward**, who was busily engaged with those

holy works which afterwards gained for him the title "Confessor." It seems as if the earldoms were overshadowing the kingdom, and as if the struggles of Edwin and Penda, of Mercia and Wessex, were being revived.

9. Ælfgar died about 1064, and was succeeded by his son **Edwin**. In the following year the Northumbrians rose against Tostig, in consequence of his cruelties, and drove him out. The Northumbrians chose **Morcar** (Morkere), another son of Ælfgar, to be their Earl. Tostig, who blamed Harold for the revolt of his subjects, retired to Flanders to scheme ways of avenging himself on his brother.

10. Before these plans were ripe, Edward died, and Harold was at once chosen King by the Witan (January 5, 1066). Edgar the Ætheling, being thought too young 1066 to wear the crown in times so threatening, was consoled A.D. with the earldom of Oxford. Edward the Confessor was in his sixty-sixth year when he died. He was buried in Westminster Abbey, which had been erected by himself on the site of an old church to St. Peter. About a century after his death his name was ranked among the saints of the Roman Catholic Church. The chief benefits he conferred on his people were, the compilation of a code of laws, embracing all that was good in former legislation; and the repeal of the tax Dane-geld in a time of sore distress from failing crops and dying cattle.

11. **HAROLD II.**¹—It was not the fate of Harold to wear his crown in peace; for, from the day of his accession, the dread of a Norman invasion haunted him. William resolved to stake on the issue of a battle the crown which he claimed as his own by the bequest of the Confessor, and all Normandy resounded with preparation.

12. Meanwhile other foes descended on the shores of England. Harold Hardrada,² King of Norway, and Tostig, the outlawed brother of Harold, sailing up the Humber, captured York, the capital of Northumbria. Harold pushed northward, and was met by the invaders at **Stamford Bridge** on the

¹ *Harold II.*—Son of Earl Godwin. Married Ealdgyth, daughter of Ælfgar of Mercia. Reigned 9 months.

(546)

² *Hardrada.*—That is, "Hard in rede; determined in counsel." He had fought in Africa and Sicily.

Derwent. There the Norwegian spearmen formed a glittering circle, their royal banner floating above them. Again **1066** and again the English cavalry dashed upon the serried A.D. ring, but without avail, until the hot Norway blood led some to break their ranks in pursuit. Instantly Harold poured his troops through the gap, and cleft the circle like a wedge. Hardrada fell shot through the neck, and Tostig soon lay dead beside him.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Har-
dicanute? Through whose influence
chiefly? Who had a prior claim?
What shows the favour with which he
was received?

2. How old was Edward at his acce-
sion? How long had he lived in Nor-
mandy? What were the consequences
of this?

3. Whom did the growing Norman
influence displease? Who led the re-
volt? Why was he so powerful? Who
were jealous of his power? What oc-
casion did they take to test it? What
did they instigate the King to do?
Why was Godwin obliged to flee? How
was the Queen treated?

4. Whose aid had Edward asked?
Why was it unnecessary? What prom-
ise is Edward said to have made to
William? Of what did William notice
signs?

5. When did Godwin and his sons
return? What insured their success?
Where did the Normans go? What
did the Witan do? Who died soon
afterwards? Who succeeded him?

6. On what expedition did Siward
go in 1064? Who succeeded Siward?
Whose power was thus extended? Who
at this time held the two other earl-
doms? What led Ælfgar to join the

Welsh? Who was sent against the
Welsh? What law did he impose on
them?

7. How did Edward try to avoid a
disputed succession? Whom did the
Ætheling bring with him? What hap-
pened soon after his arrival? What
occurred to Harold about this time?

8. How did Harold's brother get East
Anglia? How much of England be-
longed to the sons of Godwin? Of
whom do we hear little during these
years? What struggles seem to have
been returning?

9. Who succeeded Ælfgar? What
earldom did his brother get? How?
Whom did Tostig blame for this? What
did he prepare to do?

10. When did the King die? Who
was chosen to succeed him? With
what was the Ætheling consoled?
Where was Edward buried? What
were the chief benefits which he con-
ferred on his people?

11. What dread haunted Harold
from the day of his accession? What
ground was there for this?

12. What other foes attacked Eng-
land? What town did they take?
Where did Harold meet the invaders?
What enabled him to break their ring?
Who were killed?

CHAPTER VIII.

SOCIAL CONDITION—OLD ENGLISH PERIOD.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. King and Queen. | 9. Houses. |
| 2. Classes of Nobles. | 10. Daily Life. |
| 3. Slaves. | 11. Feasts. |
| 4. The Witena-gemôt. | 12. Music—Female Occupations. |
| 5. Administration of Justice. | 13. Coinage. |
| 6. Social Morality. | 14. Idolatry. |
| 7. Theft. | 15. The Monasteries. |
| 8. Trial by Ordeal. | 16. The Language. |

1. At the head of the nation stood the **Cyning**, or "King" (said to be from Gothic *kuni*, "race," and signifying head of the race). He was elected by the Witena-gemôt, or Great Council, from among the relatives of the late King; and was generally chosen on account of his fitness for the office. The name "Queen" (meaning *woman*) and the honours of royalty, were conferred on the wife of the King, until Eadburh, Queen of Wessex, forfeited all distinctions by poisoning her husband (802). From that time the English Queens bore no title but "The Lady;" and none except Judith, wife of Æthelwulf, received the crown, or sat on the throne beside her husband. Indeed, in style and position, the wife of the Monarch resembled the lady rather than the Queen of our day. The monk Ingulf tells us that when he was a boy, Editha, wife of Edward the Confessor, would often stop him as he came from school, to make him repeat his grammar lesson; and, if he did well, would give him a piece of silver and send him to the pantry.

2. Next to the King were the **Eldermen** (*ealdormen*, magistrates). Governing, in the name of their Sovereign, districts called *shires* (from *scyran*, "to cut"), they led to battle the men under their rule, presided with the Bishop over the courts of justice, and received one-third of the fines and royal rents paid within their domain. The inferior nobles were called **Thanes** (men, soldiers; from German, *degen*, "a sword," the emblem of the male sex), and consisted of those who possessed at least five hides of land. The lowest class of freemen were the **Georls** (hence churl) or husbandmen; with whom we may rank the Burghers, or inhabitants of towns. The latter were engaged in trade, and were in most respects freemen.

3. The lowest class were slaves (*thengas*). Most of these lived on the land of their lord, close to his castle. Besides those born in bondage, all captives in war and persons arrested for debt or crime became slaves. Sad and humiliating was the ceremony of degradation. Before a crowd of witnesses, the hapless man laid down the sword and the spear which he had borne as a freeman, and, while in a kneeling posture he placed his head beneath his master's hand, he took up the bill and the goad. Many slaves were released by the bounty of their masters; others, engaging in trade and handicraft, acquired money enough to buy their freedom. The sale of slaves was quite common, the usual price being four times that of an ox. Foreign slaves were often imported; and although all export was forbidden by law, the people of the coast carried on a profitable trade in men and women. Bristol was long notorious for its slave-market.

4. The Great Council was called *Witena-gemot*, or "the meeting of wise men," and was formed of the higher clergy and the nobles. They met regularly at Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, but were often summoned on special occasions. They were the advisers of the King, the judges of State criminals, and had the general superintendence of the courts of justice. One important branch of their power has been already noticed—in their hands lay the appointment of the King.

5. Throughout the land justice was administered in various courts; in which also, before magistrates and witnesses, all bargains of purchase and sale beyond the value of twenty pennies were concluded. The execution of the laws was vested in officers called Reeves; of whom the chief in each shire was called *Shire-reeve*,—the original of our Sheriff.

6. The morality of the Old English people was very far from being pure. The characters of even their best Kings were stained with drunkenness and worse vices. The commonest crimes were murder and theft; and for these certain fines were inflicted. On the life of every freeman, according to his rank, was set a price, called *wer-gild* (that is, "man-money"), ranging from two hundred to six thousand shillings. If a man was killed, the murderer, on conviction, paid *wer-gild* to the widow

or heir of his victim. A transgressor of the law forfeited his wer-gild instead of his life to the King.

7. Slaves were imprisoned or whipped; but the meanest free-man was exempt from this disgrace. **Theft** became so common in the time of the later Old English Kings, that it was punished by death. This punishment was abolished by Canute, who substituted mutilation, condemning a thief, three times convicted, to the loss of his eyes, nose, ears, and upper lip.

8. There were two methods by which a man accused of crime could clear himself. The first, called *compurgation*, was by swearing publicly to his innocence, and bringing a number of his neighbours—from four to seventy-two, in proportion to the offence—to confirm his oath. If this plan failed, recourse was had to the **Ordeal**. The forms of Ordeal most used were by hot water, and by fire. For the former, a caldron of boiling water was set in the church, and a piece of stone or iron placed in it. Before witnesses, the accused plunged his bare arm into the water and took out the weight. The priest, wrapping the scalded limb in clean linen, set on it the seal of the Church. It was opened on the third day, and, if the wound was perfectly healed, the accused was pronounced innocent. In the ordeal by fire, a bar of red-hot iron was placed on a small pillar, and the prisoner, grasping it, made three steps with it in his hand, and then threw it down. Innocence or guilt was decided in the same manner as in the ordeal by water.

9. The **houses** of the English improved very much during the six centuries of this period. At first they were nothing better than thatched huts with holes in the walls to admit the light. Even the cathedrals and the houses of the Kings were built of wood, not very well jointed; for we read of Alfred making lanterns to protect his candles from the draughts that swept through the chinks in his palace walls! The dwellings of the lower and middle classes continued to be built of wood; but about the seventh century masonry was used for the lower parts of the chief buildings. The few still existing specimens of architecture ascribed to this period are built of small rough stones, in a rude and massive style. But the evidence that these belong to this age rests on very uncertain ground.

10. The **daily life** of even the noblest was that of a half-

savage people. The war and turbulence which were the chief characteristics of at least four centuries of this period, were not favourable to the cultivation of the domestic virtues. When not engaged in war, the nobles amused themselves in hunting and hawking; and when the sports of the day were over, all—master and servant—met in the great hall. At the upper end, on a dais or raised part, was placed a rude table, canopied with hangings of cloth, to serve as a protection from draughts of air, and from the rain which often leaked through the roof; and there sat the lord, his family, and his guests. This table was served by slaves, who knelt as they offered to each huge joints on the spit, from which the chiefs cut slices with their daggers.

11. The principal article of **food** was swine's flesh; besides this, game and fish of various kinds, coarse cakes, and green pulse were used. The favourite drink was mead, a liquor fermented from honey and water. Wine, beef, mutton, and wheaten bread were delicacies found only at the tables of the highest. The chief servants took their meal next, and in turn passed the joints to the lower end of the hall, where slaves, hounds, and hawks squabbled over the fragments of the feast.

12. The meal over, drinking began, and continued during the rest of the day. To beguile the time, the national harp of five strings was passed round; and each took his turn in singing verses to its music. This general practice of the **musical art** is almost the only redeeming trait in a picture of coarse sensuality; but the tones of the harp were soon drowned in wild shouts of drunkenness, and often in the clashing of brawlers' swords, nor did the riot cease till sleep brought silence. They slept where they had feasted, lying on straw or rushes. The ladies spent their time more peacefully, and to more purpose, in the use of the needle and the distaff. The linen and the woollen cloths, of which the long cloaks and close tunics of their lords were made, were the produce of their industry.

13. We know very little about the **coinage** of the Old English period. There was none but foreign gold; the coin most used was the Byzant—that is, the Byzantine gold *solidus*, worth forty Saxon pennies. The silver coins were the penny, half-penny, and farthing; which seem to have resembled in size and value our florin, shilling, and sixpence. The only copper coin,

called "styca," was value for one-fourth of the farthing then, or a little more than our penny.

14. When the Angles and the Saxons settled in Britain, they were the slaves of a gross and absurd **idolatry**, which prevailed among all the northern tribes of Europe. They dedicated each day of the week to a particular deity; and we still name the days after their fashion. Sun-daeg (Sunday) and Moon-daeg (Monday) were set apart for the worship of the great lights of heaven; Tuiscaes-daeg (Tuesday), Wodenes-daeg (Wednesday), Thors-daeg (Thursday), and Freyaes-daeg (Friday), were sacred to Tuisco, Woden, Thor, and Freya; while Saturnes-daeg (Saturday) was devoted to the service of Saturn, a god borrowed from the Roman mythology.

15. Though Christianity had been introduced into Britain before the time of Augustine, it was not till he and his followers landed in Kent that heathenism was entirely overthrown. The Old English priests spent their leisure in the practice of many arts. Painting on glass and working in metals were favourite employments of even the highest ecclesiastics; and not a few churches owed their bells and their coloured windows to the Dunstons of this age. The **monasteries** were now, as they continued to be for many centuries, almost the only seats of learning; and from their quiet cells issued the scanty pages of our Old English literature.

16. It must not be forgotten that the great body of the pure **English tongue**, as we read it in the Bible and the Pilgrim's Progress, as we speak it in the street and by the fireside, has come down to us from the Old English period. The Danes introduced some slight changes of construction, and left a few geographical names, such as those ending in "by," the Danish word for town; but their rule in the island made no permanent impression on the language, which has continued, through all changes of the nation, to be in spirit and in structure essentially one, from the days of Egbert to the days of Victoria.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the title of the head of the nation? How was he appointed? From what word is the title "Cyning" derived? How was the consort of the Cyning styled? Which of the Queens was allowed to sit on the

throne beside her husband? What did the position of the Queen resemble?

2. What class of nobles was highest in rank? What were their powers and privileges? What was the title borne by the lower order of nobility? What

qualification was necessary to this dignity? What was the lowest class of freemen? Whom may we rank with the Ceorls? In what were they engaged?

3. Who formed the lowest class? What were the two kinds of slaves? Describe the ceremony of degradation. What was the market value of a slave? What town was famous for its slave-market?

4. What was the Great Council of the nation called? At what seasons did it assemble? What were its duties and powers? Whose appointment lay in its hands?

5. What have you to say about bargains of sale and purchase? What were the officers called in whom the execution of the laws was vested? What was the title of the chief officer in each shire?

6. What was the moral condition of the people? What were the commonest crimes? How were these crimes punished? What was the price of a freeman's life called? To whom was the "wer-gild" paid?

7. How were slaves punished? How was theft punished by the later Kings? By Canute?

8. How could a man accused of

crime clear himself? Describe the Ordeals.

9. When was masonry first used for the chief buildings? Describe the houses of the period.

10. Relate what you know of the daily life of the people. How did the nobles pass their time? Describe an Old English feast.

11. What was the principal article of food? the favourite drink?

12. What was the chief pastime after the meal? Where did the guests sleep? How did the ladies spend their days? What materials were used for clothing?

13. What is known of the Old English coinage? What was the gold coin? What were the silver and the copper coins? What was the value of each?

14. What do you know of the religion of the Angles and the Saxons? What were their names for the days of the week?

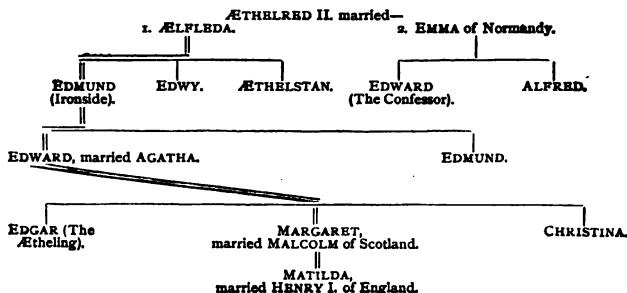
15. How did the Old English priests spend their leisure time? What were almost the only seats of learning?

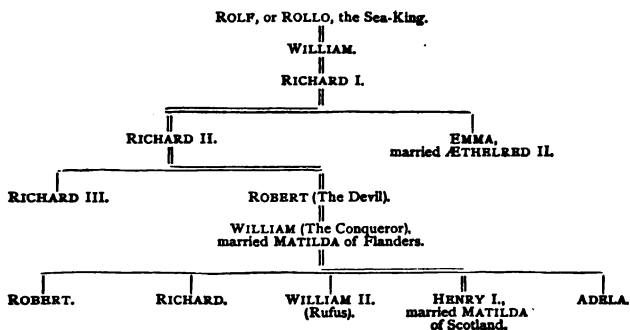
16. What is said of the English tongue? What element did the Danes introduce?

GENEALOGICAL TREES

CONNECTING THE OLD ENGLISH AND NORMAN LINES.

OLD ENGLISH LINE.



NORMAN LINE.

FEUDAL MONARCHY.

HOUSE OF NORMANDY.

William I. (The Conqueror) A.D. 1066	Henry I. (The Scholar), brother. 1100
William II. (Rufus), son..... 1087	Stephen (of Blois), nephew 1135

HOUSE OF ANJOU.

Henry II. (Curtmantle), grand-son of Henry I. 1154	Edward I. (Longshanks), son ... 1272
Richard I. (The Lion-hearted), son 1189	Edward II. (of Caernarvon), son 1307
John (Lackland), brother..... 1199	Edward III. (of Windsor), son. 1327
Henry III. (of Winchester), son 1216	Richard II. (of Bordeaux), grandson 1377

HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Henry IV. (Bolingbroke), grand-son of Edward III. 1399	Henry V. (of Monmouth), son.. 1413
	Henry VI. (of Windsor), son. ... 1422

HOUSE OF YORK.

Edward IV., great-great-grand-son of Edward III..... 1461	Edward V., son..... 1483
	Richard III., uncle..... 1483-85

CHAPTER I.

THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS (SENLAÇ).

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. The Landing of the Normans. | 7. Position of the Norman Army. |
| 2. The March to Hastings. | 8. The Onset. |
| 3. Harold's March Southward. | 9. The Normans Driven Back. |
| 4. William's Proposals. | 10. Turn of the Tide. |
| 5. The Night before the Battle. | 11. Death of Harold. |
| 6. Position of the English Army. | 12. After the Battle. |

1. THE Battle of Stamford Bridge, in which King Harold defeated his brother Tostig, and Harold Hardrada of Norway, was fought on the 25th of September; on the 29th, William and his Normans landed without opposition on the coast of Sussex, near **Pewsey**.¹ Not a human being was A.D. in sight. In safety and quiet the knights, clad in complete armour, with laced helmets, and shields slung round their necks, descended on the shore, where their squires already stood holding their chargers by the head. Then the carpenters brought out the timber of three forts, shipped ready-

¹ *Pewsey* in Sussex, 12 miles west of Hastings.

cut from Normandy, with barrels full of pins for joining them together. Before night the Norman stores lay under a wooden roof. Duke William in landing fell forward on the sand! His train, filled with the superstition of the times, thought the omen bad, until with ready wit he cried, "See, my lords, I have taken possession of England with both my hands."

2. Marching next day along the shore to **Hastings**,¹ he established there a strong camp, and erected the two remaining forts. From this centre the Norman ravages spread far and wide. The startled farmers fled from the surrounding country, driving before them huddled groups of oxen, swine, and sheep.



3. Harold and his exhausted army were nursing their wounds at York when the news of the Norman landing came. Without delay the King hurried to **London**, calling, as he passed, on all true Englishmen to gather round the banner of their native land. Many joined him on his march; but his brothers-in-law—Edwin of Mercia and Morcar of Northumbria—held aloof from him, and kept back their men. Some of his friends counselled delay, until the whole strength of the kingdom could be hurled upon the invaders. Brave young Gyrth, his brother, offered to lead a forlorn hope, while preparations were being made to secure a victory by leading a large and well-organized force against the shaken Norman lines. Rejecting both the offer and the advice, Harold tried to surprise his wily foe; but

¹ *Hastings*, a borough in Sussex; on the shore, about 64 miles from London—

when he found that impossible, turning short in his march, he took up a strong position on the **Hill of Senlac**, about seven or eight miles from Hastings. Again, Harold was pressed to retreat on London, and waste the country as he passed, and thus starve the Norman army into a state of weakness. But, yielding to his own impetuous nature, he resolved to stake his crown on the issue of an immediate battle.

4. This was playing quite into William's hands. Moving with his force from Hastings to a lower hill near Senlac,¹ the Norman leader sent a monk with three **Proposals** to the English King, demanding that he should give up the crown at once, or refer it to the disposal of the Pope, or stake it on the issue of a duel between themselves. Harold, rash indeed, but far from simple, rejected all three. Then came another message, offering to leave Harold all the land north of the Humber, and to give Gyrth all that Godwin had owned, on condition that the crown were forthwith handed over. This being also rejected, sentence of excommunication, pronounced in terms of a Papal bull lying ready in the Norman camp, struck awe through the hearts of the English soldiery. But the terror soon passed, and a firm resolve to fight to the death arose in its place.

5. The night before the battle witnessed the Sussex hills alive with a double line of twinkling fires, separated by a belt of darkness, where the surface dipped between the slopes. Very different were the **midnight occupations** of the rival armies,—the English roaring songs over horns of ale and wine, while the Normans fasted, heard mass, and confessed their sins. A few hours of sleep, and then the sun rose upon a most eventful day,—Saturday, the 14th of October 1066.

6. **The army of Harold**, amounting to scarcely 20,000 men, crowned the ridges of Senlac Hill with a row of battle-axes, then the national weapon. With shields locked together, they stood shoulder to shoulder in a solid mass, protected in front by a barricade of ash-wood stakes intertwined with rods of osier. Above them the royal standard, on which the figure of

¹ The year after the Conquest, William | field of his victory, placing, it is said, began to build Battle Abbey on the | the high altar where Harold fell.

a warrior shone in blazon-work of gold and gems, swung heavily in the air. The men of London guarded the person of their King. The brave Kentish men stood in the van; for theirs was the privilege of striking the first blow in an English battle. Scattered among the ranks or marshalled in separate bands, hundreds of peasants, armed only with forks, alings, or sharpened stakes, lent their aid to defend the land they ploughed. A glorious army, indeed, in valour and patriotism; but in equipment, drill, military science, and the art of manœuvring, far behind their Norman rivals.

7. Above the ranks of William floated a splendid banner, blessed by the Pope himself. His order of battle consisted of three divisions—archers, mailed pikemen, and knights in armour. The last he led in person. After a few fitting words, which told them that their only safety lay in victory, he proceeded to don his hauberk;¹ but in his haste he put it on wrong side foremost! Observing the alarmed looks of the soldiers around him, he hastened to interpret the omen in a favourable way, saying that it signified a change of Duke into King—another instance of his ready wit.

8. The battle began at nine o'clock in the morning by the advance of the Normans. Mingled with the bugle-calls that rang incessantly from the lines arose the gay notes of the minstrel Tailfer, who rode in front singing lays of Charlemagne and Roland. The English, standing like a wedge of granite, replied with shouts of "Holy Rood! Holy Rood!" Up the slope came the Norman charge. Tailfer, having got leave from William to strike the first blow, pierced an Englishman with his lance, but was almost immediately cut down. The shock was terrible. The sweep of the English war-axe, the flash of swords, the thrust of lance and pike, and the showers of arrows, strewed the earth with the dead and the dying, while battle-cries and screams of pain filled the air.

9. At last the Normans gave way, broken on the point of the English wedge; and their lines, deeply gashed with Kentish bills, staggered down the ridge. On one side lay a deep thorny ravine, which, in the hurry of advance, they had not seen; and

¹ *Hauberk*.—A shirt of mail, formed by interweaving small steel rings.

into this floundered a heap of men and horses, the crushing weight of whose iron cases stunned them, or rendered them an easy prey to the pursuing enemy. It was probably then that Gyrth's spear killed the horse of the Norman Duke, who fell to the ground as if dead. A cry that their leader had perished spread dismay through the wavering Norman lines; and nothing but the sight of the Duke himself, who rode bareheaded into the midst of the retreating stream, could have turned the tide of battle at that critical moment.

10. So the battle raged from nine till three, huge waves of French cavalry, preceded by sharp arrow-showers, dashing on a great rock of Englishmen, only to recoil in broken spray. The Norman chroniclers, while dwelling on the great achievements of their countrymen, cannot avoid bearing witness to the surpassing valour of the English foe. But about three o'clock the tide began to run steadily and with growing force **against the English**. Aiming into the air, the Norman archers began to shoot so that their arrows fell like rain on the undefended heads of the enemy. One struck Harold above the right eye, and pierced down to the ball. Tearing it out, he leaned his bleeding face in awful agony on his shield. A pretended flight of the Normans then drew the English from their lines, and scattered them, leaderless, down the slope. This proved a fatal mistake. Norman swords soon hewed their way through the barricade of Senlac, and the last remnant of the English force clustered around the banner of their King, determined to defend it to the last.

11. Then twenty Norman knights took a vow to seize the English standard; and with a rush ten survivors of the twenty succeeded in piercing the gallant ring of footmen and tearing down the flag-staff. Close by lay **the corpse of Harold**, slain either by the arrow-wound or by blows received in the struggle around the banner. The October sun had set long before the noise of battle ceased. In the wood in their rear the islanders fought from tree to tree, until darkness enabled them to flee.

12. When Sunday morning began to glimmer over the silent field, bands of Norman plunderers went out to strip the slain. Wives and mothers, all fear lost in grief, sought wildly among heaps of corpses for the faces of those whom they loved. No

trace of Harold could be found, it is said, until Edith of the Swan Neck recognized beneath a mask of blood and clay the mangled features of the dauntless King. Buried at first on the beach, the body of the last of the Old English Kings was afterwards taken from the sand at the earnest prayer of his mother Githa, and interred within **Waltham Abbey**,¹ which he had founded before the opening of his short and troubled reign. For many a year the legend circled round winter fires, that he escaped from the field of Hastings with a wounded eye, and spent his last days as a monk within the ancient walls of Chester.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the Normans land? Where? What incident occurred as the Duke landed?

2. Where did he march next day? Who fled as he advanced?

3. Where were Harold and his army at the time? What did the King at once do? Who held aloof from him? What offer did Gyrth make? Where did Harold take up a position? What was Harold further advised to do? On what did he resolve?

4. What proposals did William make? How were they treated? What was William's fourth proposal? What was done when that was rejected?

5. How were the two armies respectively occupied the night before the battle?

6. How many men had Harold? How were the English lines protected in front? Who guarded the King's per-

son? Who occupied the van? What part did the peasants take in the fight?

7. How was William's army disposed? What occurred when he was donning his hauberk?

8. When did the battle begin? Who was Taillefer? What part did he play?

9. Who first gave way? Into what were they thrust down? What cry dismayed the Normans?

10. When did the tide of battle begin to turn? How was Harold wounded? By what stratagem were the English drawn from their lines?

11. What vow was taken by twenty Norman knights? What did they accomplish? What was found lying close by? When did the battle end?

12. Describe the scene of next morning. Where was Harold at first buried? Where subsequently? What legend circulated for many years?

CHAPTER II.

THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

1. Interval of Doubt.
2. Coronation of William I.
3. Extent of his Power.
4. Measures of Security.

5. Revolt of the English.
6. Revolt Renewed.
7. The English Dispossessed.
8. Completion of the Conquest.

1. THE victory at Senlac was only the beginning of the Norman-Conquest. That was the slow and laborious work of years. After the battle, the Duke pushed on to Dover, which sur-

¹ *Waltham*, a market-town of Essex lies on the Lea, 18 miles from London,

rendered. There he stayed eight days, until reinforced from Normandy; and then he marched toward London. There the Witan had appointed Edgar the Ætheling King; his chief supporter being Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury. Edwin and Morcar, who went to London after Harold's death, also supported him, in the hope that, as he was a young man, they would get more power into their own hands. William fixed his camp at Berkhamstead (Hertfordshire), to cut off communication with the north. Edwin and Morcar, alarmed for their earldoms, then fled; and Stigand, in name of the Witan, offered the crown to William.

2. **WILLIAM I.**¹—The Conqueror was crowned at Westminster on Christmas-day; but not without tumult. During the ceremony, Ealdred, Archbishop of York, asked the English if they received William as their King. They assented with shouts. At once, as if on a given signal, the Normans around the Abbey, setting fire to the houses, began to plunder. All rushed from the church. William and the prelates stood alone by the altar. In haste the oath was taken and the ceremony ended. This event imbittered the feeling of the English toward their conquerors.

3. William then called himself King of England, but not till five years later was he master of the whole country. Edwin and Morcar had not submitted to him, and they held most of England north of the Wash and west of the Great Ouse. William's work during the next few years consisted in reducing the disaffected Earls and their earldoms to submission.

4. William began his reign well. He retained the English laws, granted a new charter to the citizens of London, and received Edgar among his nearest friends. But this did not last long. He felt that the sword must guard what the sword had won; and, to retain the Norman lords in his service, he rewarded them with the lands of the conquered race. The widows and heiresses of the English nobles who had fallen on the field of Senlac were married to Normans. The churches of Normandy were decorated with the spoils of England; and among other precious gifts from William to the Pope was the

¹ *William I.*—Son of Robert, fifth Duke of Normandy. His wife was Matilda, daughter of Baldwin V., Earl of Flanders. Reigned 21 years.

golden banner of Harold. The Conqueror built a fortress where the Tower of London now stands, and strengthened his position in Winchester—then the capital—by erecting a similar stronghold there.

5. Having thus spent six months, he passed over to Normandy, carrying in his train the flower of England's nobility. His friend Fitz-Osbern and his half-brother **1067** Odo were appointed Regents; and they ruled with a A.D. rod of iron. The English rose; and, when the Regents had trampled out the flame of insurrection in the east, it broke forth with greater violence than ever in the west and the north. After eight months William returned. The fall of **Exeter** reduced the west to peace; and Edwin and Morcar, who had raised the standard of rebellion in the north, were surprised and forced to yield: York opened its gates, and even Malcolm of Scotland for a time retreated before the Norman.

6. Again the English of the north arose, massacred a body of Norman horse at Durham, and laid siege to York. They were joined by Edgar the Ætheling, who had been for some time the guest of Malcolm at Dunfermline. A Danish squadron arrived with timely help, and York was captured by the English. The King again marched northward. He made an agreement with the Danes, who withdrew on receiving a sum **1069** of money. He then carried the northern capital at the A.D. sword's point. There he kept his Christmas Court, having sent to Winchester for his crown. With fire and sword he now traversed York and Durham, taking a revenge so terrible, that from the Ouse to the Tyne there stretched for almost a century a vast wilderness, studded with blackened ruins, its soil unbroken by the plough. On his southward march he left garrisons of Norman soldiers in many strong castles.

7. No dignity, no power, very little land were now permitted to remain with the English. Even the monasteries, which were the banks of that time, afforded no safety from the royal officers, who without remorse rifled the sacred treasures. The English prelates, too, were obliged to resign their **1070** cathedrals to Norman strangers. Of the latter the A.D. most distinguished was Lanfranc, appointed Archbishop of Canterbury in the room of Stigand. Many of the English

land-holders, when driven from their estates, fled into the woods, and kept up an incursive warfare.

8. Of these Hereward the Outlaw was the most noted. He built a wooden fort, called "The Camp of Refuge," in the Isle of Ely, which was surrounded by marshes. There, joined by Earl Morcar, whose brother Edgar had been killed on 1071 the Scottish border, and by many other desperate spirits, A.D. he long bade defiance to William. Nor could all the efforts of the Norman soldiery, aided by the spells of witchcraft, avail to reduce this stronghold, until some monks of Ely showed the Conqueror a secret path over the encircling swamp. Malcolm of Scotland, who had married Margaret, sister of Edgar the Ætheling, now felt himself forced to be on a friendly footing with the Conqueror, though he refused to deliver up the English refugees who had fled to the north. Then may the Norman Conquest be said to have been at last completed.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where did William go after the battle? Whom did the Witan elect? Who supported Edgar? What led Edwin and Morcar to flee? Who offered the crown to William?

2. When was William crowned? Where? What took place at the coronation?

3. How long after that was it before William was master of the whole country? How were these years occupied?

4. How did William reward his Norman followers? With whom did he marry them? What fortress did he build? What was then the capital?

5. Where did William then go? Whom did he leave as Regents in Eng-

land? What did their conduct provoke? How was the west reduced to peace? What success had William in the north?

6. Who aided the English of the north the following year? What terrible revenge did William take?

7. How did he then treat his English subjects? Who was made Archbishop of Canterbury? In whose room? To what kind of life did many of the English betake themselves?

8. Who was the most noted of these? Where did he defend himself? Who joined him? How was his stronghold taken? Who was then forced to make peace with William? Whom had he married? What did he refuse to do?

CHAPTER III.

FEUDALISM IN ENGLAND.

1. The System Described.
2. Mode of Working.
3. Villanage.
4. Domesday Book.
5. The Curfew Bell.

6. The Forest Laws.
7. William's Sons.
8. Death of William I.
9. Accession of William Rufus.
10. Odo's Plot.

1. THE confiscated lands of the English which William divided among his Norman followers, were held by them on

condition of military service being rendered in return. Thus there was introduced into England the **Feudal System**, which continued to hold great power over English society during the next four hundred years. The system derived its name from *feudum*, a piece of land given in *fee*; that is, as a reward for services rendered, and a retainer for services to be rendered. Hence its leading feature, that a tenant, instead of paying his whole rent in corn, or cattle, or money, gave only a small portion of these, and for the rest was obliged to fight under his lord's banner, without any pay, when called to arms.

2. The King owned all the land: he allotted large districts to the barons; they subdivided these among the gentry, or franklins (that is, freeholders); these, again, sublet their land to their vassals,—in every case the higher requiring from the lower service in war. When the King needed an army, he summoned his barons; they called to arms their franklins; these, their vassals and retainers: and thus a large force was gathered around the royal standard. In connection with this system the great earldoms—Northumbria, Mercia, and Wessex—were abolished, and the division into shires or counties was adopted.

3. By the Normans most of the English ceorls and all the serfs were treated as slaves, and were called *villains*. These suffered great hardships, especially during the first century after the Conquest. After Tyler's revolt villanage gradually declined, but not till feudalism was destroyed did the villains become the free peasantry of England.

4. It was in connection with feudalism that William caused the **Domesday Book** to be compiled. In order to ascertain the amount of the dues to which he was entitled **1086** from each estate, he sent commissioners into every A.D. county to survey the land. The result of their labours remains in Domesday Book. It is a register of English land, still preserved, in two vellum volumes, one folio, the other quarto, recording the size of each estate; its division into arable, pasture, meadow, and woodland; the name of the owner, and other details.

5. The Normans also introduced the **Curfew bell** (from French words meaning "fire-cover"), which was rung at eight

o'clock in the evening, as a signal for putting out all fires and candles. Though long looked on as a tyrannical measure, it may have been wisely intended to preserve the wooden houses from being burned.

6. One of William's chief acts was the institution of the **Forest laws**. These laws inflicted on the man who killed a deer, or other beast of chase, the severest punishment. The land between Winchester and the sea was converted into an immense hunting-park by the King. A portion of this park still remains, under the name of the New Forest.

7. The later days of the Conqueror were embittered by many woes; but his chief troubles arose from his own children. Robert, the eldest, surnamed Curt-hose from his short legs, who was nominal Duke of Normandy, quarrelled with his brothers,

William and Henry. For five years he wandered in the neighbouring countries, defying his father, but secretly
1079 supported by his mother, Matilda. The father and the
 A.D. son met unwittingly in single combat, before a Norman castle, when Robert wounded his father in the hand.

8. The French King sneered at William's corpulence when old; and from this trifling cause a war began. The English King, besieging Mantes, rode out to view the burning town; and the plunging of his horse, which trod on some hot ashes,

1087 bruised him severely. The bruise inflamed; and, after
 A.D. six weeks, the Conqueror died near Rouen (Normandy).

9. **WILLIAM II.**¹—The Conqueror was succeeded by his second surviving son, William, surnamed Rufus (the Red) from the colour of his complexion. Robert was acknowledged Duke of Normandy, but he failed to obtain the English throne. While he was enjoying his new dignity at Rouen, his more active and ambitious brother had crossed to England, and, within three weeks after the Conqueror's death, had secured the crown, chiefly by the influence of Lanfranc.

10. A deep-laid plot to set Robert on the throne shook the newly-founded dominion of William. Its leading spirit
1088 was Odo, Bishop of Bayeux and Earl of Kent. But
 A.D. the English, conciliated by some temporary concessions,

¹ *William II.*—Second son of William I. Reigned 13 years.

and still remembering the cruel regency of Odo, supported Rufus. At their head, the King stormed the Castle of Rochester (Kent), and drove the rebellious prelate into exile in Normandy.

QUESTIONS.—1. On what condition did the Norman nobles hold their lands? What system was thus introduced into England? How long did it last? What is the origin of the name "feudal"? What was the leading feature of the system?

2. Describe the system in detail. How was an army gathered? What further change was made in connection with feudalism?

3. Who were the villains? When especially did they suffer hardships? When did they become free?

4. What was the purpose of Domes-

day Book? What does it contain? In what form is it preserved?

5. What was the Curfew bell?

6. What were the Forest laws?

7. From whom did William's chief troubles arise? What took place before a Norman castle?

8. What was the cause of his death? Where did he die?

9. Who succeeded? What was his surname? How did he secure the crown? Who got Normandy?

10. What plot shook William's throne? Who was its leading spirit? How was it defeated?

CHAPTER IV.

THE CROWN AGAINST THE CHURCH.—I. ANSELM.

1. The Quarrel with the Church.

2. Persecution of Anselm.

3. Mortgage of Normandy and Maine to Rufus.

4. Death of Rufus.

5. Accession of Henry I.

6. The Charter of Liberties.

7. The Anglo-Norman Marriage.

8. Robert's Invasion.

9. The Ecclesiastical Compromise.

1. THERE began in Rufus's time a struggle between the Crown and the Church, which lasted, under different forms, till the reign of John. The quarrel had its origin in the power which the feudal system gave the King over Church lands as temporalities, and over bishops as his vassals. But its immediate occasion was the extravagance of Rufus, which knew no bounds. The chief instrument of his extortion was Ralf, surnamed **Flambard** or the Torch, a Norman priest. Abbeys and bishoprics were kept vacant, that the King might receive their revenues; and large sums were demanded from those who obtained appointments, as the price of the benefices.

2. The chief sufferer by William's system of extortion was **Anselm**, appointed Archbishop of Canterbury in 1093. William forced the office on Anselm, and then demanded the customary present of money. Anselm offered five hundred merks. This the King refused as

1093

A.D.

being too little. Anselm had no more to give. Then followed a long course of petty persecution; and at last, in 1097, the Archbishop was forced to quit England. He went A.D. to Rome and laid his case before the Pope.

3. Meantime there had come an offer from Robert to transfer the government of Normandy and Maine to the English King for five years, on receipt of 10,000 1096 merks.¹ The Wars of the Cross had begun. Robert A.D. was eager to join them, and hence his offer. William at once agreed to the terms. Edgar the Ætheling, too, followed the red-cross banner to the Holy Land.

4. Rufus died by violence. When hunting in the New Forest (Hampshire), his train gradually left him in the heat of the chase, and at sunset they found him lying dead, his heart pierced by a broken shaft. The common story is 1100 that Walter Tyrrel, one of his knights, aimed at a stag, A.D. but that the arrow glanced from a tree and pierced the King. Another account says that he was murdered.²

5. HENRY I.³—Immediately after William's death, his brother Henry rode to Winchester and seized the royal treasures. These being secured, he hastened to Westminster, and was there crowned on the following Sunday. Robert, whose the crown was by right, was in Italy on his homeward journey from Palestine.

6. The early acts of Henry, like those of most usurpers, were intended to please the people. He published a **Charter of Liberties**, which was designed to secure the support at once of the Barons, the Church, and the People. One of his earliest acts was to recall Anselm.

1091.—William attempted to take Normandy from Robert. It was agreed that the survivor should hold the united dominions.

1093.—Malcolm III. of Scotland complained that William had built a castle at Carlisle, on land then held as a fief by the King of Scots. He invaded Northumberland. While besieging Alnwick Castle, he and his eldest son were slain.

¹ Merk.—The value of this coin was 13s. 4d.

² A wall round the Tower, a bridge over the Thames, and the Hall of Westminster were the chief public works of Rufus.

³ Henry I.—Third son of William I. Married (1) Edith-Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III. of Scotland, and of Margaret, sister of Edgar the Ætheling; (2) Adelais of Louvain. Reigned 35 years.

7. Henry's marriage was also a politic step, and did more than anything else to please the English. His wife was **Edith-Matilda**, daughter of Malcolm III. of Scotland, **1100** and niece of Edgar the Ætheling. This marriage, **A.D.** therefore, united the Norman and the English royal line, and it helped forward that blending of the races which gave strength and unity to the nation.

8. On his return to Normandy, Robert invaded England. He was marching on Winchester, when Henry overtook him. The Princes met in conference between the **1101** armies, and a few minutes arranged the treaty. Robert **A.D.** agreed to give up his claim on England in return for a yearly pension of 3,000 merks. Some years afterwards war broke out between the brothers, and Robert was taken prisoner at the Battle of **Tenchebrai** (Bretagne). **1106** He was brought to England, and, after thirty years in **A.D.** prison, died at Cardiff Castle (Glamorgan) some months before his brother. Some writers say that his eyes were burned out.

9. During these wars, the quarrel with the Church had been reopened. The contested points were, Henry's claim that the clergy should do homage for their lands; and that he, like his predecessors, should invest new abbots and prelates with the ring and crosier of their office. Anselm, who sided with the Pope, was banished a second time. He returned, however, after three years; and at the Council of London, in 1107, Henry gave up his claim of investiture, but retained his right to homage for the temporalities of each see or abbey.

QUESTIONS. — 1. What struggle began in Rufus's time? How long did it last? What was the origin of the quarrel? What was its immediate occasion? Who was the chief instrument of Rufus's extortion? By what means did he raise money?

2. Who was the chief sufferer by William's extortion? About what did the King quarrel with him? When did Anselm quit England? Where did he go?

3. How did William get possession of Normandy and Maine? What led Robert to make this offer?

4. How did Rufus die? What is the common account of his death?

5. Who succeeded Rufus? Where was Robert?

6. What was the object of Henry's early acts? What charter did he publish? What different classes was it designed to please? What was one of his first acts?

7. Whom did his marriage please? Who was his wife? What union did this marriage effect?

8. When did Robert invade England? What agreement was made between Robert and Henry? What happened

at Tenchebrai? What was Robert's fate? tested points? Which side did Anselm take? What was the consequence of this? When did he return? When
 2. What quarrel was reopened during these wars? What were the consequences? was the dispute settled? How?

CHAPTER V.

GROWTH OF THE BARONS' POWER.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Normandy Secured. | 6. Battle of the Standard. |
| 2. Death of Prince William. | 7. The Civil War. |
| 3. The Angevin Marriage. | 8. Stephen's Triumph. |
| 4. Accession of Stephen. | 9. Flight of Maud. |
| 5. Increase of Feudal Castles. | 10. Treaty of Winchester. |

1. A FEW years later, the war in Normandy was renewed. The Norman barons favoured the claims of Robert's son, William, and his cause was embraced by the French King. But Henry triumphed, and his son William received the dukedom.

2. On the voyage homeward the Prince was drowned. When he was about to embark in his father's ship, a sailor named Fitz-Stephen (whose father had steered the Conqueror's ship to England) offered the Prince the use of "**The White Ship**," manned by fifty rowers. The other vessels left the shore early in the day; but the *White Ship* delayed till sunset, the crew drinking and feasting on deck. They set out by moonlight, and were rowing vigorously to overtake the King's ship, when the vessel struck on a rock in the Race of Alderney, and all on board were lost, except a butcher of Rouen, who floated ashore on a piece of the wreck. William might have been saved, for he had secured a boat; but he returned to rescue his sister, and the boat sank with the weight of the numbers that leaped from the ship's side. It is said that, after hearing of this disaster, Henry never smiled again.

3. Left without a son to inherit his throne, Henry exacted from the prelates and nobles an oath to support the claim of his daughter, Maud, the widow of Henry V., Emperor of Germany. At the same time, to strengthen his connections in France, he caused her to marry **Geoffrey Plantagenet**, Count of Anjou, a boy of sixteen,—an

alliance which pleased neither English nor Normans. The King died at St. Denis in Normandy, after seven days' illness, brought on by eating to excess of lampreys¹ (1135).

4. **STEPHEN.**²—Although Stephen, Earl of Blois, had sworn fealty to Maud, he claimed the vacant throne in opposition to her. He was first Prince of the blood royal, and, besides being personally a favourite, he had on his side the feeling of feudal times, that it was disgraceful for men to submit to a woman's rule. He was joyfully received by the citi- **1135**
zens of London, who proclaimed him King even be- A.D.
fore the barons had decided to accept him. His brother Henry, Bishop of Winchester, gained for him the leading clergy.

5. At a meeting of prelates and barons held at Oxford, Stephen, already crowned King, swore to abolish the Danegeld, to preserve the rights of the clergy, and to allow the barons the privilege of hunting in their own forests, and of building castles on their estates. These concessions gained a strong party for Stephen; but the immediate result of the last was, that there arose throughout England many feudal castles, which long continued to be the strongholds of lawless robber-nobles, who often headed their vassals against the King himself.

6. David of Scotland was the first to draw the sword for Maud. Thrice in one year he ravaged Northumberland. In his third invasion he reached Yorkshire; but he was there met at Northallerton by the northern barons **1138**
and their vassals, who had been roused to action by the A.D.
aged Thurstan, Archbishop of York. There was fought the Battle of the Standard; so called because above the English forces rose the mast of a ship, adorned with the banners of saints and surmounted by a cross, the whole being

¹ Henry gained his surname of *Beauclerc*, or "good scholar," by translating *Æsop's Fables*. He was the first King of England who delivered a formal speech from the throne. During his reign silver halfpence and farthings, which had previously been formed by clipping the penny into halves and quarters, were made round. The woollen manufacture

was introduced by some Flemings, who settled first on the Tweed, and afterwards at Haverfordwest in Pembroke, and Worsted in Norfolk.

² *Stephen*.—Grandson of William I., his mother being Adela, the Conqueror's daughter. Married Matilda of Boulogne, niece of Queen Matilda, wife of Henry I. Reigned 19 years.

bound to a rude car. The Scots were completely defeated, and made peace the next year.

7. **Maud** soon landed on the southern coast with 140 knights, and marched to Bristol, the chief stronghold of her half-brother, Robert, Earl of Gloucester. In the civil war
1139 A.D. that followed, London and the East sided with Stephen, Bristol and the West with Maud.



8. Maud's cause was at first successful. At the Battle of
Lincoln, Stephen was made prisoner. Maud was then
1141 acknowledged Queen by the clergy; but her arrogance
 A.D. soon estranged her warmest supporters. The men of
 Kent, rising in Stephen's cause, entered London, and
 Maud fled to Oxford. The failure of an attack on Winchester,
 in which her brother Robert was taken prisoner, ruined her

cause; and Stephen, exchanged for the Earl of Gloucester, sat once more on the throne.

9. Maud still held **Oxford**, and was there besieged by the King. Famine forced her to leave the castle. She remained four years longer in England, holding Gloucester as the centre of her influence. Then, having lost by death her chief supporters, Milo of Hereford and Robert of Gloucester, she retired to Normandy (1147).

10. Her son Henry had been meanwhile growing up. He had succeeded, on his father's death, to Normandy and Anjou; and had gained Aquitaine¹ by his marriage with Eleanor of Poitou, the divorced wife of the French King. Thus powerful in France, he invaded England, to wrest from Stephen the crown of his grandfather; but the sudden death of Stephen's eldest son, Eustace, hindered the war, and a treaty was made at **Winchester**, by which Henry was acknowledged heir to the English throne, while William, surviving son of Stephen, was to inherit the earldom of Boulogne and the private domains of his father. Further difficulties were prevented by the death of Stephen in less than a year afterwards at Dover.

QUESTIONS.—1. What led to the renewal of the war in Normandy? Who obtained the dukedom?

2. What accident happened on the homeward voyage? How did it occur? For whose sake did William sacrifice himself? What effect had the news on the King?

3. To whom did Henry require his nobles to swear fealty? Whom did she marry? Where did Henry die?

4. Who claimed the vacant throne? What considerations favoured his claim? Who proclaimed him King? How did he gain the leading clergy to his side?

5. What did Stephen promise at Oxford? What did he thus gain? What was the result of his allowing the barons to build castles?

6. Who was the first to draw the

sword for Maud? What battle was fought in his third invasion? Why so called? Who were victorious?

7. Where did Maud land? How was the country divided in the civil war which followed?

8. Whose cause was at first successful? What estranged her supporters? Whither did she flee? How did Stephen recover the throne?

9. What forced Maud to leave Oxford? How long after that did she remain in England? Where did she then go? Why?

10. What possessions did young Henry acquire in France? What step did he then take? What stopped the war? Where was a treaty made? Its terms? How were further difficulties prevented?

¹ *Aquitaine*.—Afterwards called *Guienne*. (See *Map*.)

CHAPTER VI.

NORMAN CUSTOMS AND NORMAN LIFE.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1. Chivalry. | 5. Courts of Justice. |
| 2. Armour of a Knight. | 6. Baronial Castles. |
| 3. Knights Templars and other Crusaders. | 7. Meals. |
| 4. The Tournament. | 8. Dress. |
| | 9. Language. |

1. CLOSELY interwoven with the Feudal System was Chivalry or Knighthood. As a knight, the King was on a level with the poorest gentleman, and passed through the same training,—serving first as a page, and then as an esquire, before he received his golden spurs and took the vows of knighthood.

2. The **Knight**, when fully equipped, was clad from head to heel in armour formed of plates riveted firmly together: below this he wore a dress of soft leather. On his helmet was a crest; on his three-pointed shield a device,—his coat-of-arms. His chief weapon was the lance; but, besides, he wore a two-handed sword, and a poniard called “the dagger of mercy,” used to kill a fallen foe; and he not unfrequently carried a battle-axe or mace.

3. The **Templars** were a famous order of military monks, founded in 1118 A.D. They wore over their armour a long scarlet mantle, with an eight-pointed cross of white sewed on the right shoulder. Their robe of peace was white. The **Crusaders**, also, were distinguished by crosses of various colours. The English wore white, the French red, the Flemings green, the Germans black, and the Italians yellow.

4. The chief sport of chivalry was the **Tournament** or joust. It was held within an enclosed space called the lists. Ladies and nobles sat around in raised galleries to witness the sport, while the lower orders thronged outside the barriers. At sound of trumpet the combatants dashed at full gallop from opposite ends of the lists, and met in the midst with a terrible shock. When the knights were equally matched, the lances flew into splinters, and the horses were thrown back on their haunches; but when one struck his rival with stronger and truer aim, the unlucky knight was hurled from the saddle to the ground.

5. In the reign of Henry II. the **Grand Assize** was insti-

tuted as a mode of deciding disputed cases. The verdict was given by four knights chosen by the sheriff, and sixteen others named by these four. The public business of the realm was transacted by the **Curia Regis**, or King's Court, which at the Conquest took the place of the *Witena-gemôt*.

6. The **Castles** of the Normans were built for safety in turbulent days. Their distinctive feature is the rounded arch, as opposed to the pointed arch and lancet-shaped window of the later Gothic style. Around the whole castle ran a moat, or deep ditch filled with water, over which was thrown a draw-bridge. Close to the castle the shops and houses of those employed by the baron and his vassals clustered together; and thus the Feudal Castle was often the nucleus of the Feudal Town.

7. In their **manner of life** the Normans were more temperate and refined than the English. They had only two regular meals: dinner, taken by the higher classes at nine in the morning; and supper, about four or five in the afternoon. But a meal was often taken in private before going to rest. The Normans introduced the general use of the chief flesh meats found on our tables;—a change which is curiously illustrated in our language, where we find the words denoting the living animal, *ox*, *sheep*, *calf*, *pig*, to be English; while the words applied to the flesh used as food, *beef*, *mutton*, *veal*, *pork*, are Norman or French in their origin.

8. In **dress**, as in food, the Normans introduced many novelties. The gallant of this time, closely shaven, with long hair curling on the shoulders, wore a loose doublet reaching half way down the leg, girt with a gold-embroidered belt. Over this was a short cloak, richly furred and laced with gold. The shoes were the strangest article of dress. They had very long toes, pointed and twisted like the horns of a ram, and sometimes fastened with chains of gold or silver to the knees. A bonnet of velvet, and long hose fastened to the doublet by very many strings, called *points*, completed the costume. The Norman ladies wore a kirtle or under-gown of silk, over which hung a loose wide-sleeved robe reaching to the ground.

9. The Norman **tongue**—rich in words relating to war, chivalry, law, and the sports of the field—being the language

of the court, speedily became that of the church, the halls of justice, and the schools, where, we are told, the boys construed their Latin lessons in French. The English language, like the race that spoke it, made little progress during those days of bondage. Ever since the Conquest, a struggle for mastery had been going on between the English and the Norman languages. About the time of Magna Charta a reaction began in favour of the former, which ended in its triumph. The coinage was little changed by the Normans. Some new coins came into use, of which the chief was the merk, worth 13s. 4d.

QUESTIONS.—1. Through what different grades had a knight to pass?

2. How was the knight clad? What was on his helmet? What on his shield? What was his chief weapon? What other arms were used?

3. Who were the Templars? How were the Crusaders of different countries distinguished?

4. What was the chief sport of chivalry? Where was it held? Describe the encounter.

5. When was the Grand Assize instituted? By what court was the public business of the realm transacted?

6. For what purpose were Norman castles built? What is the distinctive feature of their architecture? By what was the whole castle surrounded?

Where were the shops and houses of the craftsmen? Of what was the feudal castle thus often the nucleus?

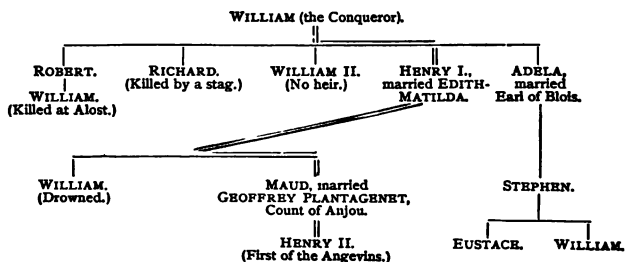
7. In what did the Norman manner of life differ from the English? How many regular meals had the Normans? What meats were introduced by the Normans? How is this change illustrated in our language?

8. Describe the dress of a Norman gallant. Describe the dress of Norman ladies.

9. In what words was the Norman tongue rich? Where was it adopted? What was the state of the English tongue? When did that tongue begin to regain the mastery? What new coin was introduced by the Normans? What was its value?

GENEALOGICAL TREE

CONNECTING THE NORMAN KINGS AND THE ANGEVINS.



CHAPTER VII.

THE CROWN AGAINST THE CHURCH.—II. BECKET.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The House of Anjou—Henry II. | 6. Murder of Becket. |
| 2. Rise of Becket. | 7. Invasion of Ireland. |
| 3. His Policy as Archbishop. | 8. Henry's Penance. |
| 4. The Constitutions of Clarendon. | 9. Homage from Scotland. |
| 5. The Reconciliation. | 10. London the Capital. |

1. **HENRY II.**¹—A new dynasty begins with Henry II. He was the first of the Angevin² Kings, being son of Geoffrey Plantagenet,³ Count of Anjou. Along with his Queen, Eleanor, he received the crown of England at Westminster. During several years, he was engaged in redressing the evils which had sprung from the turbulence of Stephen's reign. He issued new coins; drove from England the foreign hirelings, who had swarmed into the land during the civil war; and—hardest task of all—set himself to destroy the castles of the barons.

Dec.
1154
A.D.

2. The story of **Thomas Becket** (or, à Becket) fills nearly one half of the reign. His father was Gilbert Becket, Port-reeve, or, as we should now say, Mayor, of London. To his mother he was indebted for his early training in religious principles and in good works. A service rendered at the Papal Court gained for him the favour of Henry. By the advice of the aged Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, Henry appointed him Chancellor, and tutor to his son, and he speedily became chief favourite.

3. On the death of Theobald, Becket became Archbishop of Canterbury, then, as it is now, the highest dignity in the Church. At once he changed his conduct. He resigned his Chancellorship, became as frugal in his style of living as he had formerly been luxurious, and exchanged his gay train of knights for the society of a few monks.

4. From this time he began to lose the favour of the King. Dislike deepened into hatred; hatred burst into open quarrel.

¹ *Henry II.*—Son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou, and of Maud, daughter of Henry I. Married Eleanor of Poitou and Aquitaine. Reigned 35 years.

² *Angevin.*—Of the House of Anjou.

³ *Plantagenet.*—This name is derived from *Planta genista*, the Latin term for the shrub we call broom; which, as an emblem of humility, was worn by the first Earl of Anjou when a pilgrim to the Holy Land.

The rights of the clergy formed the immediate subject of contention. Becket, though of Norman parentage, was the first man born on English soil who obtained the Primacy under the Normans. He therefore enlisted the sympathy of all his countrymen, English as well as Norman, in his struggle against the royal power. Henry required that priests accused of crime should be tried by the royal judges. Becket opposed him,

maintaining the right of priests to answer for their con-

1164 duct only to the courts of the Church. A council held

A.D. at Clarendon in Wilts, where the articles known as the

Constitutions of Clarendon were enacted, decided in Henry's favour. Becket yielded at first; but the struggle was resumed, and he fled to France to escape ruin.

5. After six years he was reconciled to Henry. Returning to England, he found the domains of his see forfeited. Henry seemed unwilling to restore them, and this renewed the quarrel. Becket then excommunicated all who held lands belonging to the See of Canterbury.

6. The King, who was in Normandy when the news of this reached him, happened to say, "Is there none of the cowards eating my bread who will free me from this turbulent priest?"

Four knights, who heard him, took an oath to slay

1170 Becket; and, travelling to England, they burst into the

A.D. Cathedral at Canterbury, and cruelly murdered the prelate on the steps of the altar. The scene of the murder deepened the horror with which the people looked on the crime. The tomb of Becket became a resort of pilgrims.

7. One of the chief events of Henry's reign was **the invasion of Ireland**. The island was then divided into six kingdoms. A feud arose between **Dermot**, King of Leinster, and another of the petty kings, and Dermot was driven from the island. From

Henry he obtained leave to enlist soldiers in England.

1171 Richard le Clare, Earl of Pembroke (surnamed Strong-

A.D. bow), and others accepted his terms. Wexford, Waterford, and Dublin were carried by storm; and no efforts of the Irish could dislodge the invaders from the fortresses with which they secured their conquests. Henry then crossed to Ireland, and at Dublin he received the homage of most of the chieftains.

8. Four years after Becket's murder, Henry did penance at his tomb. Walking barefoot through the city of Canterbury, he threw himself on the pavement before the shrine, and was there scourged with knotted cords.

9. Immediately afterwards he received news of the capture of **William the Lion**, King of Scotland, who had been surprised in a mist near Alnwick Castle (Northumberland) by one of Henry's generals. This the King exultingly ascribed to the mercy of reconciled Heaven. William was not released until he had acknowledged his kingdom a fief, and himself a vassal, of the English Crown,—a forced submission which it is important to remember, for on it Edward I. founded his claim to the lordship of Scotland.

10. A law by which Henry substituted **scutage**, or shield-money, for the personal service of the barons, gave the first serious blow to Feudalism. It was followed in 1181 by the **Assize of Arms**, which required every freeman to provide himself with arms and armour. Henry also established six **Circuits of Justice**, with three itinerant judges in each; but these judges abused their power, and the King reduced the number to five in all. About this time **London** became the capital, the civil wars of Stephen's reign having laid Winchester in ruins.

QUESTIONS.—1. What dynasty begins with Henry II.? Whose son was he? What part of France owned his sway? What occupied him for several years? What was the hardest part of the task?

2. Whose story fills nearly one half of the reign? Who was Becket's father? What did he gain from his mother? How did he gain Henry's favour? To what offices did the King appoint him?

3. When did Becket become Archbishop? How did he then change his conduct?

4. About what did he quarrel with the King? Whose sympathy did Becket enlist? Why? What did Becket maintain, in opposition to the King? Where did a council decide the matter? What are its articles called? In whose favour were they? Where did Becket take refuge?

5. When did he return? What renewed the quarrel?

(546)

6. What hasty words did Henry utter? What effect had they? Where did the murder take place? What did Becket's tomb become?

7. What was one of the chief events of Henry's reign? How was Ireland then divided? What led to the interference of the English in Ireland? Who accepted Dermot's terms? What places did the English capture? Where did Henry receive the homage of the chieftains? When?

8. When did Henry do penance for Becket's murder? How?

9. What news arrived immediately afterwards? On what condition was William released?

10. What was the effect of the law of scutage? By what was it followed? What plan was formed for dispensing justice in the country? Why was the number of judges reduced? What led to London being made the capital?

CHAPTER VIII.

ENGLAND SEVERED FROM FRANCE.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Disaffection of the French Barons. | 7. Intrigues of John and Philip. |
| 2. The Royal Crusader. | 8. French War. |
| 3. The Third Crusade. | 9. The Social Effects of the Crusades. |
| 4. The Crusade Abandoned. | 10. King John and Prince Arthur. |
| 5. Richard's Captivity. | 11. Loss of the French Possessions. |
| 6. His Ransom and Release. | |

1. THE powerful French Barons who were vassals of the Counts of Anjou, could not be expected long to continue their allegiance when the Counts became Kings of England. Before Henry's death, disaffection and intrigue began the inevitable work. The discovery that his own sons had been caught in the fatal meshes broke the old Monarch's heart. Richard, whom he had made Lord of Aquitaine, rebelled against his
1189 father, and paid homage to the French King; and the
 A.D. shock of finding his favourite son, John, mentioned in a list of rebels whom he was asked to pardon, threw him into a fever, of which he died.

2. **RICHARD I.**¹—Crossing without delay to England, Richard received his father's crown at Westminster. But to rule England and half of France was not his ambition, and his earliest measures were undertaken to raise money for a **Crusade**. To this he devoted the hoards of his father; for this purpose he sold the honours and offices in his gift, and gave up for 10,000 marks the homage wrested by his father from the Scottish King.

3. Richard (who was surnamed the Lion-heart) and Philip Augustus of France then mustered their soldiers, to the
1190 number of 10,000 men, on the plains of Burgundy. It
 A.D. was the **Third Crusade**. Owing to various delays on the way, nearly twelve months passed before the English King reached **Acre**, then the centre of the war. Four days after Richard's arrival, the gates were thrown open.

4. Jealousy of Richard now caused Philip, on pretence of ill health, to return to France. Before his departure, he swore not to invade the dominions of Richard. From Acre, Richard

¹ *Richard I.*—Son of Henry II. Mtd. Berengaria of Navarre. Reigned 10 years.

led the crusaders to **Jaffa**, inflicting on **Saladin**, who strove to impede the march, a severe defeat. At last the walls of **Jerusalem** rose before the soldiers of the Cross; but their ranks were so thinned, and their energies so weakened, that **Richard** was forced to abandon the enterprise.

5. Wrecked on the northern shore of the Gulf of Venice, **Richard** resolved to cross the Continent in the dress of a pilgrim, under the name of **Hugh the merchant**. But **1193** he was captured by **Leopold, Duke of Austria**, who ^{A.D.} sold him to the Emperor, **Henry VI.**, for £60,000. He was thrown into a castle in the Tyrol.

6. After fourteen months of captivity, and much debate, a ransom was fixed: 100,000 merks were wrung from the English people, and **Richard** was set free. He **1194** ^{A.D.} had been absent from England four years.

7. When **Richard** recovered his freedom, he found his crown of England and his French coronets equally in danger. His brother **John** aimed at the one; **Philip of France** desired the others,—and this, perhaps, was the true cause of his desertion at **Acre**. **John's** party melted away before his brother's presence, and he humbly sought for pardon; which was granted at the intercession of his mother.

8. The rest of **Richard's** reign was occupied by wars in France, waged in support of the claim of English supremacy there. He received his death-wound in a mean quarrel. A treasure had been found on the estate of a vassal. **Richard** received part, but demanded all. Being re- **1199** ^{A.D.} fused, he besieged the Castle of **Chaluz**,¹ from the walls of which an arrow struck him on the shoulder. The head was extracted by an unskilful surgeon, mortification set in, and the King died.

9. The social effects of the Crusades now began to be felt. They opened the East to commerce, and poured its riches into England; they weakened the power of the nobles, whose estates began to pass into the hands of wealthy commoners; and they thus began those changes by which the House of Commons was afterwards established.

¹ *Chaluz*.—One hundred miles north-east of Bordeaux.

10. **JOHN.**¹—Richard, who left no heir, bequeathed his throne to his brother John. A council held at Northampton confirmed the choice, and John was crowned at Westminster. He was not the lineal heir; for his elder brother, Geoffrey, had left a son,—**Arthur**, now aged twelve years. This boy's claim was supported by the French King; but at the Castle of Mirebeau² in Poitou he fell into the hands of John, who cast him into the dungeons of Rouen.³ Here all trace of him was lost. It was believed that John slew him with his own hand.

11. John, having divorced his first wife, married **1204** Isabella, the affianced wife of the Earl of Marche; and A.D. this, coupled with the death of Arthur, gave his French subjects a fair excuse for transferring their allegiance to the French King. In a few years he was stripped of Normandy, Anjou, and all the French possessions of the English Crown.

QUESTIONS. — 1. Whose allegiance were the Angevin Kings of England likely to lose? When did disaffection and intrigue begin? Who lent themselves to the work? What effect had this on Henry? How did Richard offend him? What caused his death?

2. Who succeeded? What was Richard's ambition? How did he obtain money for this object?

3. Who joined Richard in this Crusade? Where did they muster their soldiers? What time elapsed before Richard reached Acre? What effect had his arrival?

4. What led Phillip to return to France? Where did Richard lead the crusaders? Whom did he defeat? Why had he to abandon the work?

5. What befell him on his way home? Who ultimately got possession of him?

6. What ransom was paid for Richard's release? How long had he been absent?

7. Who had been aiming at the crown of England? Who at his French possessions? What dissipated John's party?

8. In what was the rest of Richard's reign spent? Where did he receive his death-wound? What was the origin of the quarrel?

9. Mention the chief social effects of the Crusades.

10. Who succeeded Richard? Who was the lineal heir? What became of him?

11. How did John get rid of his first wife? Who was his second wife? What did his conduct give his French subjects an excuse for doing? Of what was he in a few years deprived?

¹ *John.*—Son of Henry II. Married (1) *Hadwisa* of Gloucester; (2) *Isabella* of Angoulême. Reigned 17 years.

² *Mirebeau.*—Eighteen miles from Poitiers.

³ *Rouen.*—Capital of Normandy.

CHAPTER IX.

MAGNA CHARTA.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. John's Quarrel with the Pope. | 6. John Refuses Concession. |
| 2. The Interdict. | 7. John Promises Concession. |
| 3. John's Submission. | 8. Runnymede. |
| 4. Stephen Langton. | 9. The Great Charter. |
| 5. John Temporises. | 10. Personal Liberty. |

1. **THE** great struggle between the **Crown and the Barons**, which resulted in the foundation of English liberty, sprang directly out of that quarrel between the Crown and the Church which had disturbed England ever since the days of Rufus. The See of Canterbury having fallen vacant, the monks nominated John de Gray, Bishop of Norwich; the Pope, Innocent III., appointed Stephen Langton. The monks yielded to the Pope; but John, defying the Pontiff, drove them from their abbeys and seized their treasures, because they had deserted his minister and favourite, De Gray.

2. The Pope retaliated by putting England under an **Interdict**. For six years there was no worship in the **1208** land; the churches were closed; the dead were cast **A.D.** without prayer into the earth.

3. The Pope at last called on Philip of France to dethrone the impious monarch; and then John yielded. He took an oath of fealty to the Pope, agreeing to pay to the Roman coffers 1000 merks as yearly rent for his kingdom.

4. **Stephen Langton**, Cardinal, and Archbishop of Canterbury, whose nomination to that see John had opposed, appeared as the chief champion of English freedom. At a great council, held in St. Paul's in 1213, he laid before the assembled prelates and barons an old charter, granted by Henry I., but swept out of memory by the storms of a century. On this forgotten fragment the Great Charter was to rise. Meeting in the Abbey of St. Edmundsbury¹ on November 20th, the confederate patriots swore solemnly on the high altar, that, if the King refused their just demands, they would not sheathe the sword until they had wrested from him a charter under his own seal granting what they asked.

¹ *Bury-St.-Edmunds* is the chief town | *Larke*. The ruins of a magnificent of West Suffolk, and lies on the river | abbey still adorn the town.

5. When, in the first week of January 1215, a stern band entered John's presence and laid their demands before him, his pale lips could hardly ask for time to consider the petition. Easter week being fixed for the giving of a final answer, the base King set himself during the intervening months to surround himself with what defences he could. He appealed to the Pope for assistance, resigned to him the privilege of electing abbots and bishops, and solemnly swore that he would lead a crusading army to the Holy Land.

6. Easter week came. The King lay at Oxford. Marching from Stamford to Brackley,¹ the barons met Langton and two earls, by whom they sent forward to the King a list of the needed reforms. Langton read the parchment in the hearing of the King. Thereupon John, at whose elbow stood Pandulph the legate, became furious. "And why do they not demand my crown also?" he cried; adding, with an oath, "I will not grant them liberties that will make me a slave."

7. He might have spared his fury; for brave soldiers, steel in hand, were resolved to take what his mean heart could not bear to give. A failure at Northampton did not daunt them. Bedford threw its gates open. And news from London told them how its mighty heart throbbed with delight at their resolution. On Sunday the 24th of May, through open gates and silent streets they entered the capital, while the citizens were at church. This awakened John from his dream of folly. He saw but seven knights who lingered by his falling throne. There was not a moment to lose. A promise must be made, and an oath sworn. He bade Pembroke go to London, and tell the barons that on a certain day and at a certain place he would grant their full demands.

8. There is by the Thames, not far from Staines,² a narrow strip of green meadow-land, which bears the name of **Runnymede**.³ That little field witnessed, in the thirteenth century,

¹ *Stamford*, lying on the Welland partly in Lincolnshire and partly in Northamptonshire, was one of the "Five Burghs" of the Danes. *Brackley*, in the south of Northamptonshire, lies near one of the head streams of the Ouse.

² *Staines* is a market-town of Middlesex, situated on the left bank of the Thames, about 17 miles from London. (See the *Map*.)

³ This place is called in the Great Charter "Runing mede inter Windlesorum et Staines." By some the phrase



as great a sight as England ever saw. Pouring, with the rising sun, from the gates of Staines, a long cavalcade of barons, headed by Fitzwalter, their general, wound across the field, and halted in the meadow beside the silver Thames. A smaller party, including the King and Pandulph, rode down from Windsor Castle to the appointed place. And there, with the faintest show of objection, John took pen in hand, and affixed his royal signature to *Magna Charta*—the Great Charter of English freedom. Then riding home to Windsor, he flung himself on the ground, gnashing with his teeth, and cursing the Charter whose ink was scarcely dry.

9. In this famous charter, the rights of the clergy and of the barons are laid down with unmistakable distinctness. But its most striking feature lies in its provisions for **the mass of the people**. Even the *villain*, who ploughed the fields, was not forgotten. The property of the baron and of the citizen was shielded by an article which said, "No scutage or aid shall be imposed on the kingdom *except by the Great Council of the realm*, unless it be to redeem the King's body, to make his eldest son a knight, and once to marry his eldest daughter; and that to be a reasonable aid: and in like manner shall it be concerning the *Tallage* and Aids of the city of London, and of other cities, which from this time shall have their liberties; and that the city of London shall fully have all its liberties and free customs as well by land as water."

10. The person of the freeman was thus protected: "No freeman shall be taken or imprisoned, or be disseised of his

is said to mean the "meadow of coun- | its name from a stream that passed
cil;" but it more probably derived | through it.

freehold, or liberties, or free customs, or be outlawed or exiled, or be any other wise destroyed; nor will we pass upon him, nor send upon him, *but by lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land.* We will sell to no man, we will not deny or delay to any man, justice or right." The holding of the free-man, the goods of the merchant, the waggon of the villain were not to be torn from their owners. "Thirty-two times," says Sir Edward Coke, "have the Great Charter and the Charter of the Forests¹ been confirmed by Acts of Parliament."

QUESTIONS.—1. In what did the struggle between the Crown and the Barons result? Out of what did it spring? What were the circumstances of that dispute?

2. How did the Pope retaliate? What was the effect of the Interdict?

3. To whom did the Pope commit the punishment of John? What effect had this? What agreement did John make with the Pope?

4. Who was the chief champion of English freedom in the struggle that followed? What document did he lay before the council? Of what was this charter the foundation? What resolution did the patriots form at St. Edmundsbury?

5. When did they present their demands to John? Under whose protection did John place himself?

6. When did the barons go to John for his answer? What did he say when he heard their demands?

7. Where did the barons suffer a reverse? What town threw its gates open to them? Which side did London take? What effect did that produce on John? What message did he send to the barons?

8. Where did John and the barons meet? What deed was there signed? What did John do immediately afterwards?

9. What is the most striking feature of the Great Charter? How was the property of the baron and the citizen protected?

10. How was the person of the free-man protected? How often has the Charter been confirmed? What charter was confirmed along with it?

CHAPTER X.

THE CROWN AGAINST THE BARONS.

1. John's Revenge.

2. Louis of France.

3. Henry III.

4. Hubert de Burgh.

5. Rival Parties.

6. Encroachments of the Church.

7. Influx of Foreigners.

8. The Barons' War.

9. The Provisions of Oxford.

10. The Battle of Lewes.

11. Leicester's Parliament.

12. Battle of Evesham.

13. Death of Henry III.

14. Edward in Palestine.

1. JOHN had been all courtesy and kindness at Runnymede, but the first tidings the barons heard thereafter were, that the

¹ *Charter of the Forests*, first signed by Henry III. in 1217. It curtailed the extent of the royal forests, and mitigated the penalties which protected them. The two charters were generally confirmed together.

tyrant, having raised an army of mercenaries, was laying waste the land. The sky was red with the blaze of burning towns and corn-fields: the people fled to the forests and the hills.

2. In despair, the barons called **Louis of France**, who had married the niece of John, to take the crown. Louis landed at Sandwich, and John was marching to meet him, when, on the shores of the Wash, he saw his money, the crown jewels, and the baggage of his army swept away by the rising tide. His agitation brought on a fever. He died at Newark Castle, and was buried at Worcester.¹

3. **HENRY III.**²—Louis held London and the southern counties; but the barons, whose feelings changed on the death of John, rallied around young Henry. The King being only ten years old, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed Regent. Louis was forced to abandon his enterprise by a complete defeat sustained at Lincoln.

4. Pembroke died in the second year of his regency. He was succeeded by **Hubert de Burgh**, the Justiciary,³ who, with the aid of Langton, the Primate, set himself vigorously to curb the feudal barons and restore order in the country.

5. Henry was declared of age at seventeen, and then began to reign in person. His sympathies were entirely with the foreign party in his Court, which desired the restoration of English influence in France. Advantage was taken of this by the popular or home party to increase its power. When the King asked for a subsidy for a French expedition in 1225, it was granted on condition that he should confirm the Great Charter: thus early was the constitutional principle introduced of making votes of supply depend on concessions to the people.

6. The French expedition failed, and Henry cast the blame

¹ During John's reign London Bridge was finished; letters of credit were first used in England; and the custom of annually electing a Lord Mayor and two Sheriffs of London was begun, Henry Fitzalwyn being the first Lord Mayor. The fisheries were now very profitable,

the salmon of the Dee and the herring of the Sandwich shore being especially prized.

² **Henry III.**—Son of John. Married Eleanor of Provence. Reigned 56 years.

³ **Justiciary.**—Chief-Justice or Judge.

on De Burgh, who was known to be averse to interference in continental affairs. That minister's difficulties were **1228** further increased by the death in 1228 of Archbishop
 A.D. Langton, to whom, more than to any one else, England is indebted, both for the Great Charter and for the custom of requiring its repeated confirmation. After the Primate's death, the exactions of Rome grew more excessive. The Pope claimed the revenues of all vacant sees, and the land was filled with Italian clergy.

7. The indignation of the barons and the people was excited ; a wide-spread conspiracy was formed, and riots occurred
1232 in several towns. De Burgh being known to sympathize with the conspiracy, was disgraced, and cast into
 A.D. prison. He was succeeded by Peter des Roches, Bishop of Winchester, a Poitevin by birth. His promotion was
1236 followed by a large influx of Poitevins, who were
 A.D. favoured at Court. Then the King married Eleanor of Provence, and Provençals flocked into England, to the ill-concealed disgust of the English barons.

8. Henry's fondness for foreign favourites, together with the encroachments of the Church, at length roused the spirit of the nation. The barons revolted under **Simon de Montfort**, Earl of Leicester, the husband of Eleanor, the King's sister.

9. At Westminster the barons attended the council in full armour ; and, when they again assembled at Oxford,
1258 they appointed a committee of twenty-four to reform the
 A.D. State. This committee enacted—1. That four knights should sit in Parliament to represent the freeholders of every county ; 2. That sheriffs should be chosen annually by vote ; 3. That accounts of the public money should be given every year ; and, 4. That Parliament should meet three times a year—in February, June, and October. These enactments were called the **Provisions of Oxford**.

10. But reform was delayed by disunion among the barons ; and the King of France, being chosen umpire, gave
 May 14, decision in Henry's favour. This kindled a civil war.
1264 At **Lewes** in Sussex Henry was defeated and taken
 A.D. prisoner. Prince Edward gave himself up next day.

11. Early in the following year a Parliament was called by

Leicester, in the King's name; to which he summoned representatives from cities and boroughs, in addition to the prelates, barons, and knights of the shire, already comprised in the assembly. This was the first outline of our modern Parliament, the prelates and barons corresponding to the House of Lords, the others to the **House of Commons**, which accordingly dates from this time. But then, and long afterwards, these different Estates sat together in one assembly.



12. Prince Edward, having escaped from his guards, met Leicester at **Evesham** in Worcestershire. The battle raged long and bloodily. The captive King, who had been forced into the field by Leicester, fell slightly wounded, and would have been killed if he had not cried out, "I am Henry of Winchester, the King." Edward knew his voice, and rushed to his aid.

13. The crown now rested firmly on the Monarch's head; and the civil war being over, the

martial Edward joined the Crusade of St. Louis. During his son's absence Henry died, worn out by the troubles of his long reign—the longest in our annals except that of George III.¹

14. **EDWARD I.**²—Edward's crusading exploits were few and insignificant, and he left Palestine after a stay of eighteen months. In Italy he heard of his father's death, but his homeward journey was delayed by a dis-

1265

A.D.

Aug. 4.

1272

A.D.

¹ The introduction of the linen manufacture by some Flemings, the use of leaden water-pipes, and of candles instead of wooden torches, were among the improvements of this time. A license to dig coal was now first granted to the people of Newcastle. We may also trace to this time our gold coinage.

Science was much benefited by the researches of Roger Bacon, a Franciscan friar of Oxford, whose magnifying glasses and magic-lanterns gained for him the reputation of a wizard.

² **Edward I.**—Son of Henry III. Married (1) Eleanor of Castile; (2) Margaret of France. Reigned 35 years.

turbance in Guienne. Before passing into England, Edward arranged with the Countess of Flanders a quarrel which had long interrupted the trade in English wool,—a commodity highly prized by the Flemish cloth merchants. Edward and his Queen were crowned at Westminster two years after Henry's death. Alexander of Scotland was present, and received £5 a day for the expenses of his journey.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did John behave after the barons had departed? What did he do?

2. Whose aid did the barons call in? Where did he land? What befell John's army on its way to meet him. What effect had this on John? Where did he die?

3. What part of England did Louis hold? Why did the barons desert him? How old was he? Who was appointed Regent? Where was Louis defeated?

4. Who succeeded Pembroke as Regent? To what task did he apply himself?

5. When did Henry begin to reign in person? With which political party did he sympathise? How did the popular party take advantage of this? What principle was thus introduced?

6. For what was De Burgh blamed? How were his difficulties further increased? What praise is due to Langton? What increased after his death?

7. Who were indignant? What took place? To whose fall did this lead? Why? Who succeeded De Burgh? To

what did his promotion lead? What caused an influx of Provençals?

8. What led to the revolt headed by Montfort?

9. What step did the Parliament at Oxford take? What did this committee enact? What are these enactments called?

10. What delayed reform? What kindled the civil war? Where was Henry taken prisoner?

11. What remarkable innovation did Leicester make in the Parliament which he called? The date? What element was thus introduced into the Constitution?

12. What was the result of the Battle of Evesham?

13. What enabled Prince Edward to join the Crusade? When did King Henry die?

14. How long did Edward remain in Palestine? What delayed his homeward journey? What trade did Edward make an arrangement for reviving? How? Where were Edward and his Queen crowned? Who was present?

CHAPTER XI.

WARS WITH WALES AND SCOTLAND.

1. Llewelyn, Prince of Wales.
2. Edward, Prince of Wales.
3. Disputed Succession in Scotland.
4. Reduction of Scotland.
5. William Wallace.
6. Death of Wallace.
7. Robert the Bruce.
8. Edward II. and Gaveston.
9. The Lords Ordainers.

10. Bannockburn.
11. The Barons' Power Checked.
12. Capture of the King and Despensers.
13. Death of the King.
14. Edward III.—The Regency.
15. Independence of Scotland.
16. Fall of Mortimer.
17. Renewed War with Scotland.

1. THE great aim of Edward's ambition was to conquer Wales and Scotland, and thus to unite under his sway the whole

island. When Edward demanded homage from Llewelyn, the Prince of Wales, he refused with disdain. For five years the English King traversed the land with foreign 1282 troops. Llewelyn held out bravely; but his death A.D. extinguished the hopes of Welsh independence.

2. His brother David held out for a while; but being delivered up by his own countrymen, he was hanged by order of the conqueror. The title, "Prince of Wales," borne by the eldest son of the English Sovereign, was first given 1284 to the young Edward, who was born at Caernarvon A.D. (1284).

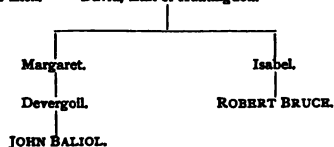
3. The death of Margaret, the "Maid of Norway," confused the succession to the **Scottish Crown**. Thirteen competitors appeared; but the claims of two, John Baliol and Robert Bruce,¹ were superior. Edward claimed a right to interfere, on the ground that William the Lion, when the 1292 captive of Henry II., had acknowledged himself a vassal of the English crown; and that Richard I. had no right to sell the deed of vassalage, since it was not his property, but that of all English Sovereigns. On this pretext for meddling with the affairs of Scotland, Edward appointed Baliol King.

4. Baliol, called repeatedly to London to answer for his conduct, found his vassalage so irksome that he renounced his fealty and rose in arms. But his feeble resistance was soon subdued. He was ignominiously dethroned at Strickathro (near Montrose), whence after some time he was allowed to retire to Normandy. Edward marched through Scotland to Elgin, exacting homage; and on his departure, he left the Earl of Surrey as Guardian of the kingdom. The regalia of Scotland and

1290.—The Jews, to the number of 16,000, were banished from England.

¹ *Baliol and Bruce*.—The following table shows their claims:—

WILLIAM the Lion. — David, Earl of Huntingdon.



the ancient coronation-stone¹ were carried to England by Edward.

5. War soon broke out again, under **William Wallace**. He defeated the Earl of Surrey in the **1297** Battle of **Stirling Bridge**, and drove the English across the Border. Wallace then ravaged the north of England, and on his return was proclaimed Guardian of Scotland.



6. News of these doings reached Edward in Flanders. He hastened home, marched into Scotland with a large army, and at Falkirk defeated Wallace, who was basely deserted by the Scottish nobles. For some years longer Wallace held out in the mountain fastnesses with a chosen band. At last he was betrayed by a false friend, sent to London in irons, and there hanged, beheaded, and quartered.

7. In six months from the death of Wallace, **Robert the Bruce**—the grandson of Baliol's rival—was crowned King of Scots. He defeated the Earl of Pembroke at Loudon Hill (Ayrshire), and the revolt made rapid progress. The news roused the old warrior to his last great effort. But he did not reach the Border. He lay long at Carlisle on a bed of sickness, and he died at Burgh-on-Sands, in the vicinity. His last wish was that his bones should be carried at the head of the army till Scotland was subdued. Nevertheless he was at once buried in Westminster Abbey.

8. **EDWARD II.**²—The Scottish war was almost immediately abandoned, and young Edward hastened back to London. Piers Gaveston, a Gascon, the vicious companion of his boy-

¹ *Coronation-stone*.—The *Lia Fail*, or Stone of Destiny, carried by the Scots from Ireland. It long stood in Dunstaffnage Castle (Argyleshire), and was thence carried to Scone. It was placed in the Abbey of Westminster, completed

by Edward in 1285, and still forms part of the coronation-chair. The regalia were restored to Scotland in the reign of Edward III.

² *Edward II.*—Son of Edward I. M.d. Isabella of France. Reigned 20 years.

hood, was recalled from exile; and to him was committed the regency of the kingdom, while Edward sailed to Boulogne to marry Isabella of France. The splendour of Gaveston excited the jealousy of the barons. Twice the weak King banished him; twice he was recalled to his honours. But the confederate nobles, headed by the Earl of Lancaster, seized him at Scarborough Castle, and caused his head to be struck off at Blacklow Hill, near Warwick (1312).

9. Before the death of the favourite, a Parliament, sitting fully armed, appointed a council of twenty-eight peers to reform the Government. These peers, who were called **Lords Ordainers**, drew up "Articles of Reform," the chief of which were—that Parliament should be called together at least once a year; that the King should not declare war nor leave the kingdom without the consent of the barons. Edward found excuses for postponing his formal acceptance of these Articles till 1318. 1310 A.D.

10. Linlithgow, Roxburgh, Edinburgh, and Perth had been taken by Bruce; when, to save Stirling, which was sorely beset, Edward marched northward with 100,000 men. Bruce could muster scarcely 40,000 troops. The armies met at **Bannockburn**, near Stirling. On the evening before the great day, Bruce, mounted on a small pony, and armed only with a battle-axe, slew an English knight—Henry de Bohun—who attacked him in front of the lines. Next day the English cavalry began the attack; but they soon retreated in dismay, for the ground was full of pits, filled with sharp stakes and covered with hurdles. Then poured in a deadly flight of arrows from 50,000 English bows; but the archers were attacked in flank by a body of light cavalry, and completely broken. Bruce, with a rapid charge of the men of Argyle and the Isles, shook the English ranks. Just then the Scottish camp-followers, to the number of 20,000, rushed down from a hill close by. The English, thinking this a fresh army, broke into headlong rout. Edward rode to Dunbar, and thence took ship for England. June 24, 1314 A.D.

11. Edward found new favourites in Hugh le Despenser and his son. The Earl of Lancaster tried to rouse the barons against them; but he was defeated at Borough-bridge and beheaded

at Pontefract. In a Parliament which met at York in the following year, most of the ordinances of 1310 were **1321** repealed; and an Act was passed giving to knights, **A.D.** prelates, and *burgesses* the same voice in sanctioning laws as the barons claimed.

12. But the Lancastrian party still survived, and new events stirred it to more vigorous life. There was an open quarrel between **Edward** and his *Queen*. She fled to France; her son followed; Lord Mortimer, an adherent of Lancaster, joined them; and ere long the Queen landed on the Suffolk **Jan. 18,** coast with a foreign army. The King and the elder **1327** Despenser escaped into Wales, but they were taken by **A.D.** the young Earl of Lancaster. Despenser was at once gibbeted. It was then declared in Parliament that Edward II. reigned no longer, and that his son reigned in his stead.

13. For eight months the dethroned Monarch was removed from castle to castle, until within the walls of *Berke-* **Sept. 20,** *ley*¹ Keep he died by violence. Nothing more is **1327** known than that one night fearful shrieks broke the **A.D.** stillness; and the next morning the citizens of Bristol were called to look on the distorted face of their late King.

14. **EDWARD III.**²—A Council of Regency was appointed, the young King being only fifteen years of age; but the real power was held by Isabella and Mortimer.

15. A Scottish army invaded the northern counties, and committed great havoc; but it retreated without fighting a **1328** pitched battle. The Treaty of Northampton was then **A.D.** made, in which Edward, by the advice of Mortimer, acknowledged Scotland to be a distinct and *independent kingdom*. The treaty was cemented by the marriage of Jane, the King's sister, to the Scottish Prince, David.

16. The odium of this peace, the execution of the Earl of Kent, uncle of the King, and the growing manhood of **1330** Edward, now eighteen, overthrew the power of Isabella **A.D.** and her favourite. He was seized in Nottingham Castle, and hanged at Tyburn: she dragged out the remaining

¹ *Berkeley*.—16 miles from Gloucester. | Married Philippa of Hainault. Reigned

² *Edward III.*—Son of Edward II. 50 years.

twenty-seven years of her life in her mansion of Risings, where the King paid her a formal visit once a year.

17. The great Bruce was dead (1329), and his son David was yet a child. Edward Baliol, making a bold push for the throne, which his father had held as a vassal of England, laid siege to Berwick. The Regent moved to save a fortress so important, and was met at **Halidon Hill**¹ by the English King, who supported Baliol. There was fought a battle so disastrous to the Scots that Baliol gained the crown; and the eastern lowland counties south of the Forth were given to Edward, and continued for a time under his sway.

July 19,
1333
A.D.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the great aim of Edward's ambition? What Prince defied Edward? How long did the war last? What extinguished the hopes of Welsh independence?

2. What was the fate of his brother David? Who was the first English Prince of Wales?

3. What led to Edward's interference in the affairs of Scotland? How many competitors for the crown were there? On what did Edward base his claim? Whom did he appoint King?

4. What led Baliol to renounce his fealty? How was he punished? Whom did Edward appoint Guardian of Scotland? What did Edward remove from Scotland?

5. Who renewed the war? What victory did he gain? To what office was he appointed?

6. Where was he defeated by Edward? What was his fate?

7. Who was the next hero of Scottish independence? When was he crowned? Who marched against him? Where did Edward die? What was his last wish? Where was he buried?

8. How did young Edward deal with the Scottish war? Why did he go to France? Who was made Regent in his absence? How did he excite the jealousy of the barons? What did they do to him?

9. Who were the Lords Ordainers? What were the chief articles of reform

drawn up by them? When did Edward accept these?

10. What led Edward to march to Scotland in 1314? How large was his army? How large was Bruce's? Where did the armies meet? What took place the evening before the battle? Who began the attack next day? What threw them into confusion? How were the English archers broken? What completed the rout of the English? Where did Edward go?

11. Who were Edward's new favourites? Who tried to rouse the barons against them? What was his fate? What was done at the York Parliament? What Act was passed?

12. What party still survived? What events stirred it into fresh life? Whither did the King escape? With whom? Who captured them? What did Parliament then declare?

13. When did Edward II. die?

14. Who succeeded? How old was he? To whom was the government intrusted? Who had the real power?

15. What part of the country was invaded? What treaty followed? What did it acknowledge? How was the peace cemented?

16. What overthrew the power of Isabella and Mortimer? What was the fate of each?

17. What led to a renewal of the Scottish war? What battle was fought? What were its results?

¹ *Halidon Hill*.—Near Berwick.

CHAPTER XII.

THE FIRST FRENCH WAR.

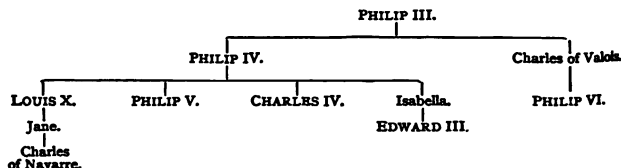
- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Edward's Claim to the French Crown. | 8. Capture of David of Scotland. |
| 2. Indecisive Campaigns. | 9. Capture of Calais. |
| 3. Invasion of Normandy. | 10. The Black Plague. |
| 4. The March to Crecy. | 11. Renewal of the French War. |
| 5. The Array of Battle. | 12. Battle of Poitiers. |
| 6. The Attack. | 13. Treaty of Bretigny. |
| 7. The Prince of Wales Wins his Spurs. | 14. The French Provinces again Lost. |

1. To unite in his person the crowns of France and England, was the great aim of the policy of Edward III. The three sons of Philip IV. had died heirless; and Edward of England and Philip of Valois were rivals for the vacant throne.¹ The latter was preferred, and was proclaimed as Philip VI. At the same time France, as the ally of Scotland, declared war against England.

2. The English King sailed to the Continent to assert his rights on the battle-field. Two campaigns were indecisive. A naval victory at **Sluys**,² on the Flemish coast, was gained by the English; but they were beaten back from the walls of Tournay, and a truce for a year was made. Again the war was renewed; again Edward failed.

3. In the seventh year of the war, the English King landed at La Hogue, in Normandy. There the Prince of Wales, known better as the **Black Prince**, from the colour of his armour, received knighthood on the sands, and was associated with his father in the command of the army: he had now reached the age of sixteen.

¹ The following table shows the rival claims:—



² *Sluys*.—Fron. *Sloos*.

4. The English army spread its ravages almost to the suburbs of Paris, but then turned sharply off to the north—bent, it is said, on getting safely out of France. But guards held the bridges of the Somme. Philip had caught the English army as in a trap from which there seemed to be no escape. Almost in despair, Edward surveyed the Somme, but could find no ford and no unguarded bridge. At this crisis he heard from a prisoner of a spot below Abbeville, where the river could be passed at the ebb of the tide. Dashing in at the proper time, he led his forces over in the face of a great body of the enemy, which in vain tried to prevent the passage of the stream. Philip in hot chase found the water too high to follow. He had to go round by Abbeville, while the English King made his way to the forest of Crecy, where a battle must certainly be fought.

5. Leaving Abbeville at sunrise on Saturday, August 26th, 1346, Philip toiled with his soldiers on to Crecy, where the army of Edward, refreshed with food and sleep, awaited his approach. The English army, of 30,000 men, was drawn up in three lines. Its flanks were guarded by trenches. Philip hastily threw his force of 120,000 men into three lines also. The sky grew dark as the armies faced each other; rain and thunder came on.

6. When the sun shone again at five o'clock in the afternoon, the French archers, armed with cross-bows, advanced to the attack in a huge mass of 15,000 men. They were tired with



their heavy march of eighteen miles. The sun dazzled their eyes, and destroyed their aim. All at once a shower of arrows began to pour on them, with a force which neither shield nor armour could withstand, and they fled.

7. The French cavalry then fell with fury on the foremost battalion, led by the Prince of Wales. An Englishman who fought by the Prince sent for aid to the King, who stayed with the reserve by a wind-mill on a hill; but Edward refused, saying, "Let the boy win his spurs: his shall be the glory of the day." In vain the French King tried to pierce the phalanx of archers which stood between him and his routed horsemen; his bravest knights fell fast around him; the horse he rode was killed;—there was no hope but in flight. Eleven princes, twelve hundred knights, and thirty thousand common soldiers are said to have fallen in the battle, and in the carnage of the next day. John, the blind King of Bohemia, was among the slain. He was led into the battle by attendant knights, whose bridles were interlaced with his. His crest and motto—three ostrich feathers with the words *Ich dien*, "I serve"—have ever since been borne by the Princes of Wales.

8. In the same year, but two months later, was fought the Battle of Nevil's Cross. David of Scotland, having regained his throne, invaded England as the ally of France; but he was defeated and made prisoner by Philippa, Edward's Queen.

9. The victor of Crecy at once invested Calais. After the siege had lasted nearly a year, famine forced the garrison to open their gates. Calais remained for upwards of two centuries in the hands of the English.

10. A terrible sickness called the Black Plague, which had swept over Asia and the south of Europe, now broke out in France and England. Many evils followed the pestilence. Nearly all the labourers who had escaped the plague left the country. Labour was so expensive that the crops were often allowed to moulder away, and the price of food rose fourfold. To check this evil, Parliament in 1351 passed a Statute of Labourers, compelling workmen to accept of the wages in use before the plague. It was supple-

mented by a second statute in 1353, forbidding labourers to quit the parish in which they worked. Thus was villanage restored.

11. Philip of France had died, and his son John ruled. The war was renewed in 1355, chiefly under the conduct of the Prince of Wales. The second campaign was signalized by the Battle of Poitiers.

12. The Prince had pierced too far into the centre of France, and on his return he found an army, seven times as large as his own, between him and Bordeaux. To fight his way back was his only resource. Fortunately for him the battle-ground was among vineyards, which impeded the French cavalry. As at Crecy, the English archers won the day. The French King was thrown to the ground and made prisoner with his young son.

13. There were thus two royal captives in England,—David of Scotland, and John of France. The former was ransomed in 1357. The latter was freed by the Treaty of Bretigny, called "The great peace," by which Edward renounced all claim to the French crown, retaining, instead of his ancestral dominions, only Poitou, Guienne, and the town of Calais. Three million golden crowns were to be paid as the ransom of John; but, failing to raise this sum, he returned to his captivity, and died at the Savoy, a palace in the Strand, then a suburb of London.

14. The French subjects of the Black Prince objected to the heavy taxation with which he oppressed them, and appealed to the King of France. Charles V. summoned the Black Prince to his court. The Prince declared war, but he was soon obliged by illness to return to England. From that time the English cause in France declined; and in 1374 there remained to Edward only the towns of Calais, Bordeaux, and Bayonne.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the great aim of the policy of Edward III.? Who were rivals for the French crown? Why did France declare war?

2. What naval victory did the English gain?

3. In what year of the war did Edward undertake a new invasion? Where

1352.—The Statute of Treasons was passed, defining the offences which constitute high treason.

1353.—The first Statute of Praemunire was passed by Parliament, forbidding the introduction of Papal bulls into England; and the Statute of Provisors, denying the right of the Pope to dispose of benefices in England.

did he land? What took place at La Hogue?

4. How far eastward did the army go? How was it caught as in a trap? How did it escape? What course was Philip forced to take?

5. On what day was the Battle of Crecy fought? How many men were in each army?

6. Who began the attack? Under what disadvantages did they labour? What caused them to flee?

7. Who attacked the division of the Prince of Wales? What message was sent to the King? What did he reply? What was the result of the battle? How many are said to have fallen? Who was among the slain? What did the Prince of Wales adopt from him?

8. What battle was fought two months later? What was the issue?

9. By what was the victory of Crecy

followed? How long did Calais remain in the hands of the English?

10. By what were France and England visited in 1348? How did it increase the price of food? How did Parliament try to check the evil? What was thus restored?

11. When was the French War renewed? What battle signalized the second campaign?

12. Why was the Black Prince forced to fight? How did the ground favour the English? Who won the day? Who were captured?

13. When was David of Scotland released? When was the King of France freed? Why did he return to captivity? Where did he die?

14. What led the Black Prince to quarrel with his French subjects? What followed? What compelled the Prince to return to England? What was the effect of his departure?

CHAPTER XIII.

THE BARONS AGAINST THE COMMONS.

1. The Barons of the Royal Council.
2. The Work of the Good Parliament.
3. Its Work Undone.
4. The Barons and the Clergy.
5. John Wyclif and Church Reform.
6. Richard II.—Reform Resumed.

7. The Poll Tax.
8. The Peasants' Revolt.
9. Death of Tyler.
10. Death of Wyclif.
11. Border Wars.
12. Richard's Power Absolute.

1. In the later years of his reign, Edward III. became enfeebled both in body and in mind. During that time the government was managed almost entirely by the **Barons of the Royal Council**,—an arrangement which greatly displeased the Commons. It appears to have been about this time that the Parliament was divided into **two Houses**, each occupying a separate chamber. The prelates and the greater barons formed the House of Lords. The knights of the shire (representatives of the lesser barons) and the burgesses formed the House of Commons.

2. A crisis came in the Parliament of 1376 (sometimes called the **Good Parliament**), when the Commons protested against the abuse of power by the Barons of the King's Council. Their demands were supported by the Black

Prince ; but they were opposed by his brother, John of Lancaster, who made himself the champion of the baronage both against the Commons and against the Church.

3. At this juncture the Black Prince died. The Duke of Lancaster at once assumed the supremacy in the Council, and the progress of reform was checked. Under his influence a new Parliament was called, which undid all that the Good Parliament had done.

4. Side by side with this struggle between the Barons and the Commons there went on another struggle between the Barons and the Church. The Clergy were among the wealthiest men in the country, but they were said to contribute least to the common good. The rapacious Barons, with Lancaster at their head, proposed to seize the Church lands and apply them to national purposes.

5. A theological aspect was given to the dispute by the writings of John Wyclif. In 1377 he was summoned before the Bishop of London, to answer for heretical views in his book *Of the Kingdom of God*. The Duke of Lancaster accompanied him to the court, stood by his side, and insulted the bishop. That provoked the common people, who were jealous of the power of the barons, and especially of Lancaster. For a time it deprived Wyclif of popular support. But his boldness in demanding reforms in the Church ere long brought the mass of the people to his side. Before the end of the year, Edward III. died.¹

6. RICHARD II.²—Richard, son of the Black Prince, was crowned in his eleventh year. During the King's minority the power was vested in twelve councillors, his uncles being excluded. The House of Commons resumed its work of reform, claiming the right to confirm the appointment of officers of State, and to demand from them an account of how the taxes were spent. The French war was continued, but it ended in failure. The treasury, moreover, was empty, and fresh taxation became necessary.

¹ The use of English in courts of law (in place of Latin and French) was established about 1362. The rebuilding of Windsor Castle began, 1356.

² Richard II. — Son of the Black Prince, and grandson of Edward III. Married (1) Anne of Bohemia ; (2) Isabella of France. Reigned 22 years.

7. This was imposed in the form of a **poll tax** of one shilling on every person above fifteen. As this tax exacted as much from the poor serf as from the rich land-owner, it excited **1380** a revolt of the peasants. The leaders were Wat Tyler, A.D. and Jack Straw, a priest. In this insurrection we discover the result of those statutes of labourers by which the plague had been followed. The claims of the lower orders were encouraged by the preaching of **John Ball**, a priest, who spread abroad the doctrine that all men were born equal, and had equal rights. He took as his text,—

“When Adam delved and Eve span,
Who was then the gentleman?”

8. The rioters swarmed in vast numbers to London, sacked the private dwellings, and burned the prisons. Richard met them at Mile-end, and granted their demands; but the charters were no sooner sealed than the riots began again, and several murders were committed.

9. Next day the King held a conference in Smithfield with Tyler, who was followed by 20,000 men. The rebel **1381** leader, happening to lay his hand on his dagger, was cut A.D. down by Walworth, the Lord Mayor; and as he lay on the ground he was killed by one of the King's esquires. Richard, regardless of the frowns and bended bows of the rebels, galloped up to them, crying, “Tyler was a traitor: I myself will be your leader!” This boldness had a great effect on the crowd: their numbers melted away, and the rebellion was soon over. But the promise of pardon was recalled by the House of Lords, and fifteen hundred perished on the gibbet.

10. Meantime **John Wyclif**, in the retirement of his study at Oxford, had been working out the problem of Church **1382** reform which he had taken in hand. His writings were A.D. condemned by a council of prelates, and he and all his followers were ordered to quit Oxford. Wyclif retired to Lutterworth in Leicestershire, where he translated the Bible into English. By his works he sowed the first seed of the Reformation in England. He died in 1384. His disciples were called **Lollards**, or singers.

11. France and Scotland in alliance attempted an invasion of

England, but met with little success. Richard, in return, penetrated the latter kingdom as far as to Aberdeen, committing great havoc in Edinburgh, Dunfermline, Perth, and Dundee. But in 1388 the Battle of **Otterbourne**, between the Douglasses and the Percies, ended in the defeat of the English. This battle formed the foundation of the old Border ballad of "Chevy Chase."

12. Richard's uncles often interfered in the government; but at the age of twenty-two he shook himself free from the trammels of guardianship. The removal of the Duke of Gloucester, his uncle, who was murdered in the prison of Calais, and the grant of a life-tax on wool, made Richard in his last year an **absolute King**.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did Edward III. become in the later years of his reign? Who then managed the government? Whom did this displease? What change in the meetings of the Parliament took place at this time? How were the Estates divided?

2. When did a crisis come? What then occurred? Who supported the Commons? Who opposed them?

3. What checked the progress of reform? What was done by the new Parliament?

4. What other struggle went on at the same time? What was the ground of quarrel between the Barons and the Clergy? What was the aim of Lancaster and his party?

5. What gave a theological aspect to the dispute? Why was he summoned before the Bishop of London? Who went with him to the court? Who were provoked by this? What brought the mass of the people to his side? When did Edward III. die?

6. Who succeeded him? Who ruled during the King's minority? What position did the House of Commons

take up? Why did increased taxation become necessary?

7. In what form was it imposed? Why was the tax displeasing to the common people? Who led the revolt? Of what was this insurrection the result? Whose preaching encouraged the lower orders? What did he take as his text?

8. What damage did the rioters do in London? Where did Richard meet them? What did he do? By what was the sealing of the charters followed?

9. Where did the King meet them next day? What then occurred? How did the House of Lords act?

10. Whose writings were condemned by the prelates? How were he and his followers punished? Where did he go? How did he occupy his time? When did he die?

11. Why did Richard invade Scotland in 1385? What damage did he do? What occurred in 1388?

12. Who often interfered in the government? At what age did the King throw off the trammels of guardianship? What made Richard's rule absolute?

1385
A.D.

1388
A.D.

1389
A.D.

CHAPTER XIV.

SOCIAL CONDITION—TIME OF THE ANGEVINS.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Dwellings. | 5. Sports. |
| 2. People. | 6. Learning. |
| 3. Wages—Employments. | 7. Language and Literature— |
| 4. Dress. | Chaucer and Wyclif. |

1. **Dwellings.**—Gradually the higher classes became more refined. Glass windows, earthen vessels, coal fires, and candle light, added to the comfort of their homes. The use of tiles instead of thatch improved their dwellings. But furniture was still scanty.

2. **People.**—The leading merchants dealt in wool. Even the kings did not disdain to trade in fleeces. The army was composed of four classes:—1. The *men-at-arms*, or heavy cavalry. 2. The *hoblers*, or light cavalry. 3. The *archers*. 4. The *footmen*.

3. **Wages—Employments.**—Some idea of the value of money in those days may be gathered from the rate of wages. Hay-makers got a penny a day; labourers, three-halfpence; carpenters, twopence; and masons, threepence. No one was allowed to work out of his own parish, except the men of Staffordshire, Derbyshire, Lancashire, and those from the marches of Scotland and Wales, who helped to reap the English harvest.

4. **Dress.**—The dress of Edward the Third's Court may be taken as a specimen of the fashion prevailing during the period. The exquisites wore a coat, half blue, half white, with deep sleeves; trousers reaching scarcely to the knee; stockings of different colours; and long-toed shoes. The most striking part of the ladies' attire at this time was a towering head-dress like a mitre, some two feet high, from which floated a whole rainbow of gay ribbons.

5. **Sports.**—The tournament was still the first of sports; but there were also tilting at the ring, when knights strove at full horse-speed to carry off on the point of a levelled lance a suspended ring; and tilting at a wooden figure called a Quintain, which, turning on a pivot, bore with outstretched arm a wooden sword. He who struck fairly in the centre was untouched; but if the lance struck too much on one side, the awkward

tilter caught a sound blow from the sword as he rode past the whirling image. Horse-racing and bull-baiting were sports in which high and low took equal interest; but the great pastime of the lower classes was archery, which they were bound by royal proclamation to practise on Sundays and holydays after Divine service; upon which occasions other sports were forbidden.

6. **Learning.**—In an age when “might was the only right,” and the qualities most prized were personal strength and skill in arms, it is not strange that education was neglected. The clergy alone were learned. They were the lawyers, the physicians, and the teachers of the day. Every monastery had its *scriptorium*, or writing-room, where manuscripts were copied by the patient monks. The books thus produced were very costly, as much as £40 being paid for a copy of the Bible.

7. **Language and Literature.**—The English tongue began to approach its present form. It was not until the time of Edward III. that England began to recover from the shock of the Norman Conquest. Then our modern literature had its birth. Geoffrey Chaucer wrote his *Canterbury Tales*; about the same time appeared the works of John Wyclif, who, as Chaucer is called the father of English verse, may justly be styled the father of English prose.

QUESTIONS.—1. How were the dwellings of the period improved?

2. What of trade at this period? Of what four classes was the army composed?

3. What was the rate of wages for hay-makers? Labourers? Carpenters? Masons? To what law were the men of Staffordshire, &c., an exception?

4. Describe the dress of the period. What was most striking in ladies' dress?

5. Relate what you know of the sports of the time. What was the *Quintain*? What was the great pastime of the lower classes?

6. What was the state of learning at this period? What was the *scriptorium*?

7. What was the state of the English tongue? When had modern English literature its birth? Who was the father of English poetry? Of English prose?

CHAPTER XV.

THE LANCASTRIAN REVOLUTION.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Landing of Hereford. 2. Deposition of Richard. 3. Plots and Insurrections. 4. The Statute of Hereford. 5. The Percies' Revolt. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Imprisonment of James of Scotland. 7. The Riotous Prince Hal. 8. Increasing Power of the Commons. 9. Henry V. 10. Persecution of the Lollards. |
|---|---|

1. RICHARD's success in centring power in himself led directly to his fall. He had alienated all classes of his subjects. The wide-spread discontent needed but an occasion to break out, and that was soon found. A quarrel having arisen between the Duke of Norfolk and the Duke of Hereford, son of John of Gaunt, the King banished both,—Norfolk for life, Hereford for ten years. Norfolk never returned, but Hereford reappeared, to demand, as he said, the estates of his dead father, which Richard had seized. He landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire with only twenty followers; but when he reached London, 60,000 men marched under his banner. Richard was in Ireland. When he arrived at Milford Haven, he found that the crown had passed away from him.

2. At Flint he became the prisoner of Hereford, and was led with mock respect to London. The Parliament met in Sept. 30, Westminster Hall. Richard was deposed, and Hereford was greeted as King Henry IV. of England. Before the second month of 1400 closed, the dethroned King had died in the dungeons of Pontefract, either by starvation or by the hand of an assassin. He left no heir.¹

3. HENRY IV.²—The dread of rivals, which usually haunts usurpers, beset the new King. He detained in close custody the young Edmund, Earl of March, who, according to the law of inheritance, was King by right. He was troubled by a common report that Richard was living and in Scotland, and he knew that his own title was defective. On these and similar grounds plots were built up; but none succeeded.

¹ In the reign of Richard II. Windsor Castle was completed, the workmen being obliged, by the system of purveyance, to give their services for nothing.

² Henry IV.—Grandson of Edward III., and son of John of Gaunt. Married (1) Mary of Hereford, (2) Jane of Navarre. Reigned 14 years.

4. In 1401 the first **Statute of Heretics** was passed, giving power to bishops to imprison heretics, and to hand over to the civil power those who refused to recant, in order that they might be burned. The first victim of this persecution was the Rev. **William Sawtre**, chaplain of St. Oswith's in London, who was deposed from the ministry and burned at the stake in Smithfield. **1401** A.D.

5. Henry's most troublesome enemies were the Percies, father and son. The father was Earl of Northumberland; the son, from his fiery spirit, was named **Hotspur**. Henry refused to ransom from the Welsh Sir Edmund Mortimer, Hotspur's brother-in-law. Hotspur took the field, and was joined by the Welsh under Owen Glendower. The King met them at **Shrewsbury**. The battle was decided in favour of Henry by the death of Hotspur. **1403** A.D.

6. In 1405, James, the eldest surviving son of the Scottish King, when on his way to the schools of France, was driven by a storm on the English coast. He was captured, and was imprisoned at Pevensey (Sussex), and afterwards at Windsor, till 1424. **1405** A.D.

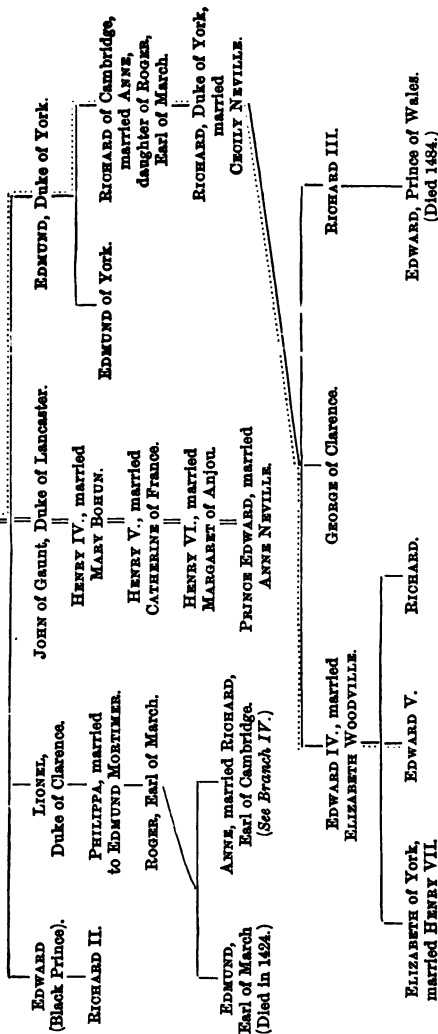
7. Henry's declining years were vexed by the vicious conduct of his **eldest son**; who, however, sometimes showed gleams of a better nature. Once, when Chief-Justice Gascoigne had sentenced to imprisonment a riotous companion of the Prince, the latter drew his sword on the judge; who, nothing daunted, sent him too to the King's Bench Prison; thus vindicating the power of the laws even over the royal family. The Prince submitted with a good grace, and bore no malice against Gascoigne, whom he afterwards treated with much kindness. Fits of epilepsy wore out the strength of Henry at a comparatively early age. The last seized him at Westminster, and he was buried at Canterbury.¹ **1413** A.D.

8. Step by step the **Commons** were extending their power. They established their claim to vote supplies of money, and to inquire into the expenditure. The insecurity of Henry's posi-

¹ The earliest mention of cannon in England occurs in the narrative of the siege of Berwick by Henry IV. in 1405; in which we are told that a shot from a great gun shattered one of the towers so much that the gates were thrown open by the alarmed defenders.

CONNECTING THE ANGEVINS AND THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

EDWARD III., married PHILIPPA of Hainault.



The double line marks the direct descent of the House of Lancaster; the dotted line that of the Houses of York; but the intermarriage of the second and fourth branches gave colour to the Yorkist claims.

tion made him so dependent on Parliament that he agreed not to raise aids without the assent of Lords and Commons.

9. **HENRY V.**¹—The riotous Prince Hal was suddenly transformed into the brave and spirited King Henry V. His earliest acts were to discard his old companions; to call around him the wisest of the land, conspicuous among whom was Sir William Gascoigne; to set free the Earl of March; and to restore the Percy estates to the exiled son of Hotspur.

10. Early in this reign the **Lollards** drew upon themselves the royal anger, by their efforts to effect religious reform. Chief among them was Sir John Oldcastle, the Lord of **1414** Cobham. He gathered his followers in St. Giles's Fields; **A.D.** but the King burst on their meeting at the dead of night. The leader fled, but many of those who were taken were doomed to death; and, three years afterwards, Oldcastle was burned as a felon and a heretic (1417).

QUESTIONS.—1. How did Richard's absolute power lead to his fall? What led to a revolution? What did Hereford return to claim? Where did he land? How many men had he when he reached London? Where was Richard? What did he find on reaching Milford Haven?

2. Where did he become Hereford's prisoner? What ceremony then took place? Where did Richard die? When?

3. What dread beset the new King? What did he do with the Earl of March? What report troubled him?

4. What statute was passed in 1401? Who was the first victim of the persecution?

5. Who were Henry's most troublesome enemies? What was the cause of their revolt? By whom was Hotspur

joined? What battle was fought? What decided the victory?

6. What event gave Henry the ascendancy over Scotland?

7. By what were Henry's declining years vexed? Mention an incident which betokened a better nature. Of what did Henry die? When? Where was he buried?

8. How were the Commons extending their power? What forced Henry to submit to Parliament? To what condition did he agree?

9. What change came over Henry V. on his accession? What were his earliest acts?

10. Who incurred the royal anger? Who was their chief? Where did he gather his followers? What was his end?

¹ *Henry V.*—Son of Henry IV, and Mary of Hereford. Married Catherine of France. Reigned 9 years.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE SECOND FRENCH WAR.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Henry's Claim to the French Crown. 2. His Campaign in France. 3. Agincourt. 4. The Effects in England. 5. The Treaty of Troyes. 6. Death of Henry V. 7. The Regency. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. The Siege of Orleans. 9. Joan of Arc. 10. Death of the Maid. 11. Decline of English Power in France. 12. Expulsion of the English from France. |
|---|---|

1. TAKING advantage of a civil war which convulsed France, Henry revived the claim of Edward III. to the French crown. The Duke of Bedford was appointed Regent; and the Barons, much to their delight, were called to arms.

2. A fleet bore Henry with 30,000 soldiers from Southampton to the mouth of the Seine. He took **Harfleur**, and then marched for Calais; but the Constable of France awaited his approach near the village of **Agincourt**.

3. One hundred thousand French lay there. The English were reduced to 15,000. But Crecy was not far distant, and the memory of former glory stirred every English heart.

Oct. 25, The invincible archers led the way in the early morning.
1415

A.D. With a cheer they rushed on, bearing in addition to their usual weapons long sharp stakes. These they fixed obliquely before them, so that a wall of wooden pikes met the French charge; and, thus protected against the French cavalry, they poured in their deadly arrows. Then slinging their bows behind them and drawing their swords, they burst with the men-at-arms on the breaking ranks; and the first, the second, and the third division gave way in succession. The Constable of France and 11,000 knights fell on that fatal day: the victors lost only 1,600 men.

4. Without following up this blow, Henry crossed to Dover. No welcome seemed too warm for him. His journey to London was through shouting crowds and beneath waving banners. The Parliament, unasked, voted him large sums, and granted him for life a tax on wool and leather. At no time were supplies of money more freely voted than in this reign. But, in return for their liberality, the Commons gained the important constitutional point, that no law should have force unless it had received their assent.

5. The war was renewed in 1417. The fall of **Rouen** laid Normandy at Henry's feet. His path to the French throne was opened by an unforeseen occurrence. There **1419** was civil strife between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy. The Duke of Burgundy was murdered; and his faction threw its whole weight on Henry's side. He was thus enabled to dictate terms of peace to the French Monarch, and the Treaty of **Troyes**¹ was framed. Its **1420** leading conditions were:—1. That Henry should receive in marriage the French princess Catherine; 2. That he should be Regent during the life-time of the imbecile Charles; 3. That he should succeed to the French throne on the death of that prince.

6. Next year the war was reopened; but Henry again triumphed. He was now within sight of the goal of his ambition. But in the very noon of his glory he **1422** died at Paris. His remains were borne to England, **A.D.** and were laid in the vault of Westminster.²

7. **HENRY VI.**³—The successor to the throne was an infant nine months old. A Council of twenty, presided over by Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, a son of **1422** John of Gaunt, managed the government. The Duke **A.D.** of Bedford was made Regent; and, during his absence in France, his brother Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, acted as Protector of the Realm of England.

8. The Loire now separated the English provinces from the French. In 1428 it was resolved that the English army should cross that river, and ravage the provinces which owned the sway of Charles. As a preparatory step, **Orleans** was besieged.

¹ *Troyes*.—(Pron. Tr'wah'.) On the Seine, 90 miles south-east of Paris. Henry and Catherine were married there.

² Henry's widow, Catherine, married Owen Tudor, a Welsh gentleman. Their eldest son, created Earl of Richmond, was the father of Henry VII., the first Sovereign of the Tudor line.

³ In Henry's reign the famous Richard Whittington, a merchant of London, was for the third time Lord Mayor of that city. He made a great fortune by the voyages of a ship called the *Cat*—a

name which has given rise to the well-known nursery tale, "Whittington and his Cat."

The foundation of the British Navy may be ascribed to this reign; for Henry caused a ship of considerable size to be built for him at Bayonne. The fleets already spoken of were either merchant vessels or ships hired from foreign states.

⁴ *Henry VI.*—Son of Henry V. and Catherine of France. Married Margaret of Anjou. Reigned 39 years.

The energy with which the English carried on the siege dispirited the French, who looked upon Orleans as lost.

9. Suddenly there came a change. **Joan of Arc**, servant in a village inn of Lorraine, sought the presence of the French King (Charles VII.), and there proclaimed that she had a mission from Heaven to drive the English from Orleans and to crown Charles at Rheims.¹ The monarch accepted her services. Clad in white armour, she rode on a black steed to the rescue of Orleans. She passed the English lines, and drove the English from before the walls; thus winning her title,—“The Maid of Orleans.”

10. In two months more Charles was crowned at Rheims, and her mission was fulfilled. A few months later she was made prisoner, and was sold to the English Regent. **1431** A.D. After twelve months' imprisonment, she was burned as a witch in the market-place of Rouen.

11. The young Henry was now crowned at Westminster and at Paris. But the crowning at Paris was an empty form. **1435** A.D. Soon the great Bedford died; and the Duke of Burgundy made peace with Charles. The loss of Paris speedily followed; and in 1444 the English were glad to make a truce for two years.

12. Thereafter the war was resumed. French troops poured across the Loire; and soon Rouen and all Normandy submitted. From the north of France Charles turned to the south. Gate after gate opened to his triumphant march, until in **1451** the banner of England waved nowhere, from the A.D. Strait of Dover to the Pyrenees, except on the citadel of Calais. Thus ended the dream of an English empire in France.

QUESTIONS. — 1. What claim did Henry V. revive? Who was appointed Regent?

2. What French fortress did he take? Where did he then march? Where did the Constable of France await him?

3. How many were there in the French army? How many in the English? Who began the attack? What means had they of protecting themselves against the

French cavalry? How were the three divisions of the French army broken? How many of the enemy fell? How many of the victors?

4. How was Henry received in England? How did the Parliament treat him? What did the Commons gain in return for their liberality?

5. When was the war renewed? What secured Normandy to Henry? What

¹ Rheims.—Ninety miles north-east of Paris.

opened his path to the French throne? Give the terms of the Treaty of Troyes.

6. When was the war renewed? When and where did Henry die?

7. How old was his successor? Who managed the government? Who was made Regent? What position had Gloucester?

8. What separated the English from the French provinces? Why was Orleans besieged?

9. Who revived the hopes of the

French? How did she win her title, "The Maid of Orleans"?

10. What occurred two months later? When was the Maid captured? To whom was she transferred? How did the English treat her?

11. Who was then crowned at Paris? What two blows fell on the English in France? When was a truce made?

12. What province soon submitted to Charles? When and how did the dream of an English empire in France end?

CHAPTER XVII.

WARS OF THE ROSES—DESTRUCTION OF FEUDALISM.

1. Death of Gloucester and Beaufort.
2. Execution of Suffolk.
3. Jack Cade's Rebellion.
4. The Rioters in London.
5. Somerset and York.
6. The Wars of the Roses.
7. First Battle.
8. York Claims the Throne.

9. The Lancastrian Triumph.
10. The Yorkist Triumph.
11. The Lords Supreme.
12. Capture of King Henry.
13. Edward's Quarrel with Warwick.
14. Flight of Edward.
15. Overthrow of Warwick.
16. Tewkesbury.

1. THE great pillars of the House of Lancaster were the Duke of Gloucester, and his uncle, Cardinal Beaufort. But they died within six weeks of each other; and then visions of the crown began to rise before the mind of **Richard, Duke of York**. He was heir-presumptive to the throne; for Henry as yet had no child. 1447
A.D.

2. The loss of the French provinces had excited great discontent throughout England. The Duke of Suffolk, who was blamed for giving up Anjou and Maine to Queen Margaret's father, was impeached and banished. On his way to Calais, he was seized and executed on board the "Nicholas of the Tower."

3. The rumour of preparations for revenge reached the men of Kent, who had furnished the ship which seized Suffolk. Headed by **Jack Cade**, they marched to Blackheath. The King's troops were defeated at Sevenoaks, and their leader was slain. Cade then marched to London, and Henry withdrew to Kenilworth. 1450
A.D.

4. For two days the rebels held the city; but on the third a free pardon was offered to all who should return to their homes at once, and Cade was left with scarcely a follower. He fled;

but he was discovered and slain in a garden, near Lewes in Sussex.

5. At this critical time the King was seized with a fit of insanity, and the reins of government were intrusted to the Duke of York, with the title of Protector. This, however, did not last long; for the recovery of Henry deprived York of his office.

6. The Duke of York then appealed to arms, and the famous **Wars of the Roses** began. They were so called from the badges of the rival armies: the ensign of the House of York being a white, that of the House of Lancaster a red rose. This great contest was essentially a war of nobles, in which the mass of the people took but a slight part. It shattered Feudalism in England.

7. The first battle was fought at **St. Albans** in 1455, when the Lancastrians were defeated. A pretended reconciliation followed. But, the war being renewed, the Yorkists were again victorious, at **Bloreheath** in Staffordshire (1459); and at **Northampton**, where Henry was made captive (1460).

8. Now, for the first time, York formally laid claim to the throne, as the representative of the eldest surviving branch of the royal family. The sympathies of the people were undoubtedly with York. The question was debated in Parliament, and an arrangement was made that the crown should pass to York and his heirs on the death of Henry.

9. Queen Margaret, indignant that her son Edward, Prince of Wales, should be thus excluded from the throne, called her supporters to her side, and routed the Yorkists at **Wakefield Green** in Yorkshire (1460), where the Duke of York was slain.

10. Edward, Earl of March, the son of the fallen Duke, succeeded to the title and the claims of his father. At **Mortimer's Cross** in Herefordshire he swept the Royalist troops before him (1461). A few days later, Margaret defeated the Earl of Warwick in the second battle of **St. Albans** (1461). But when Edward marched to London, he was received by the citizens with shouts of joy. The Parliament having declared that Henry had forfeited the throne, the young Duke was at once proclaimed King, as **Edward IV.**

11. This change was effected by the vote of the **House of**

Lords alone. That House still formed the governing body. The Commons gave *assent*, not advice: but they granted the supplies; and in this lay their strength. Their House did not really represent the people. Freedom of election was interfered with both by the Crown and by the Barons.

12. **EDWARD IV.**¹—The Wars of the Roses were not yet ended. The North remained faithful to Henry; London and the South had declared for Edward. But a victory won at Towton, in Yorkshire, established the kingdom of Edward. Margaret sailed to France in hope of aid.
- 1461 A.D. Again the ranks of the Lancastrians were arrayed; but at Hedgeley Moor and Hexham in Northumberland they were again broken. Henry fled. After lurking for a year in Lancashire, he was taken and thrown into the Tower.
13. In 1464 Edward married Elizabeth, widow of Sir John Grey, and daughter of Sir Richard Woodville, afterwards Earl Rivers. The favour shown to the Queen's friends led to a quarrel with Warwick, known in history as the "**King-maker**," who could not tamely brook the loss of his influence with Edward.
14. An insurrection was attempted, but failed, and Warwick went abroad. After an absence of five months, he landed near Plymouth, and was joined by the Lancastrians, as well as by many of the Yorkists. Edward fled to Holland, and Henry was brought from his cell to wear the crown once more.

15. In a few months Edward returned with men and money. He landed at Ravenspur; and when he reached Nottingham, 60,000 men had joined him. His brother Clarence, long an adherent of Warwick, rejoined the Yorkist ranks, and the army was soon within the walls of London. The decisive battle was fought at **Barnet** (Middlesex), where the Lancastrians were scattered, leaving every one of their leaders, Warwick included, dead on the field.

16. On that very day Margaret and her son landed at Weymouth. Three weeks later, their army was cut to pieces and they were made prisoners at **Tewkesbury** in Gloucestershire.

¹ Edward IV. — Great-great-grandson of Edward III. Married Lady Elizabeth Lionel, Duke of Clarence, son of Grey (or Woodville). Reigned 22 years.

Prince Edward was stabbed in the victor's tent after the battle, by Clarence and Gloucester. Margaret survived Tewkesbury eleven years. Henry died in the Tower, 1471 probably by violence, on the day of Edward's triumphal entry into London.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the great pillars of the House of Lancaster? When did they die? Who then began to aspire to the throne?

2. Why was Suffolk unpopular? What was his fate?

3. What rumour alarmed the men of Kent? Where did they march? Under whom? What success had they? Where did they then go?

4. How long did they hold the city? What induced them to return home? What was the end of Cade?

5. Why was York made Protector? What took place on Henry's recovery?

6. What step did York then take? What wars began? The origin of the name? What was the essential nature of the contest? What was its result?

7. What was the first battle? Its result? Who were victorious at Blore-heath?

8. What did York then claim? With whom did the people sympathize? What arrangement did the Parliament make?

9. Who called the Lancastrians together? Where did she defeat the Yorkists? Who was slain?

10. Who was now the Yorkist leader?

What victory did he gain? Where did Margaret gain a victory a few days later? Who declared for Edward? What did Parliament declare?

11. By whose vote alone was this change made? Wherein lay the strength of the Commons? Who interfered with freedom of election?

12. What part of England adhered to Henry? What victory established the kingdom of Edward? Who were victorious at Hedgeley Moor and Hexham? Where was Henry captured?

13. What alienated Warwick from Edward? By what name is Warwick known in history?

14. Why did Warwick go abroad? When did he return? Where did he land? By whom was he joined? What was Edward forced to do? Who then recovered the crown?

15. When did Edward return? How many marched under his banner? Who rejoined his ranks? Where was the decisive battle fought? Who won?

16. Who landed at Weymouth the same day? Where were they defeated and captured? What befell Prince Edward? What became of Margaret? On what day did Henry die?

CHAPTER XVIII.

CAXTON AND THE PRINTING-PRESS.

1. Caxton's Early Life.

2. Progress of Printing in Germany.

3. Caxton's First Book.

4. The First Book Printed in England.

5. Caxton's Later Years.

1. THE name of **William Caxton** is associated with the greatest event in the whole mediæval history of England—the introduction of printing. From a childhood spent in the Weald of Kent, he had passed while yet a boy to learn a trade in London. After spending a few years there, he resolved to go abroad, and went to Flanders.

2. At different places in the basin of the Rhine—especially at Haarlem and at Strasburg—a new art was beginning to be practised, which excited but little attention for a few years, except in the way of arousing superstitious fears that the workmen engaged in it had sold themselves to Satan.

3. There were, however, a few men in Europe who penetrated the secret. Caxton was one of them. There is reason to believe that he had begun authorship before he knew anything of printing. At Bruges in 1468 he completed a translation of a French "History of Troy." At Cologne he probably learned to print; and there, in 1471, he brought out the book.

4. Within the next three years he returned to England, and took up his abode at Westminster in a three-storied house called the Reed Pale, on the north side of the

1474 A.D. Almonry. There he set up his printing-press, and published *The Game and Playe of the Chesse*, translated out of the French—notable as being the first book printed in England. He was then probably sixty-two years of age.

5. His press clanked and his sheets were sent forth with the impress of his types day after day for years. Edward died; the Princes perished in the Tower; and Richard fell on Bosworth field;—still the hoary tradesman plied his useful task, little dreaming that the day would come when his name would shine among those of the most illustrious of the land. Six years of the Tudor dynasty passed by, and then he died. His

1491 pen had been busy for three-and-twenty years; his A.D. press for seventeen. **Sixty-eight works**, translated and original, evidenced the industry of his later years.

<p>QUESTIONS.—1. With what event is the name of Caxton associated? What is said of that event? Where was his childhood spent? Where his youth? What country attracted him?</p>	<p>imputation were the workmen engaged in it exposed?</p>
<p>2. What new art was then beginning to be practised in Germany? To what</p>	<p>3. What book did Caxton finish at Bruges? When was it printed? Where?</p>
	<p>4. What was the first book printed in England?</p>
	<p>5. When did Caxton die?</p>

CHAPTER XIX.

SOCIAL CONDITION—FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

1. Extinction of Villanage.
2. The Government.

3. Manor-houses.
4. The Drama—Book-making.

1. THE great social feature of the period was the extinction of Villanage or Slavery. From the earliest times this evil had prevailed in England. The Norman Conquest had changed the

masters without freeing the slaves. But about the reign of Henry II. the good work began. During three centuries it went on slowly, yet surely,—so slowly, however, that it was scarcely remarked by writers of the time. The civil war, by breaking the power of the ruling race, aided the movement, and the opening of the Tudor period saw Villanage abolished in England for ever.

2. The **Government** of the country was in theory then, as it is now, a limited monarchy. The office of King had become strictly hereditary. But three great principles limited his power: 1. He could make no law without the consent of Parliament. 2. He could lay on the people no tax without the same consent. 3. He must govern by the laws; and if he broke them, his advisers were responsible.

3. Instead of the Norman castles already described, the nobles now began to build large **manor-houses** of wood. In towns, the upper stories jutted out over the lower, so that in narrow streets the fronts of opposite houses were only a few feet apart. This style may still be noticed in old towns like Chester. The people had not yet learned the value of clear light and fresh air to both mind and body.

4. **Dramatic performances** now took a regular shape. They were acted at first in the churches, chiefly by the clergy, and were then called *Miracle-Plays*, or *Mysteries*.—The invention of printing effected a complete change in **Book-making**. The black-letter manuscript gave place to the printed volume. The latter, however, had as yet no title-page, no capital letters, and no points except the colon and the period.—The language of the period was slightly different from that used in Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the great social feature of the period during which the Houses of Lancaster and York held the throne? Was slavery introduced at the Conquest? When did the process of emancipation begin? When was villanage finally abolished?

2. What was the nature of the English government at this period? What three

great principles limited the power of the King?

3. What change took place in the domestic architecture of England? Describe the buildings. Where may this style still be noticed?

4. What form did dramatic performances assume? What change took place in book-making? Give a description of the books of this early period.

ABSOLUTE MONARCHY.

HOUSE OF YORK—CONTINUED.

Edward IV. (great-great-grand-son of Edward III.).....A.D. 1461	Edward V. (son).....	1483
	Richard III. (uncle).....	1483

HOUSE OF TUDOR.

Henry VII.....	1485	Mary I. (half-sister).....	1553
Henry VIII. (son).....	1509	Elisabeth (half-sister).....	1558
Edward VI. (son).....	1547		

HOUSE OF STEWART.

James I. (great-great-grandson of Henry VII.).....	1603	[Commonwealth].....	1649
Charles I. (son).....	1625	Charles II. (son).....	1660
		James II. (brother).....	1685

CHAPTER I.

ASCENDENCY OF THE CROWN.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Destruction of Baronial Power. | 8. Liberal Promises. |
| 2. The French War. | 9. Murder of the Princes. |
| 3. Death of Clarence. | 10. The Tudor Marriage Scheme— |
| 4. Death of Edward IV. | Fall of Buckingham. |
| 5. Gloucester Regent. | 11. Bosworth Field. |
| 6. Execution of Rivers and Hastings. | 12. Henry the Seventh's Rivals. |
| 7. Gloucester King. | 13. Union of the Rival Roses. |

1. HITHERTO the Barons had been the most powerful body in the State; but in the deadly struggle of the Wars of the Roses, they were almost annihilated. The only real check on the power of the Crown being thus removed, the King became practically absolute. To gratify his avarice, Edward adopted a most elastic method of raising money. Calling rich subjects before him, he demanded presents of money; which they dared not refuse. These sums he called **benevolences**.

2. Edward revived the old claim to the French crown, and invaded France; but he found his allies unable to give him any aid, and he gladly accepted the French King's proposal of peace and alliance. The treaty was signed A.D. on a bridge thrown across the Somme. The chief condition was that Louis should pay to Edward 75,000 crowns at

once, and an annuity of 50,000 during his life. The people of England murmured loudly at the disgraceful end of a war for which they had been heavily taxed.

3. The death of the Duke of **Clarence** threw a dark stain on the memory of Edward. The brothers had been long estranged; and when a friend of the Duke's was executed on a charge of practising "the black art," Clarence loudly blamed the King. In revenge, Edward summoned him before the House of Lords. He received sentence, and in ten days died within the Tower. A common report said that he was drowned in a butt of Malmsey, a wine of which he was fond.

4. Edward himself died soon afterwards. A slight illness working on his frame, which was worn out by debauchery, suddenly assumed a fatal character. He was **1483** in his forty-first year. A.D.

5. **EDWARD V.**¹—As the young King was only twelve years of age, a Regency was necessary. This office was at once assumed by his uncle, **Richard, Duke of Gloucester**. While pretending the purest loyalty toward his royal nephew, Gloucester was busily engaged in clearing his own way to the throne. By his order, the boy-King and his brother Richard, Duke of York, were confined in the Tower.

6. Gloucester's next step was to remove those nobles who were faithful to the cause of the young Edward. Of these, Earl Rivers and Lord Hastings were the most prominent. Hastings, arrested in the council-room on a charge of encouraging witchcraft, was beheaded in the chapel-yard of the Tower. On the same day, Lord Rivers was executed at Pontefract Castle.

7. This done, the Royal Council proclaimed Gloucester **Protector of the Realm**. The Duke of Buckingham met the citizens of London at Guildhall, and declared Edward the Fourth's marriage to have been unlawful, and consequently his children to be illegitimate. The people, who had groaned under the arbitrary government of Edward IV., were willing to listen to the more liberal promises of his brother. The Parliament then offered the crown to Richard. With feigned re-

¹ *Edward V.*—Son of Edward IV. Reigned eleven weeks.

luctance he accepted it, and the reign of Edward V. was at an end.

8. **RICHARD III.**¹—The new King began his reign, as most usurpers do, by endeavouring to conciliate popular favour. He called a Parliament; he declared the arbitrary measures by which Edward IV. had extorted money to be illegal; and he distributed lavishly his hoards. By these means he aroused in the nation hopes of a more liberal policy. He was crowned again at York.

9. Before he reached York a terrible crime is said to have been committed. The common story is, that James Tyrrel, Richard's master of the horse, demanded from the governor of the Tower the keys of the fortress for twenty-four hours. The dethroned Edward and his brother were confined there; and in the dead of night Forrest and Dighton, hired assassins, smothered the sleeping boys with the bed-clothes, showed the corpses to Tyrrel, and then buried them at the foot of a staircase.

10. This story, whether true or false, was believed at the time, and at once turned popular feeling against Richard. His enemies proposed a union of the houses of York and Lancaster, by a marriage between Henry, Earl of Richmond, and Elizabeth of York. Buckingham, once the friend of Richard, declared in favour of Henry. He attempted a rising in Wales; but he was betrayed, and was beheaded in the market-place of Salisbury.

11. Soon came the news that Richmond, with 3,000 troops, was at the mouth of the Seine. Richard took his station at Nottingham, as the centre of the kingdom. On the 1st 1485 of August Richmond landed at Milford Haven. In A.D. three weeks the armies met at Bosworth, the King's weakened by repeated desertions. There Richard was slain when in the act of aiming a desperate blow at Richmond. The crown, which he had worn on the battle-field, was found in a hawthorn bush close by, and was placed by Lord Stanley on the victor's head.

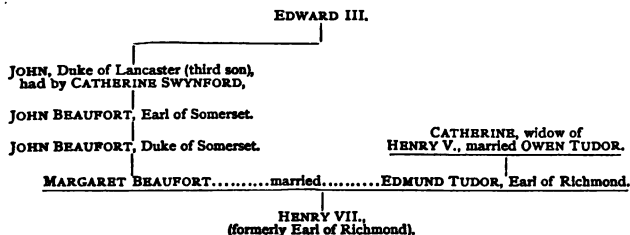
¹ **Richard III.**—Son of Richard, Duke of York, and brother of Edward IV. Married Anne, daughter of the Earl of Warwick, and widow of Prince Edward, son of Henry VI. Reigned two years.

12. *HENRY VII.*¹—The new King was not without rivals. There was living at Sheriff-Hutton, in Yorkshire, a boy of fifteen—Edward, Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence. John de la Pole, Earl of Lincoln—the son of Elizabeth, eldest sister of Edward IV.—had been appointed heir by Richard III. Warwick was at once, by Henry's order, transferred to the Tower of London. Lincoln, having paid homage to the new King, remained at liberty.

13. After a short delay, Henry called a Parliament, to confirm his title. He claimed the throne by right of inheritance and of conquest; but to secure his seat, and 1485 at the same time to put an end for ever to the hostility A.D. of the rival Roses, he married *Elizabeth of York*, the daughter of Edward IV. His chief confidence was given to John Morton and Richard Fox, two churchmen, who had been faithful to him in his exile. He made Morton Archbishop of Canterbury, and Fox Bishop of Winchester.

GENEALOGICAL TREE

CONNECTING THE ANGEVINS AND THE TUDORS.



QUESTIONS.—1. Who had hitherto been the most powerful body in the State? How had they been well-nigh destroyed? What effect had this on the power of the Crown?

2. What led Edward to invade France? How was war prevented? What

was the chief condition of the treaty? What feeling was excited in England?

3. What event threw a dark stain on Edward's memory? How is Clarence said to have been put to death?

4. When did Edward die? How old was he?

¹ *Henry VII.*—Great-great-grandson of John of Gaunt. Married Elizabeth

of York. First King of the House of Tudor. Reigned 24 years.

5. How old was the young King? Who became Regent? In what was he busily engaged? What order did he give regarding Edward and his brother?
6. What was Gloucester's next step? Who were executed?
7. On what ground were Edward the Fourth's children set aside? What reconciled the people to the change?
8. How did the new King endeavour to win popular favour? Where was he crowned a second time?
9. What crime had in the meantime been committed? What is the common account of it?
10. What was the effect of the story? What did Richard's enemies then propose? What nobleman declared for Henry? What was his end?
11. What news was soon received? Where did Richard take his station? When did Richmond land? Where? Where did the armies meet? How was Richard's army weakened? In what act was Richard slain? Who placed the crown on Richmond's head?
12. What rivals had Henry VII.? What was done with Warwick? Why was Lincoln allowed his liberty?
13. For what purpose was a Parliament called? On what did Henry base his claim? How did he put an end to the rivalry of the Roses? To whom did he give his chief confidence?

CHAPTER II.

AGGRANDIZEMENT OF THE CROWN.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Lord Lovel's Rising. | 10. The Scottish Marriage. |
| 2. Lambert Simnel's Imposture. | 11. The Spanish Marriage. |
| 3. Defeat and Degradation of Simnel. | 12. Extortions of Empson and Dudley. |
| 4. Coronation of the Queen. | 13. A New Aristocracy. |
| 5. Henry's Foreign Policy. | 14. A Gay Court. |
| 6. Perkin Warbeck's Imposture. | 15. The Spanish Alliance. |
| 7. Poyning's Law in Ireland. | 16. War in France. |
| 8. The Cornish Revolt. | 17. Flodden Field. |
| 9. Death of Warbeck and Warwick. | 18. The Rise of Modern History. |

1. NOTWITHSTANDING all his precautions, Henry's throne was, during the first fifteen years of his reign, a seat of much danger. Plot after plot arose to disturb his tranquillity. A rising in Yorkshire under **Lord Lovel** was soon suppressed; but the leader escaped to the Court of Margaret, Duchess-Dowager of Burgundy, a sister of Edward IV.

2. Although it was well known that the young Earl of Warwick was a prisoner in the Tower, there appeared in **1486** Dublin a priest, named Simon, with a boy whom he **A.D.** called Edward, Earl of Warwick. This pretender, who was really a tradesman's son, by name **Lambert Simnel**, was proclaimed King with the title of Edward VI. Henry, in alarm, caused the real Warwick to be led through the streets of London in view of the citizens.

3. The Earl of Lincoln, aided by his aunt, the Duchess of

Burgundy, joined Simnel at Dublin with 2,000 troops. The rebels invaded England, and came upon the royal army at **Stoke**;¹ but the attack was speedily repulsed. Lincoln died on the field. Lovel, who had joined the enterprise, was never heard of from that day. Simon and Simnel surrendered. The former died in prison; the latter was employed in the royal kitchen as a scullion, but was afterwards raised to the post of falconer.

1487

A.D.

4. The Queen, of whose better title Henry seemed to be jealous, was now at length crowned with great pomp. This may be looked on as the work of the people; for they spoke so strongly on the subject that the King dared not refuse the honours of royalty to his wife.

5. The ruling principle of Henry's foreign policy was to maintain peace. Only once was he led into a foreign war. In 1488 he sent an army to Bretagne, to support the Duchess in resisting the demands of the French King. This war gave Henry an excuse for levying "Benevolences" on his people. Most of the money, however, went into his own coffers. In 1492 he invaded France, because the King had married the Duchess of Bretagne. He besieged Boulogne for a few days, and then agreed to the Peace of **Estaples**, by which he received £149,000 from the King of France. He retained, besides, all the money he had extorted from his own subjects in order to carry on the war.

6. A new impostor now appeared in Ireland. This was **Perkin Warbeck**, a native of Tournay,² who pretended to be Richard, Duke of York, the younger of the two princes supposed to have been murdered in the Tower in 1483. He was supported by the Dowager-Duchess of Burgundy, and by the Yorkist faction in England. Sir Robert Clifford, Warbeck's agent in Burgundy, having turned traitor, the chiefs of the plot in England were seized on his information.

1492.—Columbus discovered the Bahama Islands, on the coast of America, and annexed them to Spain. (His brother Bartholomew had already been in England trying to get help for the expedition.) In a subsequent voyage (1497) he landed on the mainland of South America.

¹ *Stoke*, or East Stoke, is a village on a hill overlooking the Trent; 4 miles south-west of Newark, in Nottinghamshire.—² *Tournay*.—In Belgium, near the French frontier; 85 miles from Brussels.

7. In order to make the government of Ireland more secure, Sir Edward Poynings, the Lord-Deputy, passed a measure called **Poynings's Law**. It provided that no Bill **1494** could be introduced into the Irish Parliament until it had first received the assent of the King and his Council. The effect of the measure was seen when Warbeck visited Cork in 1496. He failed entirely to effect a rising, and passed to Scotland in search of aid.

8. James IV. of Scotland raised an army on his behalf, and pillaged the northern counties of England in mid-winter. This invasion gave Henry an excuse for levying new taxes. The Cornish men therefore revolted, and marched to within sight of London; but they were soon dispersed, and their leaders were executed.

9. The spirit of discontent in Cornwall encouraged Warbeck to try his fortune there. At Bodmin he unfurled his standard as Richard IV. He besieged Exeter with 6,000 men; **1499** but the vigorous resistance offered by the citizens forced him to retreat. At Taunton he secretly left his army, and threw himself on the King's mercy. He confessed his imposture, and was committed to the Tower, where lay the unfortunate Earl of Warwick. The prisoners became friends. They spent some months in maturing a plan for escape; but they were detected, and both were executed.

10. The old enmity between England and Scotland, which was fiercest in the Border counties, was set at rest by **1502** a marriage (1502 A.D.) between the Scottish King, James IV., and Margaret, Henry's eldest daughter. This marriage must be carefully remembered, for it led to the union of the English and Scottish crowns in 1603.

11. Henry had in 1501 married his eldest son, Arthur, to Catherine of Aragon. But the bridegroom died six months after the union; and his brother Henry, afterwards King, was by a Papal bull contracted to the young widow.

12. During the whole reign infamous extortion went on.

1497.—Sebastian Cabot of Bristol discovered Newfoundland. Vasco de Gama doubled the Cape of Good Hope, and opened up the sea route to India.

1499.—Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine navigator, landed on the mainland of South America, and gave his name to the continent,—America.

Richard Empson and Edmund Dudley were the chief agents of Henry's rapacity. A single occurrence will show the nature of these extortions. Henry visited a favourite general, the Earl of Oxford. When leaving the mansion, the King passed through two lines of fine-looking men, splendidly equipped. "My lord," said he to the Earl, "these are of course your servants?" The Earl smiled and said, "No, your Majesty, I am too poor for that; these are my retainers, assembled to do you honour." The King started and said, "I thank you, my lord, for your good cheer, but I cannot have my laws broken in my sight." He referred to a law abolishing "maintenance;" and Oxford was fined £10,000 for his anxiety to do honour to royalty!

13. Henry died in the spring of 1509. Of the laws passed in his reign, the most important was one allowing the nobles to sell their estates. Those commoners who had amassed money by merchandise bought lands from the impoverished nobles, and a new aristocracy thus sprang up.

14. *HENRY VIII.*¹—The new King was a gallant and generous youth of eighteen, and the nation gladly welcomed him to the throne. The discontent of the people was appeased by the execution of Dudley and Empson. The young King and the Court plunged into a whirl of costly pleasures. In the first year of his reign he married Catherine of Aragon, the widow of his brother Arthur.

15. The Kings of France had long been desirous of subduing **Italy**, and Louis XII. now seemed likely to achieve the conquest. The Pope, Julius II., formed a league with Ferdinand of Spain and the Venetians to oppose the French armies. Henry, who had inherited his father's policy of friendship with Spain, joined the league.

16. In 1513 Henry sailed with his troops to Calais. He was there joined by the Emperor Maximilian, who came to serve under the English flag. A skirmish between the English and the French cavalry at **Guinegate**² ended in a victory for England. The encounter is

Aug. 18,
1513
A.D.

¹ *Henry VIII.*—Son of Henry VII. Married (1) Catherine of Aragon, who was divorced; (2) Anne Boleyn, who was beheaded; (3) Jane Seymour, who died; (4) Anne of Cleves, who was di-

vorced; (5) Catherine Howard, who was beheaded; (6) Catherine Parr, who survived Henry. Reigned 38 years.

² *Guinegate.*—Near Terouenne in Picardy, north of France.

known as the "Battle of Spurs," from the rapid flight of the French horse. Henry then returned to England.

17. Meanwhile James IV. had invaded England; but on **Flodden Field**, near the Till, his army was routed, and himself and many of his nobles were slain, by the English under Lord Surrey.

18. The accession of the House of Tudor is coëval with the epoch of **Modern History**. It was the time of the revival of learning, and of the reformation in religion. Education became more general. As intelligence was spread among the great middle-class, they took more interest in public affairs, and made their weight felt in the State.

QUESTIONS.—1. How were the earlier years of Henry's reign disturbed? Who headed a rising in Yorkshire? How did it end? Where did Lovel go?

2. What impostor appeared in 1496? Whom did he pretend to be? Where did he appear? What means did Henry take to expose the imposture?

3. Who joined Simnel with troops? Where was a battle fought? What was the result? What became of Simnel?

4. What induced Henry to crown the Queen?

5. What was the principle of Henry's foreign policy? Why did he send an army to Bretagne? Why did he invade France in 1492? What occurred?

6. Who was the new impostor? Whom did he pretend to be? What led to the arrest of the chief conspirators in England?

7. What measure made the government of Ireland more secure? What was its chief provision? When was the effect of the measure seen? Where did Warbeck then go for aid?

8. How did the King of Scotland help Warbeck?

9. What induced Warbeck to try his fortune in Cornwall? What was the

issue? When and why was Warbeck executed?

10. To whom was Henry's daughter Margaret married? Why is this marriage important?

11. To whom was Prince Arthur married? When did he die? To whom was his widow contracted?

12. Who were the chief agents of Henry's extortions? Give an instance showing the nature of these proceedings?

13. When did Henry die? What was the most important of the laws passed in his reign? What were its effects?

14. How was the accession of Henry VIII. received? What was one of his earliest acts? What kind of life did he lead? When did he marry?

15. What foreign league did Henry join? Why?

16. Who joined Henry at Calais in 1513? Where was the "Battle of Spurs" fought? Why was it so called?

17. What victory had been gained over the Scots in the same year? By whom?

18. With what is the accession of the House of Tudor coëval? What changes then took place? What class of the people acquired influence?

CHAPTER III.

PERSONAL GOVERNMENT.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. Rise of Wolsey. | 5. The Reformation in Germany. |
| 2. Wolsey Sole Minister. | 6. Henry Defender of the Faith. |
| 3. Francis I. and Charles V.—Position of Henry. | 7. Henry joins the Emperor. |
| 4. The Field of the Cloth of Gold. | 8. Wolsey and the Commons. |
| | 9. Henry joins Francis. |

1. **Thomas Wolsey** was a prominent figure during the first twenty-one years of Henry's reign. Born at Ipswich in 1471, he was only fifteen when he graduated at Oxford. The Boy Bachelor, as he was called, soon received from the Marquis of Dorset, whose sons had been his pupils, the rectory of Lymington in Somersetshire. His next important step was the chaplaincy of Calais, where he was noticed by Fox, Bishop of Winchester, by whom he was recommended to Henry VII. The deanery of Lincoln and the post of King's almoner rewarded him for his zeal in the royal service; and under the gay young Henry VIII., who was pleased to find that a priest, so able to conduct the business of the State, scrupled not to join in the court-revels, he rose to be Archbishop of York and Chancellor of England.

2. When in 1515 the Pope made him a Cardinal, his splendour rivalled that of the King. His train numbered five hundred; his silken robes sparkled with gold; and he permitted his cardinal's hat to be laid nowhere in the royal chapel but on the high altar. In 1518 he was created **Papal Legate**, and then he caused the first nobles of England to serve him on feast-days with towel and water. From 1513 till 1529 he was Henry's sole adviser and minister. The King ceased to consult his Council, and Parliament was called only twice in all these years. The King and Wolsey, or Wolsey in name of the King, did everything. Wolsey was responsible to the King, and the King was responsible to nobody.

3. **Francis I.** of France had inherited the desire of conquering Italy, and he therefore sought to live at peace with England. To maintain peace by means of a French alliance was also the wish of Wolsey, whose favour Francis courted by means of presents and flattery. In 1519 Maximilian died, and **Charles V.**

was chosen Emperor. Charles, Francis, and Henry were then the leading Sovereigns of Europe; and the policy of each conflicted with that of the others. The English King was courted by both Charles and Francis. He was invited by Francis to a meeting near Calais; but before that could take place he was visited in England by Charles.

4. Henry then crossed to Calais, and met Francis between Guines and Ardres.¹ The interview has been called, **May 30,** from the splendour of the Monarchs and their retinues, **1520** "The Field of the Cloth of Gold." Three weeks were spent in empty visits of state, tournaments, and feasts; but nothing of importance was done. At Gravelines, near Calais, Henry and Charles met immediately afterwards; and any feeling in favour of Francis which may have grown up in Henry's mind was completely swept away.

5. The Reformation was now in progress. To raise funds for the building of the Church of St. Peter at Rome, **1517** Leo X. had sent out monks to sell Indulgences. **A.D.** Luther, a Saxon monk, opposed the whole scheme of indulgences. He maintained the authority of the Bible as the only rule of religious faith. And at length, in **1520**, he severed the last tie which bound him to the Church of Rome, by casting into the flames the Papal bull proclaiming his excommunication. **A.D.**

6. The news of these things was heard joyfully in England. But Henry was as yet a strict Roman Catholic. He **1521** wrote a book in Latin defending the seven sacraments **A.D.** of the Church of Rome, and sent a copy of it to the Pope. Leo conferred on the royal author the title, "Defender of the Faith."

7. War at length broke out between Charles V. and Francis I., and Henry sided with the Emperor. Twice English troops invaded France, but without success. Want of money was one cause of these failures; and this forced Henry in 1523 to call a Parliament.

8. When the Commons assembled, Wolsey entered the Hall to demand £800,000 for the King; but the House was not to

¹ *Guines and Ardres.*—South-east of Calais.

be thus overawed. It was with difficulty prevailed on to grant only half that sum; and when the Cardinal began to press his claim with arguments, he was told that members of the Commons alone were allowed to debate there. Seven years passed before the King called another Parliament. During these years Wolsey raised money by means of Benevolences.

9. But the **foreign policy** of Henry soon changed. At the Battle of Pavia (February 24, 1525) Francis was taken prisoner. Henry began to suspect that Charles had used him as his tool. Wolsey took advantage of this mood to press his peace policy on the King. Francis was not released for a year. Two years later, when Rome was sacked by the Emperor's troops, and the Pope was cast into prison, Henry and Francis united in a league to release the Pontiff, and to carry war into the Emperor's dominions.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where was Wolsey born? Who recommended him to Henry VII.? What made him a favourite of Henry VIII.? To what offices did he rise under him?

2. To what dignity was he raised in 1515? When was he made Papal Legate? During what time was he Henry's sole minister?

3. Why did Francis I. wish to live at peace with England? What was Wolsey's wish? Who was chosen Emperor in 1519? By whom was Henry courted? Where was he to meet Francis? What took place before that meeting could be effected?

4. What name has been given to the interview of Francis and Henry? Why? Where did Henry immediately go?

5. What great event was then in progress in Europe? What was its immediate origin? Who opposed in-

dulgences? How did he sever the last tie between himself and the Church of Rome?

6. How was the news of these things received in England? What part did Henry take in the controversy? How was he rewarded?

7. Between whom did war at length break out? Which side did Henry take? What was the cause of his failures in France? What was he therefore forced to do?

8. What took place when the Commons assembled? To what grant did they agree? What was Wolsey told when he began to argue the King's cause? How was money raised after that?

9. What led Henry to change his policy? When was Francis released? What was the object of the league between him and Henry?

CHAPTER IV.

THE FALL OF WOLSEY.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Doubts regarding the King's Marriage. | 5. The Legatine Court. |
| 2. Anne Boleyn. | 6. Degradation of Wolsey. |
| 3. Wolsey's Scheme for a French Marriage. | 7. Pardon from the King. |
| 4. The Pope's Policy of Delay. | 8. The Charge of High Treason. |
| | 9. Death of Wolsey. |
| | 10. His Successor. |

1. Now arose on the horizon a speck which soon darkened all the sky of Wolsey's life. Doubts were suggested as to **1527** the legality of the King's marriage, although Henry A.D. and Catherine had lived together for eighteen years without any whisper of the sort ever having stirred the air. Now, however, the evil hint, which yielded so many woes, was dropped, doubtless by Wolsey himself, who hoped thereby to complete the breach with Spain.

2. It so happened that there was among the attendants of the Queen a pretty maid of honour named **Anne Boleyn**, daughter of Sir Thomas Boleyn. The King fell in love with her; and this passion hardened all his floating discontents and dislikes into a firm resolve to obtain a divorce from his cold, delicate, elderly Spanish wife.

3. Wolsey had promised the **French King** that *his* sister-in-law Renée should fill the place of the divorced Queen. But he was reckoning without his host. When Henry heard of this proposal, he declared that no French princess was needed: Anne Boleyn, and no other, should be his second wife. The news filled Wolsey with dismay. It meant ruin to all the schemes of his life. For four hours he knelt at Henry's feet, seeking to change his purpose. But no entreaties and no arguments could move the stubborn King.

4. Everything then turned against the unhappy Cardinal. **Pope Clement** was afraid of offending either the Emperor, whose aunt Queen Catherine was, or Henry. Delay seemed his only safety. For this delay Wolsey was blamed, although he was in truth eager to have the matter settled. Henry stormed at him. Anne distrusted him. Catherine grew to hate him. Thus, pierced with his own dart, Wolsey lingered through many torturing days.

5. After a long delay, **Cardinal Campeggio**, appointed by the Pope to try the divorce case in conjunction with Wolsey, arrived in England. Campeggio came to hear the case, but not to decide it. Within the great hall of the Black Friars' Monastery the two Cardinals sat enthroned. Henry answered to the calling of his name; but **Catherine**, when her name was pronounced, made a last touching appeal to her husband, and walked out of the hall, resolved never to face the court again.

June 21,
1529
A.D.

6. The prejudged trial went on without her; and all was ready for the Legate's decision, when the old Italian refused to pronounce judgment, and **adjourned the cause** until the beginning of October. This sealed **Wolsey's doom**. A Parliament was summoned. Wolsey was deprived of the Great Seal, was turned out of York Place, and retired to hide his fallen greatness at Esher, near Hampton Court.

7. The King's Bench convicted Wolsey on the ground that he had got Bulls from Rome while assuming authority as a Papal Legate in England; but the King, in pity for his old companion, granted him a **pardon**. His enemies then impeached him in the newly assembled Parliament, charging him especially with assuming in his despatches an equality with the King. The eloquence of Thomas Cromwell, formerly secretary to the Cardinal, and one who stood by him to the last, obtained the rejection of the Bill.

8. His enemies still followed closely on his track. Dreading his nearness to the Court, they had him ordered off to York. A day was fixed for his installation in the cathedral there. Before the appointed day, the Earl of Northumberland came to arrest him for **high treason**, and he once more turned his face toward the south.

9. An attack of dysentery delayed him at Sheffield Park for eighteen days. Entering **Leicester Abbey** one evening late, he said to the Abbot, "Father, I am come to lay my bones among you." It was true. He died a few days later, on the 28th of November 1530, being then in his sixtieth year. His last words were, "Had I but served my God as diligently as I have served my King, he had not given me over in my gray hairs."

1530
A.D.

10. **Sir Thomas More**, a layman, had already received the Chancellorship, and already a new Ministry had settled into place; the Duke of Norfolk being President, and the Duke of Suffolk Vice-President of the Council.

QUESTIONS.—1. About what were doubts suggested? How long had Henry been married? Who first dropped the hint that the marriage was illegal? To serve what end?

2. Who, meantime, had captivated Henry? What resolution did he therefore form?

3. Whom did Wolsey design for Henry's second wife? What effect did the King's announcement about Anne Boleyn produce on Wolsey?

4. What policy did the Pope adopt? Why? Who was blamed for the delay?

5. Whom did the Pope appoint to try the case? Where did the Legatine Court meet? What did Catherine do when called?

6. Who delayed pronouncing judgment? Whose doom did this seal?

How was he treated? Where did he retire?

7. On what ground did the King's Bench convict Wolsey? How did the King treat him? How did his enemies proceed against him in the new Parliament? Who secured the rejection of the Bill?

8. Why was Wolsey sent to York? For what ceremony were preparations made there? What happened before the appointed day? Where was he then taken?

9. What delayed him on his journey? Where did he die? What were his last words?

10. Who had already succeeded him as Chancellor? Who were made President and Vice-President of the Council?

CHAPTER V.

THE CROWN AGAINST THE POPE.

1. Political Character of the Struggle.
2. Thomas Cranmer and Thomas Cromwell.
3. First Rupture with Rome.
4. The King the Head of the Church.
5. Persecution—Fisher and More.
6. Suppression of the Monasteries.
7. Incorporation of Wales with England.
8. Anne Boleyn.

9. Tyndale and Coverdale.
10. Birth of a Prince.
11. Statute of the Six Articles.
12. Fall of Cromwell.
13. Catherine Howard.
14. Catherine Parr.
15. Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey.
16. Hertford Protector.
17. Invasion of Scotland.

1. IN its first stage, the Reformation struggle in England was merely a quarrel between the King and the Pope, arising immediately out of Henry's doings in the divorce case. After the King was alienated from the Pope, it was natural that he should look more favourably on the Reformers, who, since the Diet of Spires (1529), had assumed the name **Protestants**. But the causes of the change were political, not religious.

2. **Thomas Cranmer** and **Thomas Cromwell** were now Henry's chief advisers. Cranmer, a Fellow of Cambridge, had

suggested that the divorce case should be referred to the Universities. The King, remarking that Cranmer had "got the right sow by the ear," acted on the hint. The case was laid before the Universities of Europe, and one or two decisions were given in Henry's favour. This made the fortune of Cranmer. Cromwell, too, gained the royal favour by a single suggestion—that the King should declare himself Supreme Head of the English Church, and obtain the divorce from its courts.

3. The Parliament of 1532 forbade the payment to the Pope of First-fruits, or the first year's income of vacant bishoprics. The Parliament of 1533 forbade Appeals to Rome. In the same year Cranmer, now Archbishop of Canterbury, annulled the King's marriage with Catherine,¹ and **Anne Boleyn** was declared Queen. **1533**
A.D.

4. The dispute, when the divorce was thus settled, centred in the question, "Who should be Head of the Church in England,—the King, or the Pope?" The point was decided by the Parliament of 1534 conferring the title with its privileges on Henry. This step made Henry more certainly than ever **an absolute Monarch**. **1534**
A.D.

5. It was soon evident that Henry was prepared to use the powers which Cromwell, now his chief minister, had put in his hands. Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, was thrown into prison on a charge of treason. He and More afterwards refused to take the oath of allegiance prescribed in a new Act of Succession, and both were beheaded. **1535**
A.D.

6. The suppression of **monasteries** was then resolved on by the King; and Cromwell, to whom was given complete control of the Church, with the title of Vicar-General, proceeded to the work. Obedient as the Parliament usually was, it could not be prevailed on to go further in the meantime than to pass a Bill suppressing the smaller monasteries. This led to a rising in Yorkshire, in support of the Roman Catholic Church, called **the Pilgrimage of Grace**. It was soon suppressed, and Robert Aske, the leader of it, and others were executed. Three years later the greater monasteries **1536**
A.D.

¹ Catherine retired from the Court, and died three years afterwards.

were attacked. In all, 3,219 religious houses were suppressed, and the King appropriated their yearly income of £161,000. With part of this sum, however, six new bishoprics were established.

7. **The Legislative Union of Wales with England** was completed at this time. This was rendered necessary by the disturbed state of the country, and by the wars which the border lords or Marchers¹ waged with one another. Wales sent twenty-four members to the English Parliament.

8. On the 19th of May 1536, Anne Boleyn was beheaded. She was condemned on a charge of unfaithfulness to her husband. She left a daughter, afterwards Queen Elizabeth. The next day **Jane Seymour** became Queen.

9. During this reign the English Bible came into general use. The version used in England during the earlier years of Henry's reign was the New Testament of **William Tyndale**, published in 1526. In 1536 **Miles Coverdale** of Cambridge published, with the authority of the King, the whole Bible in the English tongue. In 1539 appeared a translation called **The Great Bible**, prepared under the superintendence of Cranmer.

10. The birth of a son, named Edward, gladdened Henry's heart; and even the death of his favourite Queen, Jane Seymour, which occurred a few days after the prince was born, was almost disregarded in his unbounded joy.

11. Though the King had broken with Rome, he retained many of the old doctrines. In order to abolish diversity of opinions, an Act was passed known as the **Statute of the Six Articles**,² or, from the persecution which followed, **1539 "The Bloody Statute."** While Roman Catholics were beheaded for denying the royal supremacy, Protestants were burned for denying the Six Articles. About the same time it was decided by Parliament that Royal Proclamations should have the force of regular laws,—a measure utterly opposed to the spirit of the English Constitution.

¹ *Marchers*.—Living on the Marches.

² *Six Articles*.—These were—(1) The doctrine of the real presence, or transubstantiation; (2) communion in one

kind; (3) perpetual obligation of vows of chastity; (4) utility of private masses; (5) celibacy of the clergy; (6) auricular confession.

12. Henry's fourth wife, **Anne of Cleves**, was selected by Cromwell because she was a Protestant princess. The King was greatly disappointed with her when he saw her, and never forgave Cromwell. The withdrawal of the King's favour was fatal to his power. There was absolutely no one to befriend or plead for him. The nobility, the clergy, **July 28,** and the common people were all opposed to him. He **1540** was accused, by Bill of Attainder, of heresy and trea- **A.D.** son, and was brought to the block. The Duke of Norfolk succeeded him as Henry's chief minister.

13. Anne of Cleves, much to her own content, was separated from her husband, and lived in England upon a pension of £3,000 a year until her death. **Catherine Howard**, niece to the Duke of Norfolk, was then raised to the throne amid the rejoicings of the Roman Catholics. A year and a half later she was accused of unchastity, and was beheaded on Tower Hill (1542 A.D.).

14. Wars with Scotland and France occupied Henry's **1543** later years. His sixth wife was **Catherine Parr**, widow **A.D.** of Lord Latimer. She survived her husband.

15. The last victim who suffered from this tyrant's wrath was **Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey**, famed as the purifier of English poetry, and the writer of our earliest **1547** blank verse. He was beheaded on suspicion of aiming **A.D.** at the crown. His father, the Duke of Norfolk,¹ who had been seized at the same time, lay in prison awaiting the same fate, when the news came that Henry was dead (January 28).

16. **EDWARD VI.**²—The new King being only in his tenth year, a Council of sixteen "executors" was appointed to manage the affairs of the kingdom. The leading member of this Council was the Earl of Hertford, brother of Jane Seymour, and therefore uncle of the young King. Hertford prevailed with his own friends to appoint him Protector, and governor of the King. The Protector received the title of Duke of **Somerset**; and John Dudley, Viscount Lisle, afterwards Somerset's great rival, was made Earl of Warwick. Archbishop Cranmer was a leading member of the Council of Regency.

¹ *Duke of Norfolk.*—He remained a prisoner in the Tower till 1553. | ² *Edward VI.*—Son of Henry VIII. and Jane Seymour. Reigned 6 ye.

17. Henry's will directed that a marriage should take place, if possible, between Edward and young Mary of Scotland. But Scottish feeling, influenced by France, was strong against the match; and, to force the nation into consent, Somerset led an army of 18,000 over the Border. The Regent Arran met him at *Pinkie*, near Musselburgh, but was defeated (September 10, 1547). News of plots against his power soon recalled the Protector to London, and the campaign ended without advantage to the English. To be out of harm's way, the young Queen of Scotland was sent to France.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the nature of the Reformation struggle in England in its first stage? On whom did Henry look with favour?

2. Who were then Henry's chief advisers? What suggestion made Cranmer's fortune? What was the result? What was Cromwell's suggestion?

3. What step was taken by the Parliament of 1532? What, by that of the following year? Who annulled the King's marriage with Catherine?

4. In what question did the dispute then centre? When was it decided? In what way?

5. Who was now Henry's chief minister? For what were Fisher and More beheaded?

6. On what step did Henry then resolve? To whom was the work intrusted? How far did Parliament agree to go? To what rising did this lead? When were the greater monasteries suppressed? What was done with part of their revenues?

7. When did the legislative union of Wales with England take place? What rendered this necessary?

8. When was Anne Boleyn beheaded? On what charge was she condemned? Who was the next Queen?

9. What book now came into general use? Whose translation was used at

first? When was Coverdale's Bible published? When did the Great Bible appear?

10. What event filled Henry with joy in 1537? Who died a few days later?

11. Though the King had broken with Rome, what did he retain? What Act was passed? What force was given to Royal Proclamations?

12. Who was Henry's fourth wife? Who had made the match? How did it please Henry? To whose fall did it lead? What was his end?

13. How was Anne of Cleves got rid of? Who was the next Queen? What was her fate?

14. What wars occupied Henry's later years? Who was his sixth wife?

15. Who was the last victim of Henry's wrath? On what charge did he suffer? How did his father escape? When did Henry die?

16. Who succeeded? How old was he? Who managed the government? Who was the leading member of the Council? To what offices was he appointed? What title did he receive?

17. For what marriage had Henry been anxious? What prevented the match? What step did Somerset take? What battle was fought? Why had the scheme to be abandoned? Where was the young Queen of Scots sent?

CHAPTER VI.

THE REFORMATION.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The Church of England. | 5. Execution of Somerset. |
| 2. Rise of Warwick. | 6. Northumberland's Schemes. |
| 3. Distress and Revolt. | 7. Death of Edward VI. |
| 4. Fall of Somerset. | 8. Death of Northumberland. |

1. THE breach with Rome being now complete, the way was open for making changes in the **doctrine and worship** of the Church of England. In this work Archbishop Cranmer took the largest share. To secure uniformity of doctrine, twelve Homilies or sermons were published, and were ordered to be read in churches. The statues and pictures in the churches were removed. The Latin Mass was abolished, and was replaced by the **Liturgy**, still read in the Established Church of England. And, lastly, the faith of English Protestants was summed up in Forty-two Articles.¹

2. When Somerset hastened home from Scotland, he found that his own brother, Admiral Lord Seymour, who had married Catherine Parr, the widow of Henry VIII., was his most dangerous foe. The conspiracy which he had organized was checked by the execution of Seymour on Tower Hill. But opposition more fatal to the Protector was rising. **Dudley, Earl of Warwick**, as the head of a rival faction in the Council, began to measure his strength with Somerset.

3. The suppression of the monasteries was regretted by many of the people. The monks had been the friends of the poor. Small farmers had found them indulgent landlords and good customers. The working classes had new grievances. Wages were low, and were paid in the base coin of Henry VIII. Food was dear. Revolt burst out in many quarters, but most seriously in Norfolk, where Ket, a tanner, sat under an oak tree giving law to the gentlemen of the county. In all cases the rebels were put down. Ket was hanged at Norwich, after his followers had been scattered by the Earl of Warwick.

4. The **Protector** was then glad to make peace with Scotland, for his position was daily growing more perilous. At last the

¹ *Forty-two Articles.* — They were afterwards reduced to Thirty-nine, and are still the authoritative creed of the Church of England.

feeling against him grew so strong that he was forced to resign his Protectorship, and was indicted for usurpation of the King's power. He was stripped of power and condemned to pay a heavy fine; which, however, was remitted.

1549 **Jan. 22,** 1552 **A.D.** 5. Warwick, now Duke of Northumberland, became Protector, and resolved to crush his rival, Somerset. Arrested on a charge of raising rebellion in the north, the ex-Protector was tried, convicted of felony, and beheaded on Tower Hill.

6. Northumberland now allowed visions of securing the crown for his own family to fill his ambitious mind. He persuaded Edward that the Princesses Mary and Elizabeth could not wear the crown, since they had been declared illegitimate by an Act of Parliament; and he induced him to adopt as his heir Lady Jane Grey, the descendant of Mary Tudor, a daughter of Henry VII. He had previously married his fourth son, Lord Guildford Dudley, to the Lady Jane.

7. Scarcely was this done when the King grew very ill. Northumberland placed him under the care of a woman professing great skill. Her medicines made him worse, and on this rests the suspicion that his death was hastened by poison. He died at Greenwich, aged sixteen years.

1553 **A.D.** 8. **MARY I.**¹—Lady Jane Grey was at once proclaimed Queen, by order of Northumberland. The dangers of a throne alarmed her gentle heart, and it was very unwillingly that she yielded to the wishes of her father-in-law. But she was not destined to be Queen. The feeling of the nation

1553 **A.D.** leaned towards Mary, the daughter of Catherine of Aragon. The councillors and the citizens of London declared for her, and she was proclaimed everywhere,—the first Queen regnant of England. Northumberland was seized and executed at once; Guildford Dudley and Jane Grey were put under arrest.

QUESTIONS.—1. For what changes was the way now open? Who took the largest share in the work of reformation? In how many Articles was the Protestant faith summed up?
2. Who was the Protector's most

¹ Mary I.—Daughter of Henry VIII. and Catherine of Aragon. Married Philip II. of Spain. Reigned 5 years. Left no children.

dangerous foe? How was his plot checked? Who now began to measure his strength with Somerset?

3. Why had the suppression of the monasteries excited discontent? What grievances had the working classes? Who headed the revolt in Norfolk?

4. What led the Protector to make peace with Scotland? What was Somerset forced to do? How was he punished?

5. To what rank was Warwick raised? On what charge was Somerset tried? What was his fate?

6. What design did Northumberland now entertain? Whom did he induce the King to adopt as his heir?

7. By what was this followed? What suspicion attaches to Northumberland? On what ground? When did Edward VI. die?

8. Who was at once proclaimed Queen? What was her feeling regarding the crown? Towards whom did the feeling of the nation lean? What decided the cause in her favour? Who were arrested? Which of them was executed at once?

CHAPTER VII.

THE MARIAN REACTION.

1. The Protestant Policy Reversed.
2. The Spanish Match.
3. Wyatt's Rebellion.
4. Execution of Jane Grey.
5. Retention with Rome.

6. The Persecution.
7. The First Victim.
8. The Death of Cranmer.
9. The Loss of Calais.
10. The Death of Mary.

1. MARY's great object was the restoration of the old faith in England. Gardiner became her chief minister. The other prelates who had been suspended or imprisoned in the late reign were restored to their sees. The Duke of Norfolk received his freedom. The Church laws of Edward VI. were repealed: Cranmer, Ridley, Latimer, and other Protestants were sent to prison.

2. In July 1554 Mary became the wife of Philip, son of the Emperor Charles V., and heir of the Spanish crown, which he received eighteen months later. It was an ill-assorted match. Philip was ceremonious; Mary was ill-tempered and jealous. He was twenty-six years of age; she was thirty-seven. He and the English people heartily disliked one another, and he soon left the island. Except for a few days in 1557, he never saw his wife again.

3. The great mass of the English people disliked this marriage. It was said that England would become a province of Spain, and that the Inquisition would soon be at work in London. The men of Kent rose in rebellion. Their leader, Sir Thomas Wyatt, was taken and executed. Four hundred of his followers also suffered death.

July,
1554
A.D.

4. This rising was thought a good excuse for the execution of **Lady Jane Grey** and her husband. They were beheaded within the Tower walls. On suspicion of having been concerned in Wyatt's plot, the Princess Elizabeth was put under restraint.

5. Mary and Gardiner, her Lord Chancellor, were now prepared to carry out their great design,—**reunion with the Papal See**. Parliament voted for a formal return to its submission to Rome, and received absolution from Cardinal Pole, the Papal Legate, the members kneeling in his presence.

6. Pole advised toleration to persons of the Protestant faith; but Gardiner and Bonner urged persecution, and the **1555** Queen was of their mind. Within the next three years, A.D. 288 men, women, and children were burned for their religion, while thousands suffered in a less degree. More than a thousand clergymen were expelled from their pulpits: many of them fled to the Continent to escape the fury of the tempest.

7. John Rogers, Canon of St. Paul's, was the first victim of the persecution. **Ridley**, Bishop of London, and **Latimer**, Bishop of Worcester, suffered together at Oxford. "Be of good comfort, Mr. Ridley," cried Latimer, as they bound his aged limbs to the stake; "we shall this day light such a candle, by God's grace, in England, as I trust shall never be put out." (October 16, 1555.)

8. Early in 1556 **Cranmer** was led to the stake at Oxford. Broken down by long imprisonment, and sorely tempted **Mar. 21,** by promises of life and honour, he signed six several **1556** recantations. But a calmer hour brought contrition; A.D. and, firm in the faith he had adopted, he died without fear.

9. Though Mary was deeply grieved at the coldness of her husband, she joined him in his war with France. **An** **1558** English army helped to seize the French fortress of St. A.D. **Quentin**.¹ Suddenly in mid-winter the Duke of Guise appeared before Calais; and as the town was weakly garrisoned, it was lost in eight days. The English had held it since 1347.

¹ *St. Quentin*.—Eighty-seven miles north-east of Paris.

10. Mary's health was failing fast. So deeply did she feel her loss in France, that she said the word "Calais" would be found after death written on her heart. Various causes working together produced a lingering fever, of which she died. So general was the discontent at the time, that her death probably saved the country from a rebellion.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was Mary's great object? Who became her chief minister? What other reactionary steps were taken?

2. Whom did Mary marry? How did the match turn out? When did he leave the island? Why did he go?

3. How did the nation regard the Spanish marriage? Where did rebellion appear? Who was leader of the rising? How was he punished?

4. On what excuse were Jane Grey and her husband executed? What was done with the Princess Elizabeth? On what ground?

5. For what were Mary and Gardiner now prepared? How was that carried out?

6. What then began? Who advised

toleration? Who urged persecution? How many suffered in the three following years? How many clergymen were expelled from their pulpits? Where did they take refuge?

7. Who was the first victim of the persecution? Who suffered together at Oxford? What were Latimer's words as they bound him to the stake?

8. When was Cranmer executed? What had he been induced to do?

9. In what continental war did Mary join? In what success did the English army share? By what great loss was it followed? How long had England held it?

10. How did the loss of Calais affect Mary? When did she die? In what state was the country at the time?

CHAPTER VIII.

PROTESTANTISM RESTORED.

1. The Thirty-nine Articles.
2. Mary Stewart in England.

3. The Duke of Norfolk's Plot.
4. The Northern Revolt.

1. **ELIZABETH.**¹—One of Queen Elizabeth's first measures was the restoration of Protestantism. This work was completed in 1563, when the Thirty-nine Articles were adopted by Parliament, and the **Church of England** was established in its present form. Elizabeth's chief adviser was William Cecil, afterwards Lord Burleigh.

2. **Mary Queen of Scots**, who had married the Dauphin, claimed the throne of England, on the ground that Elizabeth had been declared illegitimate, and that she herself was next

¹ *Elizabeth.*—Daughter of Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn. Reigned 45 years. (546)

heir, being descended from Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII. When, therefore, after seven stormy years in Scotland, **1568** Mary fled across the Border and cast herself on the A.D. mercy of Elizabeth, the latter was not in a position to give her a friendly reception. Mary was the representative of the Roman Catholic party—the centre of its hopes in England; and the English Government could not regard her in any other light than as the chief enemy to its policy. Accordingly she was cast into prison.

3. Mary's presence in England, even as a prisoner, was a constant source of danger to Elizabeth. Plot after plot was formed for her release. The most serious were those in which the **Duke of Norfolk**, the first nobleman in England, **1572** was concerned. After having been warned and threatened, he entered into a secret correspondence with the A.D. Court of Spain for Mary's release. This was discovered by Lord Burleigh, and Norfolk was arrested, tried, and executed.

4. In the meantime the peace of the North had been disturbed by a revolt headed by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland, who marshalled their followers under the **Banner of the Five Wounds**. They were dispersed without a blow. The Parliament then passed a **Test Act**, which required all civil officers to subscribe the **Thirty-nine Articles**. Thus the first note was struck of that battle for **uniformity** which chiefly occupied the remainder of Elizabeth's reign.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was one of Elizabeth's first measures? When was this work completed? Who was Elizabeth's chief adviser?

2. To what did Mary Queen of Scots lay claim? On what ground? When did she flee to England? How did Elizabeth treat her? On what ground did the English Government imprison her?

3. Of what was Mary's presence in England a constant source? Whose plots were the most serious? What was his fate?

4. How had the North been disturbed in the meantime? Who headed the revolt? How did it end? What Act followed? What did it require? Of what did this strike the first note?

CHAPTER IX.

SUPREMACY AND UNIFORMITY.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. The Puritans. | 7. Trial and Death of Mary Stewart. |
| 2. The Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity. | 8. The Spanish Armada. |
| 3. The Court of High Commission. | 9. Preparations in England. |
| 4. St. Bartholomew and the Dutch Republic. | 10. Approach of the Armada. |
| 5. Death of Sir Philip Sidney. | 11. Its Defeat and Dispersion. |
| 6. Babington's Conspiracy. | 12. The Earl of Essex. |
| | 13. Death of Elizabeth. |
| | 14. The Queen and the Commons. |

1. **EARLY** in Elizabeth's reign, those Protestants who had fled to the Continent in the time of Mary returned to England. These formed by-and-by the **Puritan** body, **1566**—so called from their desire to establish a purer form **A.D.** of worship. They objected chiefly to the use of the Liturgy, to the adornment of churches, and to the government of the Church by bishops.

2. The **Act of Supremacy** and the **Act of Uniformity** were passed soon after Elizabeth came to the throne. The one required all clergymen and those holding office **1559** under Government to take an oath acknowledging **A.D.** Elizabeth as Head of the Church. The other statute forbade under heavy penalties all worship except by the use of King Edward's Prayer Book. Many Roman Catholics suffered death by these laws; and the Puritans, or Nonconformists, who also refused to be bound by them, were fined and imprisoned.

3. To carry out these Acts, a **Court of High Commission** had been instituted. In 1583 this court received new powers, and during the rest of the reign the Acts of **1583** Supremacy and Uniformity were enforced with the **A.D.** utmost rigour.

4. Two important continental events of this time had a special interest for England. The one was the **massacre of St. Bartholomew** in France (1572), when **1572** 80,000 Protestants were put to death; the other was the **A.D.** **rise of the Dutch Republic** under William of Orange (1576). The massacre in France and the cruelties of the Spaniards in the Netherlands drove hundreds of work-peop^l

to settle in England; and a marked improvement in our silk and woollen manufactures was the consequence.

5. The assassination of the Prince of Orange in 1584 was followed by the conquest of the Southern Netherlands by Spain. Elizabeth sent over an army under her favourite the Earl of Leicester (1586); with whom went his nephew, the famous Sir Philip Sidney.¹ In a skirmish near Zutphen,² Sidney was mortally wounded, and he died a few days afterwards.

6. The discovery in 1586 of a plot to assassinate the Queen and give Mary Stewart the crown, hastened the fall of **1586** the latter. The chief conspirator was **Antony Babington**, a gentleman of Derbyshire. Fourteen conspirators were arrested and executed; and it was resolved to try Mary for her share in the plot.

7. In **Fotheringay Castle**, Northamptonshire, the trial took place, before thirty-six royal commissioners. Mary denied the charges brought against her, declaring that she was innocent of everything but a natural desire to regain her freedom. She had no advocate to plead for her; but she demanded to **1587** be confronted with the witnesses. This was refused, and soon afterwards she was doomed to die. In the castle hall of Fotheringay, **Mary Stewart**, aged forty-five, was beheaded, in the gray light of a February morning.

8. Philip II. of Spain, who had made himself the champion of the old faith in Europe, now resolved on the conquest of England. He prepared a great fleet, called **1588** the **Invincible Armada**. It consisted of 132 large ships, having on board, besides their crews, nearly 20,000 soldiers and 2,630 cannons of brass. After several false starts, it sailed from Lisbon, on May 29, 1588, under command of the Duke of Medina Sidonia. At the same time the Duke

1585.—Sir Walter Raleigh established the first English settlement in North America, at Roanoke, Virginia. It proved a failure.

¹ *Sidney*.—It is said that as he lay on the field, faint from the loss of blood, he had a cup of cold water handed to him; but that, noticing a wounded soldier near him, he passed it to him,

saying, "Thy necessity is yet greater than mine." The story, however, rests on doubtful authority.

² *Zutphen*.—Fifty miles east of Amsterdam; 20 miles from Arnhem.

of Parma moved to the coast of Flanders near Dunkirk, ready with 40,000 men to second the invasion.

9. The Royal Navy of England then consisted of only 36 sail, and these were of small size. But nobles, merchants, citizens, equipped vessels at their own expense. English Roman Catholics united cordially with English Protestants in preparing to defend their shores. A fleet of 191 ships soon rode on the English waters. Lord Howard of Effingham, himself a Roman Catholic, was the Admiral; and under him served Drake, Hawkins, and Frobisher.

10. At length the Armada appeared, and the English admiral went forth to meet it. Keeping at a distance, lest the Spaniards should board his vessels, he poured in his shot with great effect. The Spaniards replied with heavy guns; but from the height of their decks their shot passed clean over the English ships. Off Calais the Armada anchored, waiting for the Duke of Parma, who lay cooped up in Flanders, watched keenly by the Dutch.

11. On the second night thereafter, the English admiral caused eight **fire-ships** to be silently towed towards the Spanish fleet in the darkness, and to be ignited when they approached the enemy. A panic seized the Spaniards when they saw the dark hulks burst into flames. They cut their cables, and drifted into confusion. Effingham at once fell on the disordered fleet, and destroyed twelve ships. The only way by which the Armada could reach the Atlantic was round the north of Scotland. The storms it encountered on the wild northern coasts completed its ruin. Only fifty-three shattered hulks returned to Spain.

12. The favourite of Elizabeth's old age was Robert Devereux, **Earl of Essex**. In 1598, Essex was appointed to command the English forces in Ireland, where **Hugh O'Neill**, Earl of Tyrone, was in rebellion. Hearing of the Queen's displeasure on account of his opening a correspondence with the rebel chief,

1598.—Henry IV. of France granted toleration to his Protestant subjects by the Edict of Nantes. Before his accession he was the champion of Protestantism; but, to conciliate the Roman Catholics, he had joined their Church. This alarmed the Protestants, to pacify whom the Edict was issued. He was murdered by Ravaillac in 1610.

1600.—The first Royal Charter was granted to the East India Company.

he returned to England without her leave, and was imprisoned.

But the fondness of Elizabeth soon gave him liberty
1601 again. Then with the Earl of Southampton he strove
 A.D. to raise the Londoners in revolt. For this he was tried
 and condemned to death. He was beheaded in the
 Tower, aged thirty-four.

13. Some two years later, the Queen, who had never been
 happy since the death of Essex, was stricken with
1603 mortal illness. Ten days and nights she lay on cushions
 A.D. on the floor, taking neither food nor medicine; and
 then, falling into a heavy sleep, she died. She was in
 her seventieth year.

14. During all these years the High Commission Court, assuming inquisitorial powers, proceeded steadily with the work of enforcing uniformity. There was no true liberty in the country, either civil or religious. Elizabeth, like all the Tudor Sovereigns, treated the House of Commons very haughtily. She maintained the reality of her prerogative. In a single session (that of 1597) she refused the royal assent to no fewer than forty-eight Bills which the Commons had passed.

QUESTIONS.—1. What ecclesiastical body was formed in 1536? What is the origin of the name?

2. What Acts were passed in 1559? What did the Act of Supremacy require? What did the Act of Uniformity forbid? Who suffered by these laws?

3. What court was instituted to carry out these Acts? When did that court receive new powers? How were the Acts enforced?

4. What two continental events of this time had a special interest for England? What effect had the massacre in France and the cruelties in the Netherlands on England?

5. When was the Prince of Orange assassinated? What followed? Whom did Elizabeth send over with an army? Who was slain near Zutphen?

6. What hastened the fall of Mary Stewart? Who was the chief conspirator? How many conspirators were executed? Whose trial was resolved on?

7. Where did Mary's trial take place?

Before whom? What was Mary's defence? What was her sentence? When was she executed?

8. On what did Philip of Spain now resolve? What was the fleet which he prepared called? Mention the number of ships, of soldiers, and of cannons. Who commanded the Armada? When did it sail? What army was to second the invasion?

9. What was the extent of the English Navy of that time? How was it increased? Who was the admiral? Who served under him?

10. What plan of fighting did the English adopt? Where did the Armada anchor? Why?

11. How was the Armada attacked on the second night thereafter? What did Effingham then do? What completed the ruin of the Armada? How many vessels returned to Spain?

12. Who was the favourite of Elizabeth's old age? To what command was Essex appointed in 1598? What rebellion was then in progress? Why was

he imprisoned? On what charge was he condemned?

13. When was Elizabeth stricken with illness? When did she die? How old was she?

14. What had been going on during all these years? How did Elizabeth treat the Commons? What shows the reality of the royal prerogative in her reign?

CHAPTER X.

SOCIAL CONDITION—SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

1. Crime.
2. Houses.
3. Furniture—Coaches.
4. New Plants.
5. Style of Living.
6. Dress.
7. Sports.
8. Dancing and Music.
9. Christmas-tide.

10. May-day.
11. Witchcraft—Astrology—Alchemy.
12. Their Modern Successors.
13. Navigation—Geography—Commerce.
14. The Revival of Learning.
15. Grammar Schools.
16. The Elizabethan Literature.

1. BEFORE the sixteenth century, **crime** was fearfully common. Even in the reign of Henry VIII. about two thousand persons were hanged every year for robbery alone. In the days of Elizabeth the number was reduced to three or four hundred a year. This remarkable change was, without doubt, owing to the diffusion of education and religion among all classes.

2. The Tudor style of **architecture** was called "Florid," from its profusion of ornament. Henry the Seventh's Chapel at Westminster is a good example of it. Brick and stone were generally used in the houses of the upper classes, and glass windows became common. The poor lived in hovels made of wattles plastered with clay.

3. In Elizabeth's time, many changes were made in **furniture**. Bedding was much improved. Previously all dishes and spoons were wooden; but then pewter platters and silver and tin spoons came into use among farmers and people of the same class. About the year 1580 coaches were introduced: before that time ladies rode on a pillion behind their chief servants, whom they held by the belt.

4. Hops were now first grown in England. Potatoes were brought by Sir Francis Drake from America, and were first planted in Lancashire. They were introduced into Ireland by Sir Walter Raleigh. Raleigh also brought tobacco from the West Indies.

5. The families of the nobles and gentry still dined in the great hall with all the servants. Half way down the table stood a large salt-cellar of silver or pewter. Above this sat the master, his family, and guests; below it were retainers and servants of all degrees: hence the expression, to sit above, or below, the salt.

6. The country folks wore a doublet of russet-brown leather; but the Court fashions were, like those of our own day, always changing. Queen Catherine Howard introduced pins from France; and as these were expensive at first, a separate sum for this luxury was granted to the ladies by their husbands: hence the expression, "pin money." The **farthingale** was introduced from Spain in Mary's reign: it was a large hooped petticoat. Ruffs of plaited linen were worn by both sexes on the neck and wrists. The **gentlemen** wore their hair either short and curled or set up on end. Their beards were long and pointed. The costume of the yeomen of the Queen's guard, commonly called "beef-eaters,"¹ gives a very good idea of the dress worn by men in the Tudor period.

7. The **Tournament** had now degenerated into a mere sport, for the strength of armies consisted no longer in steel-clad knights. The boat-joust, or tilting on the water, was practised in summer on the Thames and other rivers. Hunting, especially the stag-hunt, has been at all times one of the national sports. During this period the ladies often joined the chase, and shot at the game with arrows. There were horse-races for prizes; but the modern system of gambling bets was unknown. Bear-baiting and bull-baiting were favourite sports of the highest in the land. The animal was fastened in the middle of an open space, and worried by great English bull-dogs; and as the dogs were killed or disabled, fresh ones were supplied. The principal country sports were archery, foot-races, and various games of ball.

8. Dancing and music filled up many hours; but the dance always ceased with nightfall. Although the minstrels and joculators (jugglers) of the Norman days were despised in the Tudor period, music was much cultivated in private life. The

¹ *Beef-eaters*.—A corruption of *buffetiers*, attendants at a *buffet*, or side-board.

fashionable instruments of music were the *cittern* or lute, a kind of guitar; and the *virginals*, a keyed instrument of one string, the original of the harpsichord and the modern piano.

9. **Christmas** was the great season of sports. There was then a general license, and all sorts of wild tricks were played. Every one went a-mumming in strange dresses and masks. In each parish a Lord of Misrule was chosen, who, with a troop of idle fellows in green and yellow dresses covered with ribbons, went about shouting and beating drums.

10. **May-day** was another festive season. Green branches were cut immediately after midnight; a Lord and Lady of May were chosen; and dances were kept up around a May-pole crowned with flowers. Connected with these sports was the Morris-dance,—supposed to have been derived from the Moors of Spain.

11. Three forms of **superstition** influenced the minds of the people to a great degree during this period. These were, Witchcraft, Astrology, and Alchemy. Poor feeble old women were the most frequent victims of the absurd belief in **Witchcraft**; and they perished by hundreds. All mischief was ascribed to them. This belief kept its hold of the popular mind up to the present century, and is not even yet extinct in some remote country districts. The **astrologers** pretended that they could foretell events by the position of the stars. Many of our common words, such as “disaster,” “ill-starred,” are derived from this source. Kindred with astrology was **Alchemy**, an art which had for its object the discovery of the *philosopher's stone* and the *elixir of life*.

12. These pursuits have not been altogether useless. Witchcraft has given place to that knowledge of drugs and plants so useful in medicine and the arts; while the falsehoods of Astrology and Alchemy have been superseded by the truths of Astronomy and Chemistry.

13. Navigation, geography, and commerce advanced together with rapid strides. Henry VII. laid the foundation of our Navy, and, therefore, of our world-wide commerce. It was, however, in the days of Elizabeth that England became a great naval power, and that commerce received its strongest impulse. Sir Francis Drake, doubling Cape Horn, crossed the Pacific

the shores of India, and sailed home round the Cape of Good Hope, thus being the first English commander to sail round the world.

14. A remarkable feature of the period was the **revival of learning**, especially the study of classics. With the spread of the Bible was diffused a desire to know those languages—Hebrew, Greek, and Latin—on which its true interpretation depends. They have ever since held a leading place in school and college education.

15. The system of **Secondary Education** had its origin in this period. Dean Colet founded St. Paul's School in order to indoctrinate the middle classes with the "new learning." Christ's Hospital, commonly called the Blue-coat School, was founded by Edward VI., in whose reign also eighteen Grammar Schools were founded.

16. The **Elizabethan age** forms one of the most brilliant periods in the history of English literature. Then Edmund Spenser wrote the *Faerie Queene*; then flourished Philip Sidney, author of *Arcadia*; then were written the plays of William Shakespeare; then the early studies of Francis Bacon laid the foundation of the modern philosophy; and Richard Hooker, in his *Ecclesiastical Polity*, wrote English prose with a dignity and eloquence which it had never worn before.

QUESTIONS. — 1. In the reign of Henry VIII. what was the average number of persons annually hanged for robbery? To what was the number reduced in the reign of Elizabeth?

2. Why was the Tudor style of architecture called "Florid"? What improvements were made in domestic architecture during this period? Describe the dwellings of the poor.

3. What changes were made in furniture? What vehicles first came into use about the year 1580? How had ladies been accustomed to travel?

4. Whence were potatoes brought? By whom? In what English county were they first planted? By whom were they introduced into Ireland?

5. What social custom still survived? By what were masters and servants divided at table?

6. What was the dress of country

people at this time? Whence did the expression "pin-money" arise? What was the farthingale? Whence and when was it introduced? What do you know of the ruffs worn at this period? How did the gentlemen of this period wear their hair? What kind of beards were in fashion?

7. What is said of the tournament during this period? What was practised on rivers? What of hunting? What of the horse-races of the period? What of bear-baiting and bull-baiting? What were the principal country sports?

8. At what time did the dancing parties cease? What were the fashionable musical instruments?

9. What was the great season of sports? Who led the sports?

10. Describe the festivities observed on May-day. Whence was the Morris-dance probably derived?

11. What three forms of superstition influenced the minds of the people during this period? What resulted from the belief in witchcraft? What did the astrologers profess? What words are due to the art? What was the object of alchemy?

12. To what have these three phases of superstition given place?

13. Which of our Kings is stated to have laid the foundation of our navy and commerce? When did our early commerce receive its strongest impulse?

14. How did the spread of the Bible encourage learning?

15. What part of our educational system had its origin in this period? Who founded St. Paul's School? With what view? By whom was Christ's Hospital founded? How many Grammar Schools were founded in his reign?

16. What is the literary character of the Elizabethan age? Name some of the chief writers, and say for what each is remarkable.

CHAPTER XI.

THE UNION OF THE CROWNS.

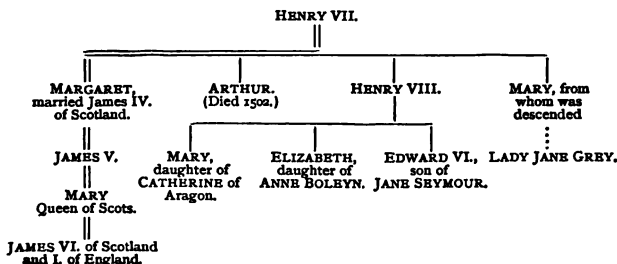
1. Accession of James Stewart.
2. Three Great Parties.
3. The Main and the Bye Plot.
4. The Hampton Court Conference.
5. The Gunpowder Plot.

6. Its Discovery.
7. The Ulster Plantations.
8. The King's Favourites.
9. Effects of the Union in Scotland.

1. *JAMES I.*¹—On a Saturday night in early spring, James, the King of Scots, had retired to rest in his palace of Holyrood, when a weary and travel-stained rider alighted at the gates. The stranger was immediately led to the King's bedside, where, kneeling humbly, he announced to him that Queen Elizabeth was dead, and saluted him as her successor. Three days later, James was proclaimed at the Cross of Edinburgh, King of Eng-

¹ *James I.*—Son of Mary Queen of Scots, and great-great-grandson of Henry VII. Married Anne of Denmark. Reigned 22 years. First King of the House of Stewart. (See Table below.)

GENEALOGICAL TREE CONNECTING THE TUDORS AND THE STEWARTS.



land, Scotland, and Ireland. One hundred years previously, Margaret Tudor had gone to Scotland to marry James IV. Now her great-grandson, as undisputed heir, quietly mounted Elizabeth's throne. His journey to London occupied a month, and resembled a triumphal procession all the way. When he approached London, the Lord Mayor, the Aldermen, and five hundred citizens met him at Stamford Hill. To gratify his new subjects, he created in six weeks more than two hundred knights.

2. The English nation was then divided into **three great parties**, the Episcopalians, the Roman Catholics, and the Puritans; and all three were nursing the hope of special favour from James. It soon appeared that James was resolved to establish Episcopacy throughout Great Britain, as the united kingdoms of England and Scotland began to be called.

3. The Roman Catholics and the Puritans, both of whom had suffered severely from the Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity in the late reign, resolved on a combined effort to secure greater toleration. A double plot—the **Main** and the **Bye**—**1603** was formed; but it was discovered, and three of the conspirators were executed. Sir Walter Raleigh, charged with being a leader of the Main plot, was thrown into the Tower, and remained there for thirteen years.

4. An attempt was made in the following year to settle the differences between the Episcopalians and the Puritans, by a conference of the leading men of both parties, held at **Hampton Court**;¹ but it was a complete failure. The translation of the English Bible was almost the only fruit of this conference. Forty-seven ministers were engaged in the work for three years, and it was published in 1611.

5. The discontent of some of the Roman Catholics, when they found that James had no intention of overthrowing the Protestant religion in England, took a terrible shape. Certain fanatics among them formed the **Gunpowder Plot**—a plot to blow up the King, Lords, and Commons, when assembled in Parliament. Robert Catesby and Sir Everard Digby were the chief conspira-

¹ *Hampton Court*.—A palace near the village of Hampton, on the Thames, 15 miles above London. It was built by Cardinal Wolsey, and presented by him to Henry VIII. in 1525. The gardens there were laid out by William III.

tors. A cellar beneath the House of Lords was hired; thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were placed there; coals and sticks were strewed over them; and the doors were then boldly thrown open.

6. Only a few days before the appointed time, an anonymous letter addressed to Lord Mounteagle, warning him not to attend the opening of Parliament, led to the discovery of the plot. On the vaults being searched the following morning, a Spanish officer, Guido or Guy Fawkes, was found preparing the matches. The rest of the conspirators fled into the country, where most of them were cut down while fighting desperately. Digby, Fawkes, and all who were taken alive, were executed. The 5th of November 1605 was the day that had been fixed for the deed. Penal laws of the severest kind were the result of this plot.

7. James's policy in Ireland led to great changes. Taking almost all Ulster from the insurgent chiefs, he parcelled it out among settlers from Great Britain, and those of the native race who were willing to submit to his rule. To raise money for carrying out the scheme, the Baronetcy—an order of hereditary knighthood—was instituted, and the patents were sold for £1,000 each.

8. In 1612 James's eldest son, Henry, an amiable and accomplished prince, died, in his eighteenth year. His brother Charles then became Prince of Wales, and heir to the throne. Robert Cecil, Earl of Salisbury, the Lord High Treasurer, died in the same year. After his death, James trusted much to favourites; the principal of whom were Cecil's successor, Robert Carr, afterwards Earl of Somerset; and George Villiers, the well-known Duke of Buckingham.

9. In Scotland the Union was attended by the most serious consequences. Most of the nobility and gentry followed the Court to London. Trade suffered immensely, and many Scotsmen left the country.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where was James I. when he heard of Elizabeth's death? What was his claim to the English throne? Describe his journey to London. Who went forth to welcome him?

2. Into what three parties was the

English nation divided? What did each expect? What was James's intention regarding religion?

3. On what did the Roman Catholics and the Puritans resolve? What were the two parts of the plot called? How

many of the conspirators were executed? Who was imprisoned?

4. What was the object of the Hampton Court conference? What was almost the only good fruit of the conference? How many persons were employed on the work? When was it published?

5. What conspiracy against the King and the Government was made in the year 1605? Who were the chief conspirators? What measures were taken by them?

6. How was the plot discovered?

How were the conspirators punished? What day had been fixed for the commission of the deed? What were passed in consequence of this plot?

7. What measures were taken by James in the north of Ireland? How did he raise money to effect these changes?

8. Which of James's sons died in 1612? Who then became heir? What minister died in the same year? Who were James's chief favourites?

9. What were the effects of the Union in Scotland?

CHAPTER XII.

KING BY DIVINE RIGHT.

1. The Opening of the Struggle.

2. James's Second Parliament.

3. The Pilgrim Fathers.

4. Fall of Lord Bacon.

1. IN James's reign we observe the beginning of that struggle between the King and the Parliament which ended in the overthrow of absolute monarchy, and the establishment of constitutional government. Many of the clergy preached from their pulpits the doctrine that the King, by **Divine right** to the throne, was above all laws. James would have dispensed with Parliaments altogether, had that been possible; but his extravagance forced him to have recourse to them for supplies. The Commons began now to act on the principle,—**No supplies until grievances are redressed.**

2. After governing without a Parliament for four years, the King was forced by his necessities to call a second one **1614** in 1614. When he asked the Commons for supplies, A.D. they demanded first his abandonment of illegal taxation.

James forthwith dissolved the Parliament, and sent four of the leading members to the Tower. He then raised money by Benevolences, and ruled as an absolute Monarch for the next seven years.

1617.—King James visited Scotland, and tried to establish Episcopacy there. In the following year the General Assembly of the Church, held at Perth, was forced to adopt the ceremonies and festivals of the Episcopal Church. The Five Articles of Perth, by which these changes were made, were afterwards confirmed by the Scottish Parliament.

3. James was as zealous as Elizabeth had been for supremacy and uniformity. Many of the Puritans, despairing of freedom of religion in England, went abroad. Among these was a company of refugees from Nottinghamshire, who went to Holland. After spending eleven years there, they resolved to emigrate to America. In November 1620, their ship, 1620 the *Mayflower*, dropped her anchor in Cape Cod Bay. A.D. These were the **Pilgrim Fathers**, the founders of New England, which has now grown into a great and powerful nation,—the United States of America.

4. Parliament was again called together in 1621. The Commons at once attacked the monopolies. Several Court favourites, including a bishop and a judge, were impeached at the bar of the House of Lords. The Commons next attacked the corruption of justice, selecting Lord Bacon as their victim. Created Chancellor in 1618, he had followed the pernicious practice of the time, and had accepted presents from suitors in his court. Having confessed his guilt, he was sentenced to imprisonment and a heavy fine. The King remitted the sentence; but Bacon was dismissed from the Court, and died at his country house in 1626.

QUESTIONS.—1. What struggle began in James's reign? In what did the struggle end? What doctrine did many of the clergy preach? On what principle did the Commons act?

2. How long did James govern without a Parliament? What led him to call a second Parliament? When? Why was it dissolved? How were some of its leaders punished? How did the King rule during the next seven years?

3. For what was James as zealous as Elizabeth? What did many Puritans do? Who were the Pilgrim Fathers? When did they land in America?

4. When did Parliament again meet? What did the Commons first attack? What did they next attack? Who was their victim? What pernicious practice had he followed? What was his sentence? What did James do? Where and when did he die?

1618.—Sir Walter Raleigh was executed at Winchester on his former sentence (1603). He had been released in 1616, on promising to disclose a gold mine in South America. He sailed thither, but his landing was disputed by the Spaniards. James had for some time been trying to arrange the marriage of his son Charles with a Spanish princess. To please the Court of Spain, therefore, he ordered Raleigh, on his return, to be executed.

1618.—A struggle for the crown of Bohemia, between Frederick, Elector Palatine, and Ferdinand of Austria, led to the great Thirty Years' War. Frederick was James's son-in-law, and the English people were enthusiastic in his support; but James was unwilling to offend Spain. He therefore sent only a small force to support Frederick, which proved of little use. The war was closed (in 1648) by the Peace of Westphalia.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE CROWN AGAINST THE COMMONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. The Protest of the Commons.
2. The French Marriage and the Spanish War.
3. Charles's First Parliament.
4. Charles's Second Parliament.
5. War with France. | 6. Charles's Third Parliament—The Petition of Right.
7. A Scene in the House of Commons.
8. Strafford and Laud.
9. Ship-money.
10. Charles's Fourth Parliament. |
|---|---|

1. DURING the session of 1621, the contest between King and Commons reached its first crisis. Sir Edward Coke proposed a petition against the projected marriage of Prince Charles with the Spanish Infanta, and a stormy debate followed. In consequence of that, the King threatened the leaders of the

Dec. 18,
1621
A.D. Opposition with the Tower. Thereupon the Commons recorded in the Journals of their House a celebrated protest, claiming "**That the liberties, franchises, privileges, and jurisdictions of Parliament, are the ancient and undoubted birthright and inheritance of the subjects of England.**" James with his own hand tore this resolution out of the Journals, and dissolved the Parliament. Several of the leading members of the House of Commons (including Edward Coke and John Pym), and a few also of the Lords, were committed to prison.

2. After all, the match, so hateful to the nation, was never completed. Charles and Buckingham undertook a journey to Spain in disguise, in order that the Prince might see his bride-elect. But a quarrel between Buckingham and the Spanish

1623
A.D. minister, Olivarez, broke off the match; and a French bride was found for Charles instead. The result was hailed with joy in England; and when, in the following year, James called a new Parliament, and declared war against Spain, the Commons eagerly voted £300,000 for its prosecution. In 1625, James died of gout and ague, aged 59.

3. **CHARLES I.**¹—The Spanish war was continued under the new King. To meet its cost, Charles asked his **first Parliament** for a supply; but the Commons granted only £140,000, with tunnage and poundage² for one year. Enraged by this

¹ *Charles I.*—Son of James I. Married Henriette-Maria of France. Reigned 24 years.

² *Tunnage and poundage*—Import

duties on every *ton* of wine and on every *pound* of certain commodities introduced into England. These were the origin of our "Customs."

want of confidence, the King dissolved the Parliament in a fortnight. He then levied taxes by his own authority, revived the old abuse of **Benevolences**, and began to 1625
quarter his soldiers in private houses. A.D.

4. The **second Parliament** met in 1626. The Commons demanded Buckingham's dismissal. The King replied by at once dissolving the Parliament. The usual 1626
illegal taxation followed. Many who resisted were A.D.
imprisoned.

5. To add to the difficulties of Charles, a **war with France** began. Cardinal Richelieu, the great minister of Louis XIII., was then engaged in besieging the Huguenot 1627
stronghold, **La Rochelle**, on the Bay of Biscay. Twice A.D.
the English tried to relieve the besieged. Buckingham led the first expedition; but he returned, having lost almost half his men. While at Portsmouth, preparing to sail with a second expedition, he was stabbed to the heart 1628
by Lieutenant Felton, who had been dismissed from A.D.
the service. Soon afterwards the city surrendered to Richelieu.

6. In the same year Charles called his **third Parliament**. Before granting any money, the Commons drew up a Bill—the famous **Petition of Right**—requiring the King to levy no taxes without consent of Parliament, to detain no 1628
one in prison without trial, and to billet no soldiers in A.D.
private houses. An assent was wrung from the reluctant Charles; and the Commons gave him five subsidies—equal to nearly £400,000. But in three weeks it was seen that the King regarded not the solemn promise he had made.

7. At the instance of Sir John Eliot, the Commons then resolved to maintain the **Articles of Religion** as ratified by Parliament. The Speaker (Finch) announced the King's order of an adjournment. He was forcibly held in the chair till the House had voted every innovator in religion, and every minister who levied taxes without consent of Parliament, to be “a capital enemy to the kingdom and commonwealth.” The Parliament was at once dissolved (March 10), and nine of its leading members were thrown into prison, including Eliot, who died there. Charles then made peace with Spain and France.

8. For eleven years (1629 to 1640) no Parliament was called. Thomas Wentworth, Earl of **Strafford**, who had at first been on the popular side, and **William Laud**, Archbishop of Canterbury, were the principal ministers of Charles during these years. Strafford devised a scheme—called in his letters **Thorough**—to secure for Charles absolute power by means of a standing army. Laud directed the affairs of the Church. The nation groaned under the tyranny of three illegal tribunals, directed chiefly by these two ministers,—the **Star Chamber**,¹ the **High Commission Court**, and the **Council of York**.

9. Of all the illegal taxes levied by Charles, **ship-money**² was the most notorious. It was revived in 1634; but the spirit of the nation revolted against the injustice of levying a war-tax during profound peace. Moreover, it was collected by authority of the King alone. In 1637, **John Hampden**,³ a gentleman of Buckinghamshire, refused to pay the tax. The case was tried in the Court of Exchequer, and a majority of the Judges gave their decision against Hampden.

10. Charles was forced in 1640 to call the **Short Parliament** (his fourth); but being met with the same demands as before, he soon dissolved it. Meanwhile the Scots had shown a determined spirit of resistance to the King's policy, and a Scottish army under Alexander Leslie⁴ had crossed the Border and seized Newcastle.

1633.—Charles, with Bishop Laud, visited Scotland. He was crowned at Edinburgh, June 18. Laud's attempt to impose Episcopacy on Scotland was resisted by the Scottish Parliament.

1637.—The attempt to read Laud's Church-Service Book in St. Giles's, Edinburgh, led to a serious riot.

1638.—The Four Tables (nobles, gentry, burghers, and clergymen) were instituted in Scotland. The National Covenant against innovations in religion was signed by thousands.

¹ *Star Chamber*.—Where *staſſa*, or Jewish bonds, used to be kept.

² *Ship-money*.—Before a permanent fleet existed, it was in the power of the King to require sea-ports to furnish him with ships in time of war, and maritime counties to supply money for their maintenance. The tax was extended to the inland counties in 1635.

³ *John Hampden*.—Born at London, 1594; killed on Chalgrove-field, 1643.

⁴ *Alexander Leslie*.—There were two Leslies in the Scottish army at this time, belonging to different families. *Alexander Leslie*, created Earl of Leven in 1641, who fought at Marston Moor, and to whom Charles surrendered at Newark in 1646; and *David Leslie*, afterwards created Lord Newark, who defeated Montrose at Philiphaugh in 1645, and whom Cromwell defeated at Dunbar in 1650.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the contest reach its first crisis? What led to a stormy debate in the Commons? What did the King do? What protest did the Commons enter in their Journals? What did James then do?

2. What broke off the Spanish match? How was the result hailed in England? How did the Commons show their satisfaction? When did James die?

3. What reply was made by the Parliament to Charles's first demand for supplies? How did Charles receive this answer? What three things did he do?

4. In what year was Charles's second Parliament called? Whose dismissal did the Commons demand? How did the King reply?

5. What war then occurred? Where is La Rochelle? What was the result of Buckingham's first expedition? What were the circumstances of his death?

6. When was Charles's third Parliament called? What famous Petition was drawn up by the Commons? What were the chief provisions of this deed?

How did Charles receive the Petition? What supplies were granted him by the Commons? How long did the King observe the restrictions laid on him?

7. What did the Commons next resolve? What did the Speaker announce? Describe what followed. What did the King at once do? How many members were imprisoned? Who died in prison?

8. How many years was the country ruled by the King without a Parliament? Who were his principal advisers during these years? What was Wentworth's scheme? What affairs did Laud direct? What three unlawful tribunals were directed chiefly by these two ministers?

9. What was the most notorious of the illegal taxes levied by Charles? When was this tax revived? How did the resistance to it commence? Where was the case tried, and with what result?

10. When was Charles's fourth Parliament called? How did it act towards the King? What events had meanwhile taken place in the north?

CHAPTER XIV.

THE LONG PARLIAMENT.

1. The Advice of the Peers.
2. The First Acts of the Commons.
3. Impeachment of Strafford.
4. Bill of Attainder Passed.
5. The Grand Remonstrance.
6. Roundheads and Cavaliers.
7. Impeachment of the Five Members.

8. Reply of the Commons.
9. The King in the House.
10. Discomfiture of Charles.
11. Attitude of London.
12. Triumphant Return of the Five.
13. The Militia Bill.

1. CHARLES, in despair, called a Council of Peers at York, and laid before them the state of the country. The Peers advised him to call another Parliament. Charles **1640** accordingly summoned the Lords and the Commons to meet him for the fifth time, and the memorable **Long Parliament** began its sittings, November 30, 1640. The majority of the members were Nonconformists, and Pym was leader of the popular or country party.

2. The Commons at once set themselves vigorously to the work of reversing the tyrannical Acts of the previous eleven

years. Laud and Strafford were thrown into the Tower. The Commons voted that a Parliament should be held at least every three years. They resolved that the Parliament then sitting should not be dissolved but by its own consent. They swept away all arbitrary tribunals, including the Star Chamber Court, the Court of High Commission, and the Council of York.

3. The trial of Strafford was begun in **Westminster Hall** on the 22nd day of March 1641. The King sat unseen within a cabinet hung with tapestry. On the second day, Pym, **1641** A.D. the leader of the impeachment, spoke long and weightily in support of the charges. He described the dreadful tyranny of Wentworth in Ireland, producing witnesses in support of all he said. Strafford was required to answer on the spot. He strove hard to show, with that dignified eloquence he could wield so well, that all the evils he had done heaped together could not make treason.

4. Strafford's fate was decided by the notes of a speech, alleged to have been made by him at a private council, and containing these words: "You have an army in Ireland that you may employ to reduce this kingdom to obedience." A **Bill of Attainder**¹ condemned the great criminal to the scaffold. The consent of Charles was still necessary; but he hesitated. Strafford then wrote a letter to the King beseeching his majesty to sign the Bill of Attainder, and thus save the commonwealth from ill. The King, after weakly asking advice from his Council, wrote the fatal letters. The scaffold stood on Tower Hill; Strafford laid his head on the block, and died (May 12, 1641). Bonfires lighted London streets that night, and men rode off to the country, crying joyfully, "His head is off!"

5. There were now two distinct parties in the House of Commons. The King had friends in Falkland and Hyde, afterwards Earl of Clarendon; Hampden and Pym were of course the leaders of the Opposition. When the document called **The Grand Remonstrance**, which recited all the misgovern-

¹ *Attainder*.—The difference between *impeachment* and *attainder* is one of form. An impeachment is a trial in which the Lords are the judges and the Commons are the accusers. In the case

of attainder the procedure is by a Bill, which, like other Bills, requires to pass through both Houses, and receive the royal assent.

ment of the previous sixteen years, came to be discussed, the contest waxed hot and personal. A majority of eleven passed the Remonstrance, and it was presented to the King. It was afterwards printed and scattered over the land, that the nation might know what the Parliament had already done, and what remained for it to do.

Nov. 22,
1641
A.D.

6. Meanwhile, symptoms of a storm appeared. The apprentices and citizens, thronging to Westminster during the Christmas holidays, came to blows with the soldiers of the King; and out of the tumult arose those historic nicknames **Roundhead** and **Cavalier**.¹

7. A fatal thought meanwhile entered the King's head. In utter defiance of legal form, he instructed his Attorney-General to **impeach five members** of the Commons, and one of the Lords. On January 3, 1642, the King's Sergeant-at-Arms entered the House of Commons with a **royal message** to the Speaker, requiring that five members, whose names he distinctly pronounced—Denzil Hollis, Sir Arthur Haselrig, John Pym, John Hampden, and William Strode—should be given up, as guilty of high treason.

1642
A.D.

8. The House appointed a deputation of four to carry a message to the King, intimating that an answer would be returned as speedily as the importance of the matter would allow, and that the members were ready meanwhile to answer all *legal* charges. The Speaker then ordered the five members to attend daily in the House until further directions.

9. Next day the debate, as to how the Five should act, was proceeding, when a French officer appeared at the door, and told that the King had left Whitehall with a band of armed men, and was then near the Hall. The Five went hastily down to the river-stairs, Strode having been dragged out by a friendly hand. Before they had entered the boat that awaited them, Charles and his train of four hundred reached the House. A loud knock—and through the violently opened door the King entered. Outside stood

Jan. 4,
1642
A.D.

¹ *Roundhead and Cavalier*.—The former name was given in derision to the members of the Opposition, in allusion to the Puritan fashion of wearing closely cropped hair. The King's party

received the latter name from their gay manners and dress, and their gallant bearing. The names were soon accepted by both parties.

a mass of armed men, who would not allow the door to be shut.

10. One quick look towards the place Pym always held, told Charles that **"the birds were flown."** After long silence the King put the question, "Is Mr. Pym here?" but there was no answer. In like manner he asked for Hollis. Lenthall, the Speaker, on most occasions a timorous man, made answer to the royal questions, "that he had neither eyes to see nor tongue to speak in that place but as the House was pleased to direct." Baffled on every hand, the King turned to go out. As he passed to the door, the mutterings of the storm broke out in cries of "Privilege! privilege!"

11. The night succeeding the outrage on the Commons saw London in a fever of excitement. A royal proclamation ordered the ports to be shut, lest the Five should escape. Another edict soon followed, forbidding any person to afford them shelter. **London** proved true as steel. The members found a safe shelter in Coleman Street; and although on the 5th Charles went down to Guildhall through angry crowds, and there demanded their surrender, they were not betrayed.

12. The King fled from London to Hampton Court on Monday the 10th. Next day all London and all Southwark lined the banks of Thames between the Bridge and Westminster Stairs, to see the **return of the Five**. Embarking in one of the splendid barges of the City Companies, they rowed up to Westminster amid tumultuous cheering. The Speaker and the members stood to greet the Five, who sat for an instant, and then rose with bared heads. Pym spoke for all, thanking the citizens of London for shelter and hospitality.

13. Towards the end of February the Queen fled to Holland, taking with her the English crown jewels, which she sold to supply the King with arms and military stores. For some months messages passed between the King and the Parliament; but there was no inclination on either side to yield. At **1642** last the Commons demanded that the King should give **A.D.** his assent to a **Militia Bill**, authorizing lord-lieutenants, who were named in the Bill, to raise forces. This would really have transferred to Parliament the command of the army. Charles refused his assent, and both sides prepared for war.

QUESTIONS.—1. What step did Charles take in his despair? What did the Peers advise? What Parliament was then called? What party had the majority?

2. To what work did the Commons set themselves? Who were thrown into the Tower? What measures did the Commons next undertake? What tribunals were swept away?

3. When did Strafford's trial begin? What were the proceedings of the second day? What did he strive to show?

4. What document decided his fate? How was he condemned? What was still required? What did Charles do? How was the news of Strafford's death received?

5. What friends had the King in Parliament? Who were the leaders of the Opposition? What famous document was adopted?

6. What was the origin of the names Roundhead and Cavalier?

7. What fatal step did the King then take? What royal message was sent to the Speaker?

8. How did the House reply to it? What did the Speaker order?

9. What news arrived during the debate? Where did the Five go? How did Charles enter the House?

10. What did Charles soon perceive? What questions did the King put? What did the Speaker answer?

11. What orders were issued next day? What was the attitude of London? How was this shown?

12. When did the King flee from London? What took place next day? Who received the Five at Westminster?

13. When did the Queen flee? What led directly to the Civil War?

CHAPTER XV.

THE CIVIL WAR.

1. The Royal Standard Unfurled.
2. Leaders of each Party.
3. The Campaign of 1643.
4. Oliver Cromwell—The Ironsides.
5. The Solemn League and Covenant.
6. Trial and Execution of Laud.
7. The Self-denying Ordinance.

8. Battles of Naseby and Philiphaugh.
9. Surrender of Charles.
10. The King a Prisoner.
11. Pride's Purge.
12. Trial of the King.
13. His Execution.

1. **THREE** months after his flight from London, Charles presented himself before **Hull**, and demanded admission. The governor refused to open the gates; and Charles retired to York. The Commons by a majority approved of the governor's conduct; but the Royalist minority, comprising 32 Peers and 60 Commoners, withdrew and joined Charles at York. Conciliation was now hopeless. On the 25th of August Charles unfurled the royal standard at Nottingham, and 10,000 men gathered around it.

2. The King in person commanded the Cavaliers; the **Earl of Essex** was chosen to lead the Roundheads, and mustered his forces at Northampton. Prince Rupert, a nephew of Charles, led the Royalist cavalry. The opening battle

April,
1642
A.D.

Aug. 25.

Oct. 23.

MAP OF ENGLAND TO ILLUSTRATE THE CIVIL WAR.



PLACES OF INTEREST.

was fought at **Edgehill**¹ in Warwickshire; but it decided nothing, though it checked the King's march on London. During the winter Charles remained at Oxford.

3. The Siege of **Gloucester**, raised by Essex in 1643, was the turning point of the strife. Thenceforward the cause of the Parliament grew strong; although the loss of Hampden, who fell early in the war, while skirmishing at *Chalgrove*² with Rupert's cavalry, was at first severely felt. **1643**
A.D.

4. A greater soldier and statesman than Hampden was already in the field. At Edgehill, a captain of horse named **Oliver Cromwell** had fought in the army of the Parliament. He saw the secret of the King's early success, and resolved that the clownish soldiers of the Parliament should, by drill and discipline, be made a match for the royal Cavaliers. He began with his own regiment, which soon became celebrated as the **Iron-sides** of Colonel Cromwell.

5. In terms of the Solemn League and Covenant,³ signed by the Parliaments of England and Scotland in 1643, 20,000 Scottish troops, under the Earl of Leven, crossed the Border in the beginning of 1644. In the south, under Essex, the soldiers of the Parliament suffered many reverses; Charles defeated Waller at Cropredy Bridge (Oxfordshire); July 2, but in the north, on **Marston Moor**,⁴ the Roundheads, **1644**
A.D. aided by the Scots, gained a brilliant victory. The immediate result was the capture of York and Newcastle by the troops of the Parliament.

6. During the greater part of 1644, the trial of Laud, who had been in prison since 1641, was going on. He was condemned by Act of Attainder in the last month of **1645**
A.D. the year, and was executed in January 1645.

7. An offshoot from the Puritan party had been for some

1643.—The Westminster Assembly of Divines began its sittings in Henry the Seventh's Chapel.

¹ *Edgehill*, or Kineton, a small village; 72 miles north-west of London.

² *Chalgrove*, or Chalgrove-field, in Berkshire, near Watlington; 15 miles south-east of Oxford.

³ *Solemn League and Covenant*.—Different from the National Covenant, signed by the Scots alone, in 1638.

⁴ *Marston Moor*.—In Yorkshire; 4 or 5 miles west of York.

time gathering strength in the nation. It consisted of the **Independents**, of whom Cromwell was the chief. By their means an Act called the **Self-denying Ordinance** was passed in April 1645, forbidding members of Parliament **1645** to hold command in the army. Essex and Manchester **A.D.** were removed; and Sir Thomas Fairfax was appointed Commander-in-chief: but Cromwell, though a member of Parliament, was soon called to lead the cavalry, and became in reality the General of the entire army.

8. The decisive battle of the Civil War was fought at **Naseby**,¹ where the Royalist army was utterly routed by Fairfax, **June 14,** **1645** **fax.** David Leslie defeated the Marquis of Montrose at Philiphaugh.² Rupert surrendered Bristol. **A.D.**

9. The Parliament was thus triumphant. But it was no longer a united body. During the war it had slowly resolved itself into two factions: the one Presbyterian and constitutional, desirous only of limiting the power of the King; the other Independent and republican, bent on the destruction of the throne. Charles, in the faint hope of regaining his position by the aid of the Presbyterians, **surrendered himself to the Scottish army at Newark.**³ Receiving him loyally, they offered to support him if he would sign the National Covenant. But this he refused to do; and after some time he was, by his own desire, transferred to the English Parliament.

10. Rapidly the plot thickened. Cornet **Joyce**, with a band of horse, acting under secret orders from Cromwell, seized the King in Northamptonshire, and lodged him in Hampton Court. Charles escaped, and reached the Isle of Wight; but being forced to take refuge in Carisbrook Castle,⁴ he was there guarded more jealously than ever. The Scots, alarmed at the fast growing power of the Independents, passed the Border under the Duke of Hamilton. Cromwell pressed northward by rapid marches, routed Hamilton at Preston in Lancashire; and, enter-

¹ *Naseby*.—In Northamptonshire; 36 miles east of Birmingham.

² *Philiphaugh*.—About 2 miles west of Selkirk. Therafter Montrose went to Norway, and then to France, where he obtained great distinction. In 1650, he made a fruitless descent on the north

of Scotland in behalf of Charles II. He was captured, and was hanged at Edinburgh.

³ *Newark*.—On the Trent; 20 miles north-east of Nottingham.

⁴ *Carisbrook*.—A castle and village in the north of the Isle of Wight.

ing Scotland, established at Edinburgh a government hostile to Charles.

11. During his absence murmurs arose from the Presbyterians, who still formed the majority in the Parliament. On his return to London, Cromwell ordered Colonel Pride with his troopers to prevent the entrance of about two hundred Presbyterian members. This is called **Pride's Purge**. The remainder—about fifty Independents, known as the **Rump**—voted thanks to Cromwell. The King was then removed to Windsor.

Dec. 6,
1648
A.D.

12. A tribunal appointed by the Rump, and styled the **High Court of Justice**, met in Westminster Hall for the trial of the King. Charles was placed within the bar, and was there charged with tyranny, especially in waging war against his people. The case lasted seven days, and then sentence of death was pronounced.

Jan. 30,
1649
A.D.

13. Three days later, on the 30th of January 1649, in front of the Banqueting Hall of Whitehall Palace, **Charles Stewart was beheaded**. He died a Protestant of the English Church, declaring that the guilt of the Civil War did not rest with him. A deep groan burst from the assembled multitude as the executioner raised the bleeding head and cried, "This is the head of a traitor!"

QUESTIONS.—1. What town closed its gates against Charles? What did the Royalist minority of the Parliament do? When was the royal standard unfurled? Where?

2. Who were the leaders of the rival forces? Who led the Royalist cavalry? Where and when was the first battle fought? Where did Charles spend the winter?

3. What was the turning-point of the strife? What leader of the Parliamentary cause fell early in the war? Where?

4. Who was Oliver Cromwell? What

resolution did he make regarding the army of the Parliament? What was his regiment called?

5. What accession did the Parliamentary cause receive early in 1644? How did the Parliamentary forces fare in the south? What great victory was obtained by them in the north? What was the immediate result of the victory?

6. Who was executed early in 1645? How long had he been imprisoned?

7. Of what religious party was Oliver Cromwell the chief? When was the Self-denying Ordinance passed, and

1648.—The Peace of Westphalia terminated the Thirty Years' War, and recognised the principle of the "balance of power" in Europe. The parties to it were France, Germany, and Sweden. The treaty stripped Germany of its ancient glory and supremacy, and raised France to the foremost place among European powers. France also gained Elsass (Alsace); Sweden, part of Pomerania and the bishoprics of Verdun and Bremen.

what was it? Who was made commander-in-chief of the Parliamentary army? Who was in reality the general of the entire army?

8. Which was the decisive battle of the Civil War? When was it fought? Who gained the victory? Where and by whom was Montrose finally defeated? What place did Rupert surrender?

9. Into what two factions had the Parliament resolved itself during the war? To whom did Charles surrender? Upon what condition did the Scots offer to support the fallen Monarch? To whom was he transferred?

10. By whom was the King seized? Where was he eventually confined? What measure was taken by the Scots? Where did Cromwell defeat Hamilton?

11. How were the murmurs of the Presbyterian party in the House of Commons met by Cromwell?

12. By what court was Charles I. tried? Where did the trial take place? What charge was brought against Charles? What was the sentence of the court?

13. When and where was the King beheaded? Describe the circumstances attending his death.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE COMMONWEALTH.

1. The New Government.

2. Cromwell's Reduction of Ireland.

3. Charles II. Proclaimed in Scotland.

4. Cromwell in Scotland.

5. Dunbar Drove.

6. Wanderings of Charles.

7. Expulsion of the Parliament.

8. Barebone's Parliament.

9. Oliver, Protector.

10. Oliver's Foreign Policy.

11. His Second Parliament.

12. Death of Oliver.

13. Richard, Protector.

1. ENGLAND, now a **Commonwealth**, continued so for more than eleven years. A fragment of the Long Parliament still sat. Royalty and the House of Lords were formally abolished. The government was vested in a Council of forty-one members. John Milton was Foreign Secretary; Cromwell and Fairfax directed the Army; Sir Harry Vane controlled the Navy. But Cromwell and his soldiers really ruled the Nation.

2. The Marquis of Ormond, leader of the Irish Royalists, proclaimed Charles II. in Ireland. Cromwell, having received his commission as Lord-Lieutenant, landed near Dublin with 10,000 men. In six months he completely broke the Royalist party in Ireland. The sack of **Drogheda**¹ was the chief operation of the war.

3. The Scots, immediately on receiving news of the death of Charles I., **proclaimed his son King**. Young Charles, disliking the idea of becoming Presbyterian, sent the Marquis of Montrose from Holland to attempt a rising

¹ *Drogheda*.—On the river Boyne; 81 miles north of Dublin.

independently of the Covenanters; but Montrose was defeated, captured, and executed. Charles then agreed to sign the Covenants, and went to Scotland. A joyous welcome met him at Edinburgh.

4. Oliver lost not a day; but when he reached the Border, he found the whole district from Tweed to Forth laid waste. The Scots, under **David Leslie**,¹ lay intrenched near Edinburgh. The Ironsides were met by famine. As often as Oliver changed his position, he was followed by the cautious Leslie, whose tactics were to avoid a battle and let hunger do its work.

5. At length the Lord-General was so hemmed in on the shore near **Dunbar**,² that he had no choice left but a disgraceful surrender or a hopeless attack on the well-posted Scottish army. Suddenly he saw the enemy leaving the hills and advancing to offer battle on the plain! This movement is said to have been made by the advice of the clergy in the Scottish camp, and sorely against the will of Leslie. In the battle which followed—known as *Dunbar Drove*—the Scots were totally routed. Edinburgh and Glasgow yielded without delay to the conqueror.

Sept. 3,
1650
A.D.

6. King Charles was, nevertheless, crowned at **Scone**³ on New-Year's-Day, 1651, and signed the Covenants. Suddenly, with Charles at their head, the Scots marched into England. They had reached **Worcester**, when Cromwell overtook them. It was the anniversary of *Dunbar Drove*. A battle followed, in which the army of Charles was scattered. He wandered in disguise for more than a month; at one time hid for a whole day among the branches of an oak tree, while he watched the red-coats of Oliver search-

Sept. 3,
1651
A.D.

1651.—Parliament passed the Navigation Act, prohibiting any but English ships from trading with England. This led to a Dutch War, in which many severe sea-fights took place. Martin Tromp, De Witt, and De Ruyter were the Dutch admirals; the English admirals were Blake, Monk, and Penn. Near the Goodwins (November 1652) Tromp defeated Blake, who was wounded; but off Portland (February 1653) Blake vanquished Tromp in a furious battle which lasted three days. The decisive battle was fought off the island of Texel (July 31, 1653), where Tromp was killed. Peace was concluded in 1654.

¹ See Note 4, p. 162.

² *Dunbar*.—On the coast of East Lothian; nearly 30 miles east of Edinburgh.

³ *Scone*.—Pronounced *Scoon*; 2½ miles north of Perth: the site of an ancient abbey and royal palace. There the Kings of Scotland were crowned.

ing for him. Through many dangers he at last reached the coast of Sussex, where he found a coal-boat, in which he was safely conveyed to France. Scotland was placed under the charge of General Monk.

7. A quarrel then arose between Cromwell and the Parliament. He urged his officers to present a petition for pay still due to them. The Parliament declared that such petitions should be considered treasonable, and began to prepare a Bill to that effect. Cromwell marched down to the House with three hundred musketeers, and, leaving them outside, entered and took his seat. By-and-by he rose to speak. He charged the Parliament with oppression and profanity; and, when some

members rose to reply, he strode up and down with his hat on, hurling reproaches at them. "Get you gone," cried he, "and give way to honest men!" He stamped on the floor; the musketeers poured in.

"Take away that bauble!" said he, pointing to the mace which lay on the table. Resistance was useless. The Hall was speedily cleared; and Oliver, as he left, locked the door and carried off the key. This was the **expulsion of the Long Parliament.**

8. An Assembly of about 140 members, selected from the warmest supporters of Oliver, then met instead of a Parliament. Its enemies called it Barebone's Parliament, after Barebone, a leather-seller, who took a prominent part in its proceedings. This Assembly drew up *The Instrument of Government*, making Cromwell **Lord Protector** of the Commonwealth; but it was soon afterwards dissolved.

9. **OLIVER, PROTECTOR.** — Cromwell was now practically Sovereign of England. He was declared head of the army and the navy. A legal Parliament was called in his name. Freedom of religion was proclaimed. His intention seems to have been to rule the country in the old constitutional way, through the Parliament; but his first House of Commons quarrelled with him on the subject of supplies, and was dissolved in anger before a single Act was passed. Eighteen months elapsed before he called his second Parliament.

10. Cromwell's foreign policy made his name famous. The glory of England, which had grown dim during the two pre-

ceding reigns, now shone brighter than ever. The Barbary¹ pirates, long the pest of the Mediterranean, vanished before the English cruisers. Spain, humbled by land and sea, yielded up in 1655 the rich island of **Jamaica**. The Protestants of Languedoc² and the Alps lived in peace and safety long unknown to them. Dunkirk,³ a Flemish fortress taken from the Spaniards by the French, was transferred to England. Admiral Blake, by victories at Teneriffe⁴ (1657) and elsewhere, broke the power of Spain, and made the name of England famous on the seas.

11. In the flush of these successes, Cromwell ventured to call a second House of Commons. This House, in 1657, offered him the title of King; but he contented himself with naming his son as his successor in the Protectorate. He attempted at the same time to form a new House of Lords; but the ancient Peers of England refused to take their places in it, and he was compelled to fill it with men of inferior birth. When he required the Commons to acknowledge his newly-created Peers, he was met with a distinct refusal. Thereupon he dissolved his second Parliament, and during his remaining days he ruled alone.

12. These last days were dark and cloudy. One plot arose after another to mar his peace. He carried pistols, and wore a shirt of mail under his clothes. His strength **1658** began to fail; and he died of ague on the 3rd of September **A.D.** 1658,—the anniversary of Dunbar and Worcester.

13. **RICHARD, PROTECTOR.**—His son **Richard** succeeded to the office of Protector; but he found its duties so harassing that he resigned it after eight months (May, 1659). **1659** Retiring to his farms at Cheshunt, near Hertford, he **A.D.** lived the peaceful life of a country gentleman until 1712, when he died in the eighty-sixth year of his age.

QUESTIONS.—1. On the death of established? How long did the new Charles I. what kind of government was form last? In what was the govern-

¹ *Barbary*.—The general name for the north of Africa between Egypt and the Atlantic.

² *Languedoc*.—An old province in the south of France, having Toulouse as its capital.

³ *Dunkirk*.—On the French coast; 25 miles north-east of Calais, and 45 east of Dover.

⁴ *Teneriffe*.—The largest of the Canary Islands, in the Atlantic; 60 miles from the west coast of North Africa.

ment vested? Who was the Foreign Secretary? Who were in reality the rulers of the nation?

2. Who was the leader of the Irish Royalists? Who was appointed, by the Parliament, Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland? What was the chief operation of the war?

3. How had the Scots acted on the death of Charles I.? What was the issue of the expedition of Montrose? What did Charles II. then do?

4. How were the forces of Cromwell met by the Scots? Who was the leader of the Scottish army?

5. Where was the decisive battle fought? The date of the battle? What mistake of the Scots gave the victory to Cromwell? What cities immediately submitted to Cromwell?

6. When was Charles II. crowned in Scotland? What documents did he sign? What did the Scots suddenly do? Where did Cromwell overtake and defeat them? Where did Charles then go? Under whom was Scotland placed?

7. With whom did Cromwell then quarrel? Describe the expulsion of the Long Parliament. The date?

8. What Assembly succeeded the Long Parliament? By what nickname was it known? What title did it confer on Cromwell?

9. What plan of government does Cromwell seem to have formed? What thwarted his scheme? When was his second Parliament called?

10. What policy of Cromwell has made his name famous? Mention important successes of the English abroad. What French fortress was ceded to England? Name a signal victory of Blake.

11. What proposal was made by Cromwell's second House of Commons? What did he content himself with? What was the result of his attempt to restore the House of Lords? Why did he dissolve the Commons?

12. What troubles clouded Cromwell's closing days? When did he die?

13. Who succeeded to the Protectorate? How long was he Protector? How did he spend the rest of his days?

CHAPTER XVII.

THE RESTORATION OF MONARCHY.

1. A Year of Anarchy.
2. The Breda Declaration.
3. The Restoration.
4. Vengeance on the Regicides.
5. The Corporation Act.
6. The Act of Uniformity, the Conventicle, and the Five-Mile Act.

7. Charles's Shifts for Money.
8. The Dutch War.
9. The Plague in London.
10. The Great Fire.
11. Presbyterian Rising—Rullion Green.
12. Fall of Clarendon.

1. THE resignation of Protector Richard was followed by a **year of anarchy**. The Parliament had been restored by the army, but now quarrelled with it. The Royalists took advantage of these differences to revive their schemes. Monk, who was in Scotland, then marched into England. In **February 1660** he entered London at the head of 5,000 men; and **A.D.** great was the joy of the people when he declared for **a free Parliament**. The Presbyterian members, who had been expelled by Pride (1648), returned to their seats in the Long Parliament; and that famous body, after appointing a new Parliament to meet, finally dissolved itself.

2. The new Parliament, or rather Convention, composed chiefly of Cavaliers and Presbyterians, met on April 25. It was evident that the Parliament was leaning toward 1660 the exiled Sovereign; and when Monk announced, on A.D. May 1, that a messenger from Charles was waiting for admission, the news was received with joyful shouts. This messenger brought with him the Declaration from Breda,¹ offering a general amnesty, in the event of his being recalled. An invitation was at once despatched to Charles in Holland; and a fleet was sent to convey him to England. On May 8, he was proclaimed King at the gate of Westminster Hall.

3. CHARLES II.²—On May 25 Charles landed at Dover, and he made his public entry into London on his birth-day. No tumult marred the joy of the Restoration, as the May 29, 1660 great event was called. Edward Hyde, afterwards A.D. Earl of Clarendon, returned with the King from exile.

He was made Lord Chancellor, and soon became closely connected with the royal family by the marriage of his daughter, Anne Hyde, to James, Duke of York, afterwards King James II.

4. About thirty of the men who had been concerned in the execution of Charles I. were tried, and ten of these suffered death. The Marquis of Argyle, the leader of the Covenanters, was executed, although he had placed the crown on the King's head at Scone. The bodies of Cromwell, Ireton his son-in-law, and Bradshaw, were taken from their graves and hanged on gibbets. Monk was rewarded with the title of Duke of Albemarle.

5. It soon became evident that Charles and Clarendon were bent on allowing no form of worship but Episcopacy. The Presbyterians were greatly alarmed. The King 1661 had himself signed the Solemn League and Covenant; A.D. yet the Parliament, with the King's approval, ordered the Covenant to be burned by the common hangman. The Pensionary Parliament,³ which met in May, passed the Corpo-

¹ Breda.—A fortified town in Holland, near the Belgian frontier, and 28 miles north-east of Antwerp.

² Charles II.—Son of Charles I. Married Catherine of Portugal. Reigned 25 years.

(546)

³ Pensionary Parliament.—So called because many of its members accepted bribes both from Charles and from Louis XIV. of France. It lasted, with several long prorogations, till January 1679.

ration Act, which required all magistrates and officers of corporations to communicate in the Episcopal Church, to renounce the Covenant, and to take the oath of non-resistance.

6. An **Act of Uniformity** was passed in the following year, requiring that all ministers should be ordained by
1662 bishops, and should use the Book of Common Prayer.

A.D. More than a thousand ministers quitted their livings rather than submit. A similar policy in Scotland, directed by Archbishop Sharpe, expelled four hundred Presbyterian ministers, and led to field-meetings or conventicles being held. Two years later the **Conventicle Act**

1664 was passed, inflicting penalties on persons who attended such meetings. One year later came the **Five-Mile Act**, and then the Clarendon Code¹ was complete. The last-named Act prohibited nonconforming ministers from going within five miles of a corporate town, and from acting as schoolmasters.

7. Charles, always extravagant, lost no opportunity of filling his purse. With his wife, Catherine of Portugal, he received a dowry of half a million. Dunkirk, acquired by the great Oliver, he sold to the French King for half a million sterling (1662). He also plunged into a war with Holland, in order to have command of the supplies voted for carrying it on (1665).

8. This **Dutch War** opened well, but closed ignobly. During the first year a great naval victory was gained off the Suffolk coast, near Lowestoft,² by an English fleet
1665 under the Duke of York. In the following year (1666), a series of great sea-fights took place off the North

Foreland (June 1-4), in which the advantage remained with the Dutch; but they were completely defeated on July
 June, 25. In 1667, however, a Dutch fleet, under De Ruyter,
1667 destroyed Sheerness,³ burned the ships lying off Chat-
 A.D. ham, and sailed up the Thames as far as to Tilbury
 Fort.⁴ Peace was concluded at Breda about a week later.

¹ *The Clarendon Code.*—After the Earl of Clarendon, the Corporation, Uniformity, Conventicle, and Five-Mile Acts are called the Clarendon Code.

² *Lowestoft.*—Twenty miles south-east of Norwich. *Lowestoft Ness* is the most easterly land in England.

³ *Sheerness.*—A sea-port and naval arsenal on the Island of Sheppey in Kent; 11 miles north-east of Chatham, and 40 miles from London.

⁴ *Tilbury Fort.*—On the left bank of the Thames, opposite Gravesend, and 20 miles from London.

9. In the summer of 1665 London was visited by the **Plague**. The rich fled in terror to their country-houses. The poor perished in thousands. The silence of death **1665** reigned everywhere, broken only by the rumbling **A.D.** wheels of the dead-cart as it went its rounds. More than one hundred thousand persons perished.

10. In the following year the **Great Fire** of London broke out, on Sunday the 2nd of September. The origin of the fire is believed to have been accidental. The east- **1666** ern part of the city, which was full of old wooden **A.D.** houses, continued to burn for a whole week. Eighty-nine churches and more than thirteen thousand houses lay in ashes. This great conflagration purified the city from the dregs of the plague, still lurking in narrow lanes and filthy rooms.

11. The efforts of the King and his ministers to establish Episcopacy in Scotland were violently opposed by the Presbyterians. A rising took place among the peasantry of Kirkcudbright,¹ and about a thousand men marched to Edinburgh; but they were defeated by General Dalziel at **Nov.** **Bullion Green**,² near the Pentland Hills. Many **1666** executions followed; and torture was frequently resorted **A.D.** to, one of the most terrible instruments being the infamous "boot." Open-air **conventicles**, to which the worshippers went, not with their Bibles only, but with sword and pistol also, were held in various parts of the country by determined men.

12. Lord Chancellor **Clarendon** lost the friendship of the King, whose mind was poisoned against him by worthless favourites. His enemies charged him at the bar of **1667** the Lords with high treason; but, on a hint from his **A.D.** son-in-law, the Duke of York, he fled to France, where he spent the remainder of his days.

QUESTIONS.—1. By what was the resignation of Protector Richard followed? With what did Parliament quarrel? Who took advantage of these differences? When did Monk enter London? What gave general joy? What steps did Parliament take?

2. Of whom was the new Parliament chiefly composed? What was the manifest leaning of Parliament? What announcement did Monk make on May 1? What did Charles offer? What was at once sent to him? When was he proclaimed King?

¹ *Kirkcudbright*.—Pron. *Kirkod'bray*; a county in the south of Scotland.

² *Bullion Green*.—About 5 miles south-west of Edinburgh.

3. When did Charles enter London? How was he received? What is the event called? Who was made Lord Chancellor?

4. How many men suffered death for the execution of Charles I.? What was the fate of the Marquis of Argyle? How were the bodies of Cromwell and others treated? With what title was General Monk rewarded?

5. On what were Charles and Clarendon bent? How was contempt shown for the Covenant? What is the Parliament called which met in May? What famous Act did it pass?

6. What Act was passed in the following year? What did it require? How many Nonconformists left their livings in consequence? What Act was passed in order to prevent meetings of Nonconformists? In what year? What was the last Act of the Clarendon Code?

7. Whom did Charles marry? What

dowry did he receive? What fortress was sold by him to the French? Into what war did he plunge? For what purpose?

8. What victory was gained by the Duke of York? What was the exploit of the Dutch fleet in 1667? When was peace concluded?

9. What terrible calamity occurred in 1665? What was the estimated mortality?

10. What event distinguished the following year? How long did it last? What was the extent of the ruin? What beneficial results followed?

11. What was the policy of Charles towards Scotland? What effect had this on the Presbyterians? When did the rising of the Kirkcudbright peasantry occur? What battle was fought? What followed?

12. How did Lord Clarendon lose the favour of the King? Of what was he accused? Whither did he flee?

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE STRUGGLE RENEWED.

1. The Pensionary Monarch.
2. The Cabal Ministry.
3. The Dutch War.
4. Charles Closes the Exchequer.
5. The Test Act.
6. Fall of the Cabal.

7. The "Popish Plot."
8. The Council of Thirty.
9. The Habeas Corpus Act.
10. Whig and Tory.
11. Parliament Dissolved—Charles an Absolute Monarch.

1. To preserve the balance of power, England, Sweden, and Holland formed, in 1668, a **Triple Alliance** against Louis XIV. of France. While Charles openly professed hostility to Louis, he was secretly in the pay of that monarch, receiving a pension of £200,000 a year! A **secret treaty** between the monarchs was signed at **Dover**, of which the principal terms were, that Charles should declare himself a Roman Catholic; fight for Louis against the Dutch; and support his claims on Spain. Louis on his part promised money, and an army to quell the English if they dared to rebel.

2. Five men, the initials of whose names by a curious coin-

cidence form the word **Cabal**,¹ then became the chief advisers of the King. They were Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley,² and Lauderdale.

3. The Dutch War having been renewed in 1672, an English fleet put to sea. The Duke of York gained a hard-won victory over De Ruyter in Southwold Bay (Suffolk). Louis crossed the Rhine and ravaged the United Provinces; but the Dutch, acting under the orders of William of Orange, broke down their dikes: the water rushed over the land, and the French soldiers had to flee for their lives. England made peace with Holland in 1674.

4. One of the most disgraceful acts of Charles was the **closing of the Exchequer** or Treasury. About £1,300,000 had been advanced to the King by London merchants, at a high rate of interest. One day they received a message from the King, that their money was not to be repaid! A general panic ensued, and trade was for a time paralyzed.

5. The feeling of the Parliament against the Roman Catholics was shown in the **Test Act**, by which all persons who held public appointments were compelled to receive the **1673** Communion in the Church of England, and to take an **A.D.** oath against transubstantiation. The Duke of York, who was a professed Roman Catholic, was superseded in the command of the fleet by Prince Rupert.

6. Early in 1674 the Cabal Ministry was driven from office; and Viscount Latimer, afterwards Earl of Danby, became Prime Minister. Shaftesbury became leader of **1674** the Opposition, and began to scheme for the exclusion **A.D.** of the Duke of York from the succession, and in favour of the Duke of Monmouth.³

7. In 1678, Titus Oates, a clergyman disgraced for vicious habits, came forward with the story of a "**Popish Plot**" to assassinate the King and to massacre all Protestants. Shaftes-

1677.—William, Prince of Orange, nephew of Charles II. of England, married his cousin Mary, daughter of James, Duke of York.

¹ *Cabal*.—It was long believed that the word "*cabal*" was invented from this circumstance; but it was in use before this time. It is a word of Hebrew origin, and means a secret conclave.

² *Ashley*.—Anthony Ashley Cooper, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury.

³ *Duke of Monmouth*.—An illegitimate son of Charles.

bury and his friends eagerly professed their belief in the plot.

All England went mad with fear. It was an English
1678 Reign of Terror, and many Roman Catholics were un-
 A.D. justly put to death. Titus Oates was rewarded with a
 pension of £1,200 a year, and rooms were assigned to
 him in Whitehall. Encouraged by his success, new perjurers
 revealed new plots, and many executions followed.

8. An impeachment of Danby in 1675 had broken down; but
 his fall was now hastened by the discovery of a letter in which
 he craved money from the French King. He was sent to the
 Tower, where he remained for five years. Sir William
1679 Temple¹ then became the confidant of Charles. His
 A.D. favourite scheme was the appointment of a Council of
Thirty, to stand between the King and the Parli-
 ament. Of this Council Shaftesbury was President.

9. The Parliament of 1679 lasted only four months; but its
 determined temper was shown in the passing of the **Habeas**
Corpus² Act, one of the great bulwarks of English
 May 26, freedom. *It secures the liberty of the subject.* Formerly
1679 Sovereigns had, without remorse, left their enemies to
 A.D. pine and waste for long years in damp, unwholesome
 prisons. But, by the Habeas Corpus Act, no Sovereign dare
 keep even the meanest subject in prison beyond a certain time,
 without bringing him to a fair trial; and no prisoner once dis-
 charged can be recommitted for the same offence.

10. While the Duke of York was in Scotland, there was a
 violent agitation for the assembling of Parliament. It was led
 by Shaftesbury, who a short time previously (1679) had been re-
 moved from the Council. On his advice, numerous "petitions"

1678.—Peace was concluded at Nimeguen (Holland) between France and
 Holland, August; and between France and Spain, September.

1679.—Archbishop Sharpe was murdered on Magus Moor (Fife) by a band
 of Presbyterians, May. The Covenanters defeated Graham of Claverhouse at
 Drumclog (Lanarkshire), June 1. They were defeated by the Duke of Mon-
 mouth at Bothwell Bridge, June 22.

¹ Temple.—He was a great diplo-
 matist. He was born 1628; died 1699.

² Habeas Corpus.—A writ addressed
 to the custodian of a prisoner, requiring
 him to produce him for trial at a cer-
 tain time. It is so called from the

opening Latin words of the writ—
*Habeas Corpus, ad faciendum, sub-
 jiciendum, et recipiendum*, &c.: "Thou
 art to produce the body, to do, sub-
 mit, and receive what the court shall
 order," &c.

were sent to the King by the Country party, praying for the calling of Parliament. The Court party sent in counter-addresses, expressing "abhorrence" of this interference with the royal prerogative. The two parties were therefore known as the Petitioners and the Abhorers;—names which soon gave place to the more familiar ones, **Whig and Tory**.¹ The Parliament did not meet till October 1680. A Bill to 1680 exclude the Duke of York from the succession, on the A.D. ground that he was a Roman Catholic, passed the Commons; but it was thrown out in the Lords by a majority of thirty, and Charles and his brother once more felt secure.

11. The Parliament was dissolved in January 1681. The King called a new Parliament at Oxford on March 21. The chief members of the Country party attended 1681 armed, and accompanied by their followers. Charles A.D. dissolved the Parliament in a week, and ruled as an absolute monarch till the end of his reign.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the object of the Triple Alliance? Who formed it? What were the principal terms of the secret treaty of Dover?

2. Give the names of the five ministers who composed the Cabal.

3. In what year was the Dutch War renewed? Relate what you know of this war. When was peace made?

4. What act of Charles paralyzed trade? Explain what was done.

5. What state of feeling was indicated by the passing of the Test Act? Whom did this law exclude from office?

6. When was the Cabal driven from office? Who became Premier? Who led the Opposition?

7. Give an account of the "Popish Plot." How was Oates rewarded? What state of public feeling did Oates's story produce?

8. How was Danby's fall hastened? How long did he remain in the Tower? Who then became the confidant of Charles? What was his favourite scheme?

9. How long did the Parliament of 1679 last? In connection with what measure was its determined temper shown? What is the character of that measure?

10. What agitation arose while the Duke was in Scotland? What names did the two parties receive? What names soon took their place? When did Parliament meet? What then took place?

11. When was the Parliament dissolved? When did a new one meet? Where? What was remarkable about this Parliament? How long did it sit? How did Charles then rule?

1681.—The Duke of York, Lauderdale's successor in Scotland, encouraged the severe measures against the Covenanters.

¹ *Whig and Tory*.—The name "*Whig*"—meaning "whey" or sour milk—was originally applied in scorn to the Scottish Covenanters by English Cavaliers. Another explanation derives the name from "*Whig, whig*,"

"Get on, get on"—the call used to their horses by peasants in the west of Scotland. "*Tory*"—meaning "Give me"—was originally the name given to Irish freebooters, from the salutation with which they accosted travellers.

CHAPTER XIX.

ABSOLUTE MONARCHY RESTORED.

1. A Conspiracy to Change the Succession.
2. The Rye-House Plot.
3. The Test Act Dispensed with.
4. The New King's Promises.
5. Argyll's Invasion.
6. Monmouth's Invasion.
7. Battle of Sedgemoor.
8. Kirke and Jeffreys.
9. James's Grand Design.
10. The King and the Universities.

1. THE friends of liberty saw that the only way in which the Constitution could be restored was by changing the succession at Charles's death. With this view a **conspiracy** was formed to secure the recognition of Monmouth as the legitimate son of Charles. William, Lord

2. A set of middle-class men formed, without the knowledge of Monmouth or of Russell, a design to murder the King at **the Rye House**, on his return from Newmarket¹ races. There was thus a plot within a plot. All was soon discovered, and the two plots were treated as one. Monmouth fled to the Continent. Russell and Sidney died on the scaffold.

3. Charles then put in operation the penal statutes against all who opposed his measures. Wealthy merchants were heavily fined; others were put in the pillory. One of Charles's latest acts was to **dispense with the Test Act**, in order to restore the Duke of York to his office of Lord High Admiral.

1685 He died after an illness of less than a week, on 14th
A.D. February 1685. He had previously declared himself a
Roman Catholic.

4. **JAMES II.**¹—The **Duke of York**, who succeeded his brother as King James II., declared his resolution to govern according to the laws, and to uphold the Church of England. He at once called a Parliament—the first that had met for four years. The Commons voted him a revenue of £1,900,000; but already he was in the pay of Louis.

1685.—Louis XIV. of France revoked the Edict of Nantes (granted in 1598), and thousands of Protestants were banished. They benefited other countries, especially England, Switzerland, and Prussia, by their industry.

¹ *Newmarket*. — In Cambridgeshire; 18 miles north-east of Cambridge. Hyde, daughter of the Earl of Clarendon: (2) *Mary d'Este of Modena*.

² Son of Charles I. Married (1) Anne Reigned 3 years.

5. The English refugees at Amsterdam at once resolved that the Earl of Argyle¹ should descend on Scotland, and that Monmouth should about the same time attempt the invasion of England. In May, **Argyle** landed on Cantire, summoned the Campbells to arms, and moved towards Glasgow. In Dumbartonshire his little army was scattered: he was made prisoner, and was beheaded at Edinburgh.

6. Towards the end of June, **Monmouth** landed at Lyme, in Dorsetshire. The lower orders flocked in hundreds to join him; but the nobles and gentlemen held aloof. At Taunton² he assumed the title of King. Bent on the conquest of **Bristol**, then the second city in the kingdom, he marched to the walls of Bath.³ Losing heart there, he fell back to Bridgewater.⁴



7. At **Sedgemoor**,⁵ in the neighbourhood, lay a Royalist army of 3,000 men. Monmouth, hoping to surprise the royal troops, advanced from Bridgewater in the dead of night. As he crossed the moor he came to a deep, black ditch, of which his guides had not told him. Delay and confusion followed, and a pistol went off by accident. Instantly the royal drums beat to arms, and a heavy fire of musketry opened on the rebels. Monmouth fled. His foot soldiers, after fighting long and bravely, were scattered by the royal

July 6,
1685
A.D.

artillery. No battle has been fought on English ground since

¹ *Argyle*.—Son of the Marquis of Argyle who was executed in 1661.

² *Taunton*.—On the Tone in Somersetshire; 22 miles north-west of Lyme.

³ *Bath*.—Thirty-five miles north-east of Bridgewater.

⁴ *Bridgewater*.—Twelve miles north-east of Taunton.

⁵ *Sedgemoor*.—It lies east of Bridgewater, between that town and King's Weston.

the day of Sedgemoor. Two days later, Monmouth was found near the New Forest,¹ lurking in a ditch, with his pockets half full of raw pease. He was at once sent to London, and was executed on Tower Hill.²

8. The task of punishing the unhappy rebels was intrusted to Colonel Percy Kirke, who hanged them by scores on the sign-post of the White Hart Inn at Taunton. Then Chief-Justice Jeffreys opened at Winchester the circuit known as the **Bloody Assize**. More than three hundred perished in the judicial massacre; and crowds who escaped death were doomed to suffer imprisonment or exile.

9. James then began to unfold his grand design,—namely, the complete **restoration of Roman Catholicism** in Great Britain. He released all Roman Catholics from penalties, by claiming the right to dispense with the Test Act. He placed the whole Church under the control of a Court of Ecclesiastical Commission. He formed a standing army at Hounslow Heath, officered chiefly by Roman Catholics, for the purpose of coercing the nation into submission. Father Edward Petre, a Jesuit, became the confidential adviser of the King. Scotland was placed under Drummond, Earl of Perth. The Earl of Tyrconnel was made Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland.

10. James then began to meddle with the **Universities**. The Vice-Chancellor of Cambridge lost his office, because he opposed the granting of a degree to a Benedictine monk. At Oxford a Roman Catholic Bishop was placed over Magdalene³ College, and twelve Fellows of the same persuasion were appointed in one day.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the only way by which the Constitution could be restored? What was done with this view? Who took the lead in the plot?

2. What secondary plot was formed? What followed?

3. How did Charles then punish his opponents? What was one of his latest acts? When did Charles die?

4. What promises were made by James

II? What yearly revenue was voted him by the Commons?

5. What two enterprises were resolved on by the refugees in Holland? Where did Argyle land? Where was his army scattered? What was his fate?

6. When and where did Monmouth land? What town was he bent on taking? Why did he fall back? To what place?

¹ *New Forest*.—In the south-west of Hampshire.

² *Tower Hill*.—In the east of London.

³ *Magdalene*.—Pronounced *Maudlin*.

7. What was Monmouth's plan of attack at Sedgemoor? What alarmed the Royalists? Where was Monmouth captured? What was his fate?

8. To whom was the punishment of the rebels intrusted? What name has been given to the assize opened at Winchester? Who was the judge?

9. What was the grand design of James? By what means did he release

all Roman Catholics from penalties? Under whose control was the Church placed? What measure was taken to coerce the nation into submission? Who was the King's adviser? Under whom was Scotland placed? What appointment was given to Tyrconnel?

10. What were the proceedings of James against the University of Cambridge? How did he treat Oxford?

CHAPTER XX.

THE REVOLUTION.

1. Declarations of Indulgence.
2. Trial of the Seven Bishops.
3. Invitation to the Prince of Orange.
4. William Lands at Torbay.

5. Flight of James.
6. The Convention—The Declaration of Right.
7. The Revolution Completed.

1. THE crisis was now fast approaching. The King's advisers adopted the policy of conciliating the Nonconformists in order to combine their influence with that of the Roman Catholics against the Established Church. With this view two **Declarations of Indulgence** were issued, giving liberty of conscience to all who were not members of the Church of England,—the second in April 1688. A week later there followed an Order in Council, commanding all ministers to read this Declaration from their pulpits.

Apr. 27,
1688
A.D.

2. This Order the London clergy disobeyed; and the Primate, Sancroft, with six Bishops, drew up a **Petition** against the Declaration, and were committed to the Tower. The **trial of the Seven Bishops** took place before the Court of King's Bench. They were charged with having published a false, malicious, and seditious libel. The four Judges were divided in their opinion, two against two. The jury was locked up all night, and at ten next morning the Court met to hear the **verdict**. A deep silence prevailed; but when the words "Not guilty" left the foreman's lips, cheer after cheer echoed through the Court.

June 29.

3. On the very day of the acquittal of the Bishops, a letter, signed by some of the leading nobles and clergy of England, was sent to **William, Prince of Orange-Nassau**, the nephew and son-in-law of James, entreating him to come with an army

and aid them in defending their freedom and their faith. William, accepting the call, began to make great preparations for the expedition. The news opened the eyes of James to the dangers which surrounded him. In a few hours he yielded almost all the points for which he had been contending during three years. But all was to no purpose. The hearts of the people were estranged from him.

4. On the 5th November the Prince of Orange landed at **Torbay** in Devonshire. In four days he reached Exeter, Nov. 5, where he was received with joy as the champion of the 1688 Protestant faith. The King hastened to Salisbury,¹

A.D. resolved to stake his kingdom on the issue of a great battle. But the policy of William was to avoid bloodshed. A few trifling skirmishes took place, but nothing more. Then James's friends began to forsake him. In rapid succession, Lord Churchill, afterwards the great Duke of Marlborough; Prince George of Denmark, married to the King's daughter Anne;² and even Anne herself, abandoned the falling King.

5. James then resolved on **flight**. He sent his wife and infant son to France; and, when he knew of their Dec. 23. safety, he made his way to Sheerness, where a small vessel waited for him. His first attempt at flight failed, but a second succeeded; and the news soon came that James had arrived safely at St. Germain,³ and had been warmly welcomed by Louis.

6. Meanwhile William passed from Windsor to London, where he called an assembly, known as the **Convention**, Jan. 22, 1689. The throne was declared vacant, and great debates ensued on the settlement of affairs. At last a

A.D. document, called **The Declaration of Right**,⁴ was drawn up and passed. It determined all the points in dispute between the Stewart Kings and the Parliament. William and Mary were declared King and Queen of England, the chief administration resting with him.

7. The great **English Revolution** was now complete. Thus

¹ *Salisbury*.—The county town of Wiltshire; midway between London and Exeter; about 90 miles from each.

² *Anne*.—Queen from 1702 till 1714.

³ *St. Germain*.—Near Paris. James

spent the remaining twelve years of his life there, a pensioner on the bounty of Louis; and there he died in 1701.

⁴ *Declaration of Right*.—Converted into the "Bill of Rights" in October.

terminated the grand struggle between Sovereign and Parliament; not in the erection of a democracy, but in the adjustment and firm establishment of the Three great Estates of the Realm,—the King, the Lords, and the Commons; on whose due balance and mutual check the strength of the Constitution mainly depends.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the policy of the King's advisers? What were issued with this view? What Order in Council followed?

2. How was this Order received by the London clergy? Who drew up a Petition against it? Before what court did the trial of the Seven Bishops take place? What was the opinion of the Judges? What was the verdict? How was it received by the populace?

3. What important document was transmitted on the day of the acquittal of the Seven Bishops? How was this petition received? How did James act? What were the feelings of the nation?

4. Where did the Prince of Orange land? Whither did the King hasten, and with what purpose? What was William's policy? How did Lord Churchill act? Who followed his example?

5. Whom did James send to France? How many attempts at flight did he make? How was he received by the French monarch?

6. Where did William, meanwhile, go? What assembly did he call? What were the proceedings of this assembly? What were the terms of the Declaration of Right?

7. How did the great Revolution terminate?

CHAPTER XXI.

SOCIAL CONDITION—THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

1. Population.
2. The Chief Towns.
3. London.
4. The Coffee-houses.
5. Country Life.

6. The Country Clergy—The Yeomen.
7. The Labouring Class.
8. Sanitary Affairs.
9. Roads—Travelling—Inns.
10. Learning.

1. **THE population** of England at the close of the seventeenth century was about five million and a half. The increase of people in the northern counties far exceeded that in the south of the island. The cause of this may be found in the rapid improvement of these counties which followed the union of the crowns in 1603. Previously, the north had been constantly ravaged by the Border robbers, called Moss-troopers, from whom neither house nor herd was safe. Gradually these freebooters were hunted down, or were led to adopt honest ways of living. The paths of the country, long imperfectly known, were opened; life and property became secure. Coal-

beds were discovered. Manufacturing towns began to rise, and were soon filled with a thriving population.

2. **Towns.**—After the capital, Bristol was the greatest English sea-port, and Norwich the chief manufacturing town, under the Stewarts. The modern seats of manufacture were then small and badly-built market towns. Manchester contained only 6,000 inhabitants, and could boast of neither a printing-press nor a hackney-coach. Leeds had a population of about 7,000 persons. There were not more than 200 seamen belonging to the port of Liverpool.

3. **London**, when Charles II. died, had a population of half a million. Only one old bridge spanned the Thames. The merchant dwelt over his shop in the City. No numbers marked the houses; but, instead of these, the streets were lined with the signs of shops,—here the Saracen's Head, there the Golden Key. The streets, not lighted until the last year of Charles II., and then only during winter, were infested with robbers, and teemed with other dangers.

4. The **Coffee-houses**, first set up in Cromwell's time, were the great lounges, where the news and the scandal of the day were discussed. There were coffee-houses for every class. Jews flocked to one; Roman Catholics filled another; Puritans met their brethren in a third; and so with men of every rank and profession,—with literary men and actors, shop-keepers and men of fashion.

5. The **Country gentlemen**, now a polished and an important class, were, at the time of the Revolution, rough and poorly educated. Their lands yielded rents equal to about one-fourth of those now paid. Seldom leaving their native county, even for London, they spent their days in field-sports or in attending the neighbouring markets, and their evenings in feasting and drinking.

6. The country **Clergy** stood low in the social scale. In most mansions there was a chaplain, who, receiving his board and £10 a year, was no better than an upper servant. The yeomen or small **Farmers**, whose incomes averaged £60 or £70 a year, were numerous and influential. Their chief characteristic was a strong preference for Puritanism. From this class chiefly were drawn the Ironsides of Cromwell.

7. Of the **Labouring class** we know little. Four-fifths of its members were employed in agriculture. The highest wages, averaging five shillings a week without food, were paid in Devon, Suffolk, and Essex. Those engaged in manufactures earned about six shillings a week. Children were employed in factories to an extraordinary extent: even by the benevolent, they were thought fit for work at six years of age! The chief food of the poor was rye, barley, and oats. The poor-rate was the heaviest tax; for the paupers amounted to no less than one-fifth of the community.

8. **Sanitary affairs** were in a deplorable state. Even in the streets of the capital open sewers and heaps of filth poisoned the air. The deaths in London in 1685 were more than one in twenty-three: the yearly average now is about one in forty. The prisons were constantly full, and proved fruitful nurseries of disease and crime.

9. The **roads** were so bad that **travelling** was very difficult. Instead of making circuits in order to avoid steep places, the roads went right up and down the hills. The stage-waggon and the pack-horses carried goods; the former taking passengers also. In 1669 the "Flying Coach" left Oxford at six in the morning, and reached London at seven the same evening—fifty miles in thirteen hours!—a feat then considered wonderful and dangerous. From Chester, York, or Exeter, a winter journey to London took six days. The **inns** were good and comfortable; but highwaymen, well armed, and mounted on fine horses, infested all the great roads.

10. **Learning**.—There were few printing-presses in the country, except in London and at the Universities. Books were therefore scarce and dear, and very few were found even in the best country houses. In London the booksellers' shops were thronged with readers. Female education was at a very low point; and the most accomplished ladies spelled very badly. At the Universities Greek was little studied; but Latin, in which Governments still conducted their correspondence, was for this reason spoken and written with ease. French, however, was rapidly becoming the language of diplomacy.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the population of England at the close of the seventeenth century? Why did it increase most in the north?

2. Which was the second sea-port of the kingdom? Which was the chief manufacturing town? Mention towns, now large, which were then small.

3. What was the population of London at the death of Charles II.? How many bridges were there? When were the streets of London first lighted?

4. When were coffee-houses set up? Of what use were they? Mention different classes of these houses?

5. What do you know of the country gentry?

6. What was the condition of the country clergy? What was the average income of the yeomen or small farmers?

7. What was the condition of the labouring class? What was the average pay of an agricultural labourer? What were the weekly earnings of those engaged in manufactures?

8. Compare the average mortality in London during the year 1685 with that of the present time.

9. What was the condition of the roads? In how many hours was the journey from Oxford to London accomplished by the "Flying Coach" in 1689? What was the character of the inns?

10. Where were the chief printing-presses of the country? What was the state of learning?

LIMITED MONARCHY.

HOUSE OF STEWART—CONTINUED.

	A.D.
William III. and Mary II. (nephew and daughter of James II.)...	1689-1694
William III.....	1694
Anne (daughter of James II.).....	1702

HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

George I. (great-grandson of James I.).....	1714
George II. (son).....	1727
George III. (grandson).....	1760
George IV. (son).....	1820
William IV. (brother).....	1830
Victoria (niece).....	1837

CHAPTER I.

CONSTITUTIONAL GOVERNMENT.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Coronation of William and Mary. | 8. The Massacre of Glencoe. |
| 2. Mutiny and Toleration Acts. | 9. Who were to Blame. |
| 3. The Bill of Rights. | 10. William's Foreign Policy. |
| 4. Battle of Killiecrankie. | 11. The National Debt. |
| 5. The Siege of Londonderry. | 12. The Bank of England—Triennial Parliaments. |
| 6. Battle of the Boyne. | 13. The Darien Company. |
| 7. The Pacification of Limerick. | |

1. *WILLIAM III.*¹ and *MARY II.*²—On February 13, 1689, the Declaration of Right was formally accepted by William and Mary, who were thereupon proclaimed King and **1689** Queen. The Convention was then declared to be a A.D. Parliament. A new coronation oath and new oaths of allegiance and supremacy were prepared. The coronation took place on April 11, in Westminster Abbey, where the chief ministers of James stood around the double throne.

2. In consequence of the mutiny of a Scottish regiment, the **Mutiny Act** was passed, putting soldiers under martial law.

¹ *William III.*—Son of William of Nassau, Prince of Orange, and of Mary Stewart, daughter of Charles I. Married Mary Stewart. Reigned 13 years.

² *Mary II.*—Daughter of James II. and of Anne Hyde. Married William of Orange, as in preceding note. Reigned 5 years.

As this Act must be renewed annually, there is here an indirect provision for Parliament being called together every year. In May the **Toleration Act** was passed, abolishing penalties for absence from the Established Church, and for attending conventicles, but requiring all assemblies for religious worship to be held with open doors.

3. Towards the end of the year the Declaration of Right was confirmed and extended in the **Bill of Rights**. This Act gave Parliament absolute power over the army and the navy, over the courts of law and the succession to the crown, and thus made it supreme in the State. In the new Parliament of 1690 the Tories had a decided majority.

4. In Scotland, the Highland clans took up arms for James, under Graham of Claverhouse, now Viscount Dundee; and the Duke of Gordon held out for him in the Castle of Edinburgh. But the insurrection was short-lived. Edinburgh Castle surrendered in a few months. Dundee, meeting General **July 27,** Mackay in battle at the **Pass of Killiecrankie**, in **1689** Perthshire, was struck down by a bullet just as his clansmen were sweeping all before them. When their leader had fallen, the Highland army soon dispersed.

5. In Ireland James himself made his last vain struggle for the crown. On March 24 he landed at Kinsale,¹ and entered Dublin in triumph. His first great operation was the Siege of **Londonderry**.² The citizens, greatly encouraged by the Rev. George Walker, endured the worst miseries of famine **July 28,** for more than three months; but at last three ships **1689** from England broke the boom of fir-wood laid across the River Foyle, and carried food to the starving garrison. The Irish army at once retreated.

6. Marshal Schomberg arrived with 16,000 troops; and William, landing at Carrickfergus, found himself at the head of 40,000 men. The last day of June, 1690, brought William to the northern bank of the Boyne, a few miles above Drogheda,⁴ with 36,000 troops. The battle began next morning by the army

¹ Kinsale.—15 miles south of Cork.

² Londonderry.—In the north of Ireland, on the Foyle; 144 miles north-west of Dublin.

³ Carrickfergus.—On Belfast Lough; 9 miles north-east of Belfast.

⁴ Drogheda.—Thirty-one miles north of Dublin.

of William commencing to ford the stream at three different points, under a heavy cannonade. The Dutch guards, emerg-



ing from the river, July 1, 1690 A.D. formed under the enemy's fire. Then they dashed on the Irish intrenchments, and swept them clean. Schomberg was slain; but the victory of William was decided. James fled through the Pass of Duleek to Dublin: thence he escaped to France.

7. The war was prolonged for a year. Then was signed 1691 the Pacification of Limerick, which made William unquestioned King of Ireland.

About 1,200 Irishmen crossed to France, and formed the "Irish Brigade" in the army of Louis. Thenceforth William held the crown securely.

8. As the Highlanders were still restless, a Royal Order decreed that all chieftains of clans should take an oath of allegiance to William before the last day of the year 1691. One delayed,—**Macdonald of Glencoe**;¹ but repenting of his obstinacy in the last week of December, he hastened first to Fort William,² and then to Inverary.³ A toilsome journey threw him a day or two late; but he was permitted to take the oath, and went home well pleased, and, as he thought, safe. He was mistaken, however. In a few weeks a troop of soldiers entered Glencoe; and though they were kindly entertained, they suddenly arose and massacred their hosts. In all, one

¹ *Glencoe*.—In the north-east of Argyleshire, south of Loch Leven.

² *Fort William*.—At the foot of Ben Nevis; 15 miles north of Glencoe.

³ *Inverary*.—The county town of Argyleshire; 85 miles south of Glencoe, and 40 north-west of Glasgow.

hundred and twenty perished; but two of the chieftain's sons and one hundred and fifty others escaped.

9. The blame of this foul deed rests chiefly with the Earl of Breadalbane and Sir John Dalrymple, the **Master of Stair**, then Secretary of State for Scotland. It was Stair who obtained from William the order, signed both at the beginning and at the end, "to extirpate that set of thieves." The only excuse made for William is that he signed the order without knowing the particulars; but the perpetrators were allowed to go unpunished after a parliamentary inquiry had brought all the circumstances to light.

10. To humble Louis XIV. of France was the great object of William's foreign policy. Louis made the dethronement of James a cause of war, which lasted for five A.D. years (1692-97). The two great events of the war were, the battle off **La Hogue**,¹ in which the French fleet was destroyed by those of England and Holland (1692); and the siege of **Namur**,² which ended in the capitulation of the French (1695). The Treaty of **Ryswick**³ in 1697 brought the war to a close. Louis gave up most of his conquests, and acknowledged William as King of Great Britain and Ireland.

11. Out of these expensive wars sprang the **National Debt**. The Parliament furnished William with large supplies of money for his wars with Louis, on condition that he should give up to the Commons the chief share in the domestic government. The influence thus acquired by the Commons has never since been lost.

12. One of the schemes devised to meet the extraordinary expense of these foreign wars led to the establishment of the **Bank of England**. A body of merchants agreed to lend the Government £1,200,000 at 8 per cent., in return for certain trading privileges. The Charter was granted A.D. 27th July 1694. In the same year was passed the Bill for **Triennial Parliaments**, which made the House of Commons more directly dependent on the Country, and less

¹ *La Hogue*.—A cape on the north-west of France. It is 80 miles south of the Isle of Wight.

² *Namur*.—A strong fortress in Bel-

gium; 67 miles south-east of Brussels.

³ *Ryswick*.—A village of Holland; 2 miles south-east of the Hague.

under the influence of the Crown. About the same time the freedom of the Press was established. In the last week of 1694 Queen Mary died of smallpox, and thenceforth William ruled alone.

13. **WILLIAM III.**—A Scottish Company, empowered to trade to the West Indies and Africa, was sanctioned by the Scottish Parliament in 1695. The Isthmus of Darien was selected as a central position, and a colony was founded there in 1698. By the opposition of the East India Company and of certain Dutch merchants, the colony was ruined, and all the money lost. The settlers sank into want. Disease carried them off by scores, and very few of them ever saw Scotland again. The settlements were surrendered to the Spaniards in 1700.

1695
A.D.1698
A.D.

QUESTIONS.—1. When were William and Mary proclaimed? What document did they previously accept?

2. What was the origin of the Mutiny Act? How does it affect the meeting of Parliament? What was the Toleration Act?

3. What Act extended the Declaration of Right? What power does it give to Parliament? Which party had a majority in the new Parliament?

4. By whom was James supported in Scotland? What nobleman held out against William in the Castle of Edinburgh? What was the result of the insurrection? Where did the death of Claverhouse occur? What then became of his army?

5. How did the Irish revolt commence? What was the first great operation of the Jacobite army? How was the siege raised?

6. Where did William encounter James's army? Who was slain? Who gained the victory? Whither did James flee?

7. What treaty made William un-

questioned King of Ireland? Where did 1,200 Irishmen go?

8. What order was issued to the Highland chiefs? Who delayed? What made him late? Why did he go home well pleased? What occurred in Glencoe a few weeks later? How many perished?

9. With whom does the blame of this deed chiefly rest? What excuse is made for William? Why is it a weak one?

10. What was the great object of William's foreign policy? What were the chief events of the war? How and when was it brought to a close?

11. How did the National Debt arise? How did the Commons during this reign acquire increased influence?

12. How did the Bank of England originate? When was the Bill for Triennial Parliaments passed? When did Mary die?

13. When did the Darien Company originate? When was the colony founded? How was the scheme ruined? What became of the settlers? And of the settlements?

1697.—The Czar Peter of Russia spent some months at Deptford visiting the dock-yards and studying ship-building.

CHAPTER II.

THE GRAND ALLIANCE—THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Origin of the Cabinet. | 7. Influence of the Marlboroughs. |
| 2. The Spanish Crown. | 8. War Declared. |
| 3. The Will of Charles II. | 9. Battle of Blenheim. |
| 4. The War of the Spanish Succession. | 10. Capture of Gibraltar. |
| 5. The Act of Settlement. | 11. Closing Campaigns. |
| 6. The Grand Alliance. | 12. Peace of Utrecht. |

1. WILLIAM's second Parliament had assembled in 1695.

The Whigs having regained the supremacy, Somers was made Lord Chancellor, and Charles Montagu (after-
1698 wards Earl of Halifax) First Lord of the Treasury.
 A.D.

This was the first regular English Ministry; for it was at this time that it became customary to choose the ministers in a body, called the Ministry, or **the Cabinet**,¹ from that party which had the majority in the House of Commons.

2. The position of **the Spanish Crown** at this time caused anxiety in Europe, as the King, Charles II., was childless, and was believed to be dying. Louis of France and the Emperor Leopold each claimed it for his son. William, who wished to prevent a union of France and Spain, favoured the claim of Ferdinand, Prince of Bavaria; but in 1699 the prince died. William then agreed to a partition of the Spanish dominions between the Dauphin and the Emperor's son, Charles, the latter receiving the crown.

3. Charles of Spain was indignant when he heard how his dominions were being disposed of, and made a will be-
1700 queathing his crown and all his possessions to Philip
 A.D. of Anjou, the second son of the Dauphin. Charles II. died in October, and the Duke of Anjou became Philip V. of Spain.

4. The Emperor Leopold prepared to vindicate the claims of his son. He took up arms against the French in Italy,
1701 and **the War of the Spanish Succession** began. The
 A.D. Dutch also entered into the struggle, and claimed the aid of England. But the aspect of affairs in England

¹ *The Cabinet.*—The Earl of Sunderland is credited with the invention of place onward the name of the Premier for the time being is mentioned at the head of each right-hand page.

had changed. In the end of 1700, the Tories, under the Earl of Rochester, came into power, and in the new Parliament they had a majority.

5. This Parliament passed one great measure—the **Act of Settlement**, rendered necessary by the death of the young Duke of Gloucester, only son of the Princess **1701** Anne. The Act ordained that after Anne, the succes- **A.D.** sion should pass to the Princess Sophia¹ of Hanover, and her heirs, being Protestants of the Church of England.

6. William had acquiesced in the settlement of the Spanish throne without approving it, and he now determined to join the Emperor. In September he concluded with Germany and Holland a treaty known as the **Grand Alliance**, and bent all his energies in preparation for a gigantic struggle. In the very midst of his preparations, and when his hopes were at the highest, **William** was suddenly cut off. Riding from Kensington² to Hampton Court, on February 21, 1702, he fell from his horse and broke his collar bone. After lingering for a fortnight, he died at Kensington on the 8th of March. He was in his fifty-fourth year. He left no children.

7. **ANNE**.³—William's death made no change in the policy of England. Three days after her accession Queen Anne appointed the Earl of **Marlborough** Captain-General of all her forces. Marlborough's influence with the Queen was unbounded. His wife had for years been Anne's bosom-friend. Anne chose her ministers from the Tory party, which was then in the ascendant in the Commons; and she made Marlborough's friend, Lord Godolphin, High Treasurer and Prime Minister.

8. War was formally declared in May. The principal incident of the first campaign was the capture of **Liege**⁴ by **Marlborough**. On his return to England he received **1702** the thanks of the House of Commons, and the Queen **A.D.** made him a Duke. In the following year the Emperor

¹ *Sophia*.—She was grand-daughter of James I., being daughter of Elizabeth, who married the Elector Palatine. (See *Genealogical Tree*, p. 206.)

² *Kensington*.—Then a suburb of London, now included in it. Queen Victoria was born in the Palace there.

³ *Anne*.—Second daughter of James II. Married Prince George of Denmark. (He died in 1708.) Reigned 12 years.

⁴ *Liege*.—On the Meuse; 55 miles east of Brussels. (See *Map of Belgium*, p. 200.)

proclaimed his second son King of Spain, with the title of Charles III.

9. In 1704 Marlborough gained a brilliant victory over the French and the Bavarians at **Blenheim**,¹ on the north bank of the Danube. Marshal Tallard, the French general, was taken prisoner. Marlborough received a gift of the royal manor of Woodstock,² and of a splendid mansion built on it called Blenheim House.

10. The same year witnessed one of the most important achievements of the war—the capture of **Gibraltar** by Admiral



Rooke and Sir Cloudesley Shovel. Aided by a body of Hessian troops, the English landed on the isthmus which joins the Rock³ to the mainland, and carried the works by storm in spite of a heavy fire.

11. No event of importance happened till 1706, when Marl-

¹ *Blenheim*.—A village of West Bavaria (Germany), on the Danube; 23 miles north-west of Augsburg.

² *Woodstock*.—In Oxfordshire; 8 miles north-west of Oxford, and 60 miles north-west of London.

³ *The Rock*.—Gibraltar is a strong rock-fortress in the south of Spain.

borough defeated the French at **Ramilles**.¹ The tide of fortune had now turned against the French in all quarters. In 1707, indeed, the victory of the Duke of Berwick² at **Almanza** virtually secured Spain for Philip V.; but in 1708 Marlborough gained a splendid victory over Marshal Vendome at **Oudenarde**.³ The French lost 15,000 men and more than 100 banners on this field. The last great event of the war was Marlborough's victory over Marshal Villars at **Malplaquet**⁴ in 1709, when the victors lost 24,000 men, and the vanquished only half that number.

12. The war lingered on till 1713, when the Peace of **Utrecht**,⁵ concluded by the Tory Ministry under Harley, Earl of Oxford, brought rest to Europe. The treaty abandoned the cause for which the war had been undertaken—the exclusion of the Bourbons from Spain. It was, however, A.D. provided that the French and Spanish crowns should not be united. Louis recognized the Protestant succession in England, and agreed to expel the Pretender⁶ from France. The Emperor made a separate treaty with France at **Rastadt**⁷ in 1714.

QUESTIONS.—1. When had William's second Parliament assembled? Which party had then regained the supremacy? On what principle was the Cabinet chosen?

2. What at this time caused anxiety in Europe? Who were claimants for the throne? Whom did William favour? How was he disappointed? To what did he then agree?

3. What was Charles's feeling when he heard of this? What did he do? Who became King on Charles's death?

4. Who began the war? Who appealed to England? What change of Ministry had taken place there?

5. What great measure did this Parliament pass?

6. With whom did William form the Grand Alliance? What accident did William meet with? When did he die?

7. What policy did Anne adopt? Whose influence with Anne was very great? What change of Ministry did Anne make?

8. When was war formally declared? What was the chief incident of the first campaign? How was Marlborough rewarded? What took place in 1708?

9. What great victory did Marlborough gain in 1704? What gift did he receive?

¹ *Ramilles*.—A village of South Brabant (Belgium); 26 miles south-east of Brussels. (See the *Map*.)

² *Duke of Berwick*.—Fitz-James, a natural son of James II. His mother was Arabella Churchill, sister of the Duke of Marlborough. He was killed in 1734.

³ *Oudenarde*.—A village of East Flan-

ders (Belgium); 14 miles south-west of Ghent. (See the *Map*.)

⁴ *Malplaquet*.—About 9 miles south of Mons. (See the *Map*.)

⁵ *Utrecht*.—Twenty-one miles south-east of Amsterdam.

⁶ *The Pretender*.—The son of James II.

⁷ *Rastadt*.—In Baden; 30 miles north-east of Strasburg.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 10. What great stronghold was captured the same year? By whom?
11. What was the next event of importance? What victory did the French gain in 1707? What victory did Marl- | borough gain in 1708? What was the last great event of the war?
12. What peace closed it? When? What concessions did Louis make? When did the Emperor make peace? |
|---|--|

CHAPTER III.

THE ASCENDENCY OF THE COMMONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Conflict of Whigs and Tories.
2. The Scottish Union.
3. Terms of the Union.
4. Mrs. Masham.
5. Dr. Sacheverell.
6. Return of the Tories to Power. | 7. Fall of Marlborough.
8. Creation of Peers—Supremacy of the Commons.
9. Death of Anne.
10. Accession of George I.
11. Fall of the Tories. |
|---|---|

1. DURING the reign of Queen Anne, the strife between **Whigs and Tories** raged more fiercely than ever. The Whigs supported the war; the Tories sought for peace. The strength of the Tories lay in the House of Commons, that of the Whigs in the House of Lords. There was thus mixed up with the party warfare a struggle for supremacy between the two Houses of Parliament. In 1704 Marlborough obtained the addition to the Ministry of Robert Harley and Henry St. John, moderate Tories, who supported his war policy. Though at heart a Tory, Marlborough was so disgusted with the Tory opposition to the war that he was forced to drift towards the Whigs.

2. Such was the state of politics when a question of great importance arose—the necessity of a **Union** between the Parliaments of England and Scotland. The Scottish Parliament, still smarting under the disasters at Darien, had passed an *Act of Security* (1704), which decreed that the successor to the throne of Scotland, on the Queen's death, should not be the person chosen by the English Parliament, unless the commercial privileges enjoyed by England were extended to Scotland. The Scottish nation then assumed an attitude of war, and the English Government saw that a union was the only means of preventing that calamity. At last (1706) Commissioners were appointed—thirty on each side; and by them the Treaty of Union was framed.

1707 3. The chief **terms** of the Union, which took effect
A.D. on May 1, 1707, were:—

a. That the Electress Sophia of Hanover, and her heirs, if Protestants, should succeed to the crown of the United Kingdom.

b. That Scotland should be represented in the Imperial Parliament by sixteen elective Peers and forty-five members of the Commons.

c. That all English ports and colonies should be opened to Scottish traders.

d. That the laws relating to property and private rights should be preserved unaltered.

e. That the Scottish Law Courts and the Church of Scotland should be maintained.

Since the Union was effected, the commerce, the wealth, and the greatness of Scotland have advanced with rapid strides.

4. Through a relative of his own, named Abigail Hill or **Mrs. Masham**, Harley intrigued for the expulsion of the Whigs from office. In retaliation, the Whigs insisted on Harley's dismissal from the Ministry. With Harley, St. John resigned, and they then united in denouncing Marlborough and the war. Robert Walpole took Harley's place in the Ministry.

1706
A.D.

1708
A.D.

5. The Ministry, by its indiscretion, brought about its own fall. Dr. Henry **Sacheverell**,¹ rector of St. Saviour's, Southwark, had preached two sermons in which he denounced the Revolution as an unrighteous change, and called on the people to defend their Church. The Government resolved on his impeachment, and the case came before the Lords. The trial lasted three weeks. **Sacheverell** was found guilty, and forbidden to preach for three years.

1709
A.D.

Feb. 27,
1710
A.D.

6. So mild a punishment, inflicted by a Whig House of Lords, was regarded as a triumph for the Tories. Before the end of the year Godolphin and Sunderland were dismissed (August). **Harley** and St. John came into office; and in the new Parliament, which met in November, the Tory Ministry had a decided majority. One of its first measures was to pass an **Act against Occasional Conformity**.

¹ *Sacheverell*.—Pronounced *Sashev'erell*.

7. In the spring of 1711, during Marlborough's absence on the Continent, the Ministry opened negotiations for peace with the French Government. Marlborough returned in October, to find himself ruined. He and Walpole were charged with dishonest practices. The former was dismissed in disgrace from all his offices.¹ The latter was expelled from the House of Commons. Harley was made Earl of Oxford.

8. The peace project was denounced by the majority of the House of Lords, led by Marlborough. To neutralize this opposition, the Ministry created twelve new Peers, and thus obtained a majority. This step marks an era in the history of Parliamentary government, as it was a perfectly constitutional plan, whereby the Ministry for the time being, which had the confidence of the majority of the Commons, could at once alter the relation of parties in the House of Lords. Thus the ascendancy of the Commons was established.

9. The Treaty of Utrecht was signed on the last day of March 1713. When the terms of the treaty became known in England, they were deemed a poor return for Marlborough's successes. At the same time the leading Tories were known to be favourable to the Pretender, and this destroyed the credit of the whole Tory party. Everything was in train for a Jacobite rising, when the Queen was suddenly struck down with apoplexy (July 29). The Jacobites were taken by surprise. Anne intrusted the conduct of affairs to the Duke of Shrewsbury, a Tory, but a Hanoverian. She died on the 1st of August.

10. *GEORGE I.*²—The Elector of Hanover was at once proclaimed King, with the title of George I. He was fifty-four years of age. As he was imperfectly acquainted with the English language, he left the government entirely in the hands of

¹ Marlborough retired to the Continent. He returned to England on the death of Queen Anne. He was coldly received at Court, but was restored to his post of Captain-General. He died in 1722, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

² *George I.*—Son of the Electress Sophia, and great-grandson of James I. Married Sophia-Dorothea of Zell, whom he kept for thirty years shut up in a castle in Hanover. Reigned 13 years. First King of the House of Brunswick.

the Ministry, which therefore acquired more power than it had ever had before. The Tory Ministry was dismissed. The Earl of Halifax was made First Lord of the Treasury; but the real head of the Government was Charles, Viscount Townshend, Secretary of State.

11. Oxford and Bolingbroke, against whom there were strong suspicions of a secret correspondence with the Pretender, were impeached for high treason. Oxford was sent to the Tower; Bolingbroke fled to the Continent, and joined the councils of the Pretender.

QUESTIONS.—1. What strife raged fiercely during the reign of Anne? Which side did each take? Where did the strength of the Tories lie? Where, that of the Whigs? Who were added to the Ministry in 1704? What led Marlborough to drift toward the Whigs?

2. What question arose at that time? What position had the Scottish Parliament taken up? When were commissioners appointed?

3. When did the Union take effect? What were the chief terms of the treaty?

4. To whom was Mrs. Masham related? For what did Harley intrigue through her? How did the Whigs retaliate? Who resigned along with Harley? In what did Harley and St. John join? Who succeeded Harley in the Ministry?

5. What brought about the fall of the Ministry? How long did Sacheverell's trial last? What was his sentence?

6. How was this punishment regarded? What changes took place in the Ministry?

7. What step did the Ministry take during Marlborough's absence? With what were Marlborough and Walpole charged? How was each punished?

8. By whom was the peace denounced? How did the Ministry neutralize this influence? Why does great importance attach to this step?

9. When was the Treaty of Utrecht signed? How was it regarded by the people? What had brought discredit on the Tory party? What frustrated their plans? To whom did the Queen intrust the conduct of affairs? When did she die?

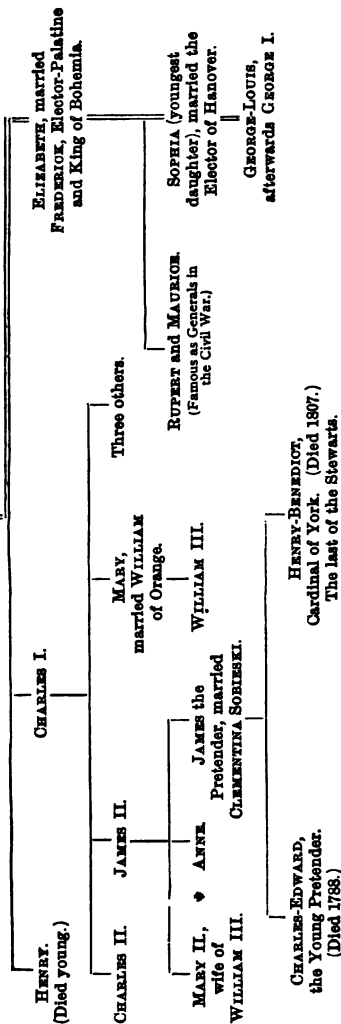
10. Who was proclaimed King? How did his position tend to increase the power of the Ministry? Who was the real head of the new Government?

11. Who were impeached? How was Oxford punished? What became of Bolingbroke?

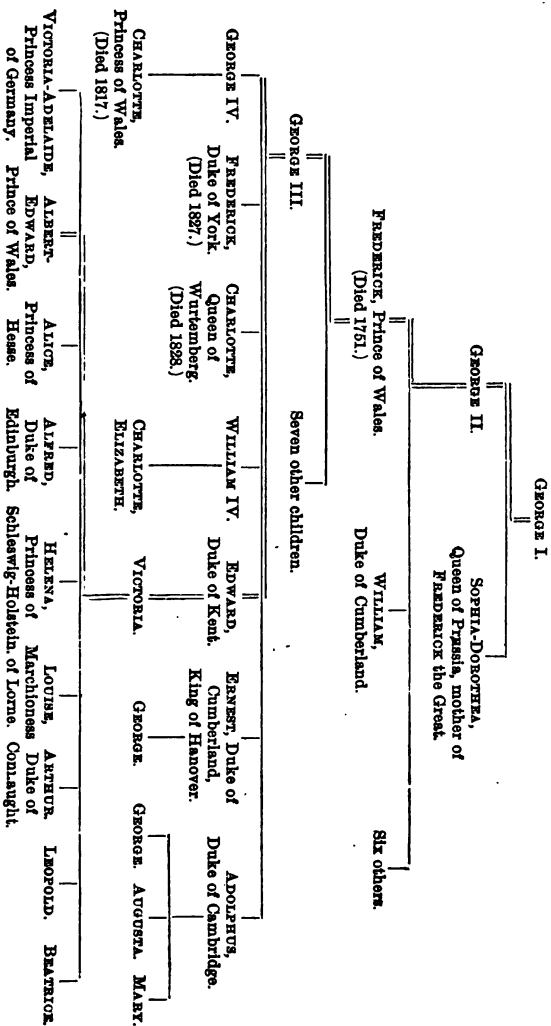
GENEALOGICAL TREE

CONNECTING THE STEWARTS WITH THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

JAMES I.



GENEALOGY OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.



GENEALOGICAL TREE

CONNECTING THE STEWARTS WITH THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

JAMES I.

HENRY.
Died young.)

CHARLES I.

CHARLES II.

MARY II.
Died young.)

JAMES II.

JAMES the
Pretender, married
CLEMENTINA SOBIESKI.

MARY,
married WILLIAM
of Orange.

Three others.

RUPERT and MAURICE.
(Ruperts as Generals in
the Civil War.)

MILLENBURN, married
PATRICIA, Elector Palatine
and King of Bohemia.

MARY II.
Died young.)

WILLIAM III.

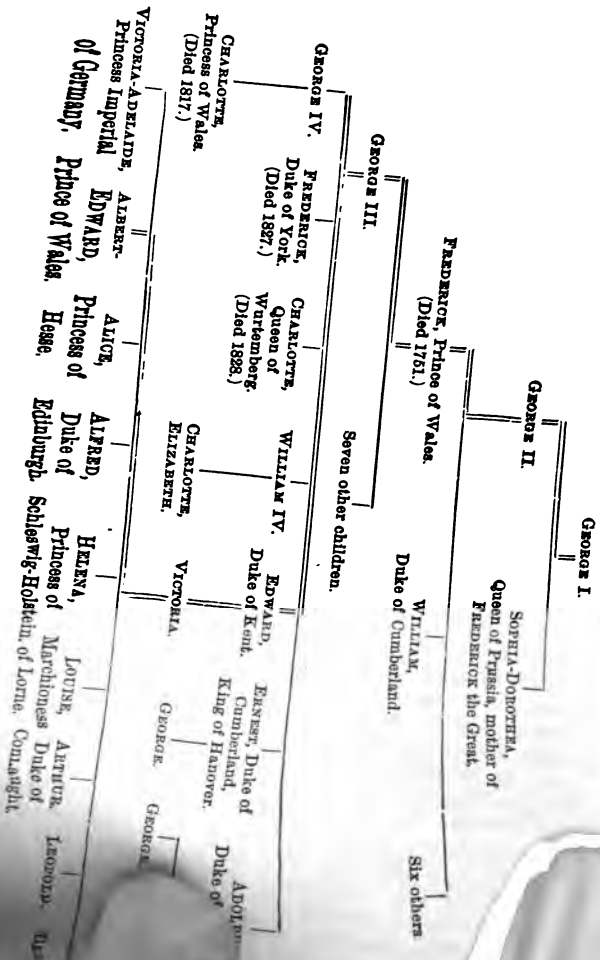
SOPHIA (youngest
daughter), married the
Elector of Hanover.

GEORGE-LOUIS,
afterwards GEORGE I.

ALBES-EDWARD,
Young Pretender.
(Died 1788)

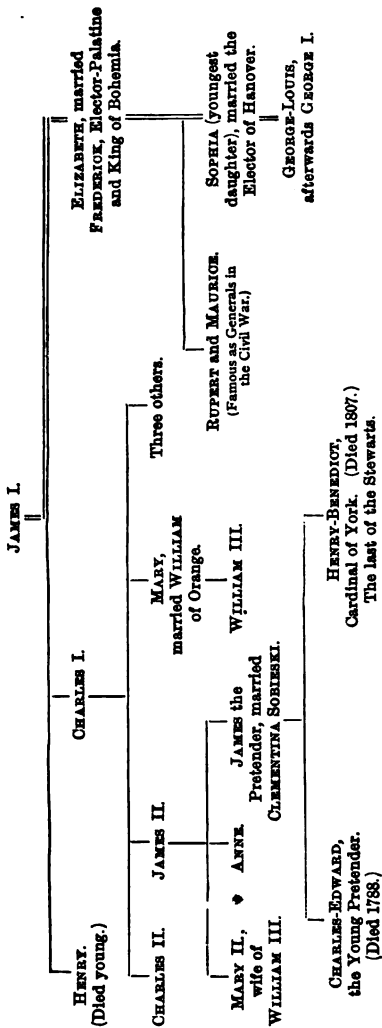
HENRY-BENEDICT,
Cardinal of York. (Died 1807.)
The last of the Stewarts.

GENEALOGY OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

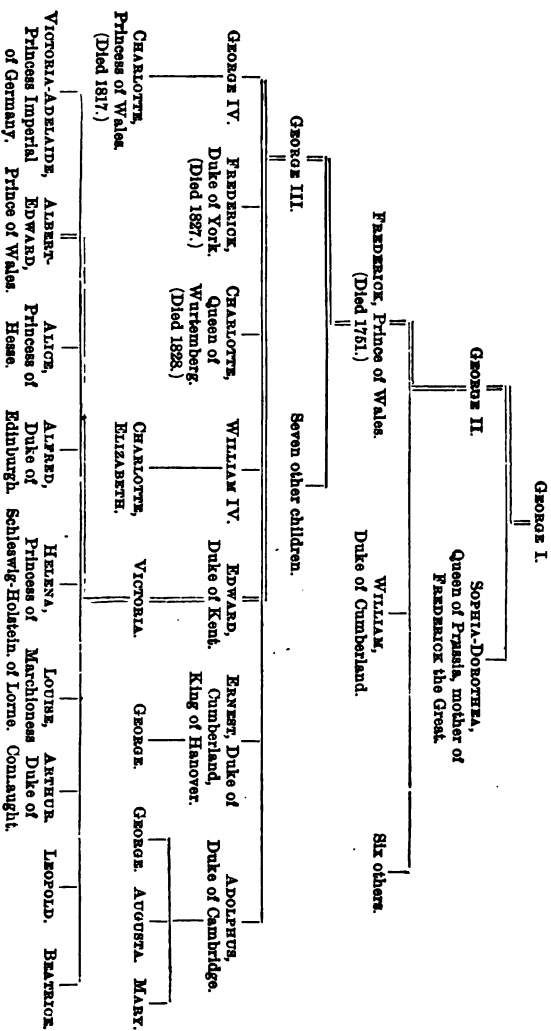


GENEALOGICAL TREE

CONNECTING THE STEWARTS WITH THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.



GENEALOGY OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.



CHAPTER IV.

THE 'FIFTEEN—THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. The Riot Act. | 6. The Quadruple Alliance. |
| 2. The Pretender in France. | 7. The South Sea Scheme. |
| 3. The Beginning of "The 'Fifteen." | 8. The Mania at its Height. |
| 4. Collapse of the Rebellion. | 9. The Bubble Burst. |
| 5. The Septennial Act. | 10. Walpole's Scheme of Liquidation. |

1. IN consequence of riots of Whig and Tory mobs in several towns, the **Riot Act**, which had been passed in Queen **1715** Mary's time, was reënacted and made permanent. The A.D. army and the navy were made ready for war. Lord Halifax died in May, and **Walpole** became First Lord of the Treasury in October.

2. The alarm of the Government was not baseless. In defiance of the Treaty of Utrecht, the Pretender was in France preparing for a descent on Scotland with the help of Louis XIV. In the midst of these preparations Louis died; but it was too late for the Pretender to draw back. Within a few days after the death of Louis, the flame of rebellion was actually kindled both in Scotland and in England.

3. The Earl of Mar, with 10,000 clansmen, held the Highlands for James; while the Duke of Argyle, with a **1715** Royalist army strongly posted at Stirling, watched his A.D. movements. The Jacobites of Northumberland were called to arms by Mr. Forster, the member for the county; but few of them obeyed the summons, and the Royalist troops forcing Forster into the town of *Preston* in Lancashire, there compelled him to surrender. On the same **Nov. 13.** day, at **Sheriffmuir**¹ in Perthshire, Argyle gave a severe check to Mar, who retreated hastily to Perth.

4. The Pretender then landed at Peterhead;² but with no money, no troops, no warlike stores. At Perth he wasted **Dec. 22.** many days in preparing for his coronation, while the crown was yet to be won. Hearing that Argyle was advancing, he hastened to Montrose, where he and Mar embarked for France, leaving the army to its fate. About **Feb. 4,** **1716** thirty of the leaders suffered death; the estates of many A.D. were confiscated; and more than a thousand were banished to North America. Thus ended "**The 'Fifteen.**"

¹ *Sheriffmuir*.—In the south of Perthshire; 8 miles north-east of Stirling.

² *Peterhead*.—On the coast of Aberdeenshire; 27 miles north of Aberdeen.

5. Dreading the consequences to which a general election might lead in the excited state of the country, the Ministry passed the **Septennial Act**, extending the possible duration of Parliaments to seven years. The Act has had a good effect in preserving the peace of the country, and in giving stability to trade.

6. For the sake of Hanover, George embroiled England with Continental affairs. In connection with his foreign policy several changes took place in the Ministry, and early in 1718 the Earl of **Sunderland** became Premier. The **Quadruple Alliance**¹ was then formed, by which Germany, England, France, and Holland leagued themselves against 1718 Philip of Spain. Admiral Byng destroyed the Spanish A.D. fleet off Sicily. In retaliation, Spain sent an expedition to invade Scotland in favour of the Pretender; but the fleet was shattered by a storm. Soon afterwards Philip sought peace (1720).

7. About the same time the **South Sea Scheme** set all England crazy. The National Debt then amounted to £53,000,000. The Government was obliged to pay those 1720 who had lent the money interest at the rate of six per A.D. cent., which came to £3,180,000 in the year. To remove, or at least to lessen, this heavy burden, various schemes were proposed. That of the South Sea Company, formed by Harley in 1710 for trading purposes, was accepted by the Government. In return for certain trading privileges, the Company took over annuities amounting to £800,000 a year, paying the Government seven and a half million sterling. The Company proposed to pay off the annuitants in South Sea stock, tempting them with extravagant promises of interest.

8. Stories of the treasure to be drawn from golden islands in the Pacific found eager listeners. Hundreds rushed to the offices of the Company to exchange their Government stock for shares in the scheme. The Company promised a dividend of fifty per cent. at least, and the shares rose rapidly from £100 to £1000.

9. The most ridiculous joint-stock companies were started in

¹ *Quadruple Alliance*.—A triple alliance between England, France, and Holland were the parties, had been formed against Spain in 1717.

2. Which was the second sea-port of the kingdom? Which was the chief manufacturing town? Mention towns now large, which were then small.

3. What was the population of London at the death of Charles II.? How many bridges were there? When were the streets of London first lighted?

4. When were coffee-houses set on foot? Of what use were they? Mention different classes of these houses?

5. What do you know of the condition of the country gentry?

6. What was the condition of the country clergy? What was the average income of the yeomen or small farmers?

credited with the saying, "Every man has his price." He gave titles of honour; to others power of power. His chief talent lay in 1721 his wise measures England owed great A.D. commerce and her manufactures.

First troubles with which Walpole had to deal were the plot. **Francis Atterbury**, the restless Bishop of Bath, the friend of Sacheverell, intrigued for

Pretender. When Walpole heard of 1722 his active measures against the Bishop. A A.D. Penalties passed through both Houses, of deprivation and exile; and he spent the rest of his life in exile.

He was then convulsed by a trifling question. A man named Wood, having obtained a patent for coining money with copper coin, proceeded to cross the Channel. It excited violent 1724 opposition. It was increased by the *Drapier Letters* A.D.

The Government tried in vain to force the coin into circulation; and in the end the patent was annulled, and Wood was compensated with a pension. The death of George I., who was seized with apoplexy in Hanover, shook the stability of the administration; but Walpole found a true and June 11, 1727 the new Queen, Caroline of Anspach.¹ A.D. influence with her husband, the country retained the services of the man best fitted to

11.²—The new King had reached the ripe age of 54, the advantage which he possessed over his father was that he could speak the English tongue. The Whigs were in the ascendency; and in the new Parliament, which met in 1727, Walpole had a decided majority.

The treaty of Vienna, in which Spain, the Empire, and Russia combined against France, led to the Treaty of Hanover, in which Prussia, and afterwards Sweden and Holland, joined. The Spaniards attacked Gibraltar, but without success.

Bavaria. married Caroline of Anspach. Reigned 33 years.
of George I. Mar-

imitation of the great scheme. The proceedings of the South Sea directors against these rival companies excited the suspicion of their own shareholders, and the gigantic bubble burst. All ran to sell the South Sea stock; none would buy. The offices were closed, and hundreds became ruined bankrupts.

10. **Sir Robert Walpole**, who had all along cried out against the huge gambling transaction, now came forward to save the public credit. His plan was to divide the losses among the Bank of England, the East India Company, and the Government. **Sunderland** the Premier and **Aislabie** the Chancellor of the Exchequer resigned office. The estates of the directors were sold to compensate the shareholders.

QUESTIONS.—1. What led to the re-enactment of the Riot Act? For what were preparations made by the Government?

2. What ground was there for the alarm of the Government? What happened in the midst of the Pretender's preparations?

3. Who held the Highlands? Who watched him? Who had called the men of Northumberland to arms? With what issue? What was the result of the Battle of Sheriffmuir?

4. Where did the Pretender land? How did he waste time at Perth? Where did he reëmbark? How many suffered death for this rebellion?

5. What is the Septennial Act? What good did it effect?

6. With what did George embroil England? Who became Premier in

1718? What alliance was then formed? What victory did Byng gain? How did the Spaniards retaliate? When did Philip make peace?

7. What scheme excited England in 1720? What was the amount of the National Debt? To what did the annual interest amount? With what view were schemes proposed? Whose scheme was accepted? What did the Company pay the Government? What did it propose to the annuitants?

8. How was the proposal received? What dividend was promised? To what price did the shares rise?

9. What led to the ruin of the South Sea Company?

10. Who came forward to save the public credit? What was his plan? What ministers resigned office? How were the directors punished?

CHAPTER V.

WALPOLE IN POWER.

1. Character of Walpole.

2. Deposition of Atterbury.

3. Wood's Halfpence.

4. Walpole and Queen Caroline.

5. Continuance of Walpole's Power.

6. The Excise Bill.

7. Walpole's Power Shaken.

8. The Spanish War.

9. Anson's Voyage Round the World.

10. Fall of Walpole.

1. FOR twenty years **Robert Walpole**¹ continued to direct the Government. Bribery was the secret of his long reign as

¹ *Robert Walpole*.—Born 1676; entered Parliament, 1700; Premier, 1721—

1742; then made Earl of Orford; died 1745.

Premier. He is credited with the saying, "Every man has his price." To some he gave titles of honour; to others places of profit or of power. His chief talent lay in **1721** finance. To his wise measures England owed great **A.D.** advances in her commerce and her manufactures.

2. One of the first troubles with which Walpole had to deal was a Jacobite plot. **Francis Atterbury**, the restless Bishop of Rochester and the friend of Sacheverell, intrigued for the return of the Pretender. When Walpole heard of **1722** the plot, he took active measures against the Bishop. **A. D.** Bill of Pains and Penalties passed through both Houses, sentencing him to deprivation and exile; and he spent the rest of his days in France.

3. Ireland was then convulsed by a trifling question. A mine-proprietor, named Wood, having obtained a patent for supplying that country with copper coin, proceeded to send his coin across the Channel. It excited violent **1724** opposition, which was increased by the *Drapier Letters* **A.D.** of Dean Swift. The Government tried in vain to force **Wood's halfpence** into circulation; and in the end the patent had to be annulled, and Wood was compensated with a pension.

4. The death of **George I.**, who was seized with apoplexy while travelling in Hanover, shook the stability of the Walpole Administration; but Walpole found a true and **June 11, 1727** staunch friend in the new Queen, **Caroline of Anspach.** **A.D.** Through her influence with her husband, the country was enabled to retain the services of the man best fitted to govern it.

5. **GEORGE II.**²—The new King had reached the ripe age of forty-four. One advantage which he possessed over his father was that he could speak the English tongue. **The Whigs** retained the ascendancy; and in the new Parliament, which met in January 1728, Walpole had a decided majority.

1725.—The Treaty of Vienna, in which Spain, the Empire, and Russia combined against England and France, led to the Treaty of Hanover, in which England, France, and Prussia, and afterwards Sweden and Holland, joined. Two years later, the Spaniards attacked Gibraltar, but without success.

¹ *Anspach.*—In Bavaria.

² *George II.*—Son of George I. Mar-

ried Caroline of Anspach. Reigned 33 years.

6. The first great battle of Walpole's Administration was fought over his **Excise Bill**. To check smuggling, which was practised to an incredible extent, Walpole proposed to **1733** bring wine and tobacco under the law of Excise. The **A.D.** merchants set up a cry of ruin, which was loudly echoed by the Opposition. When the cautious minister saw the violence of the storm, content to lose his point rather than risk his power, he withdrew the Bill.

7. The death of Queen Caroline in 1737 deprived Walpole of a warm friend and supporter. Besides the ill-will of the King, he had incurred the hatred of Frederick, Prince of Wales, who had joined the Patriots, as the malcontent Whigs were called, and was caballing against his father. The Opposition, too, had received an important accession in William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, who had entered Parliament in 1735. The disasters of the Spanish War, also, although he entered on it against his will, shook Walpole's power past retrieving.

8. The **Spanish War** was occasioned by the cruisers of Spain claiming the right to search all English vessels found **1739** in Spanish waters. Walpole tried negotiation, but in **A.D.** vain; and war was proclaimed. It proved disastrous to England. A great fleet and army under Admiral Vernon and Lord Wentworth failed in an attack on Carthage¹, chiefly through the disagreement of the leaders. **1741** The unhealthy climate swept off the English in hun- **A.D.** dreds, and there arose great discontent at home.

9. Commodore **Anson** was sent with a squadron to relieve Vernon; but, failing in his object, he sailed into the South Seas, and, after three years' cruising, took a Spanish treasure-ship, laden with £300,000. He returned to England in 1744 with a

1736.—A riot called the Porteous Mob took place in Edinburgh. Captain Porteous, for ordering the city guard to fire on an unruly crowd at the execution of a smuggler, was convicted, but was relieved. The mob broke into the prison, seized Porteous, and hanged him from a dyer's pole. Government proposed to deprive the city of its charter. The spirited resistance of the Scottish members prevented this.

1738.—John Wesley, having separated from the Church of England, founded the body of Wesleyan Methodists. It originated in a small society of students formed by Wesley and his brother at Oxford for religious exercises. Wesley was for some time assisted by George Whitfield.

¹ *Carthage*.—A sea-port on the north coast of South America.

solitary ship, having sailed round the world. He was subsequently made a peer.

10. The persistent attacks on Walpole by the Opposition, led by Pulteney and supported by William Pitt, were now producing their effect in the country. When a new Parliament met in December 1741, the Premier found that his majority had almost disappeared. **Walpole resigned** in February following, and received the title of Earl of Orford. The **1742** Earl of Wilmington became Premier; but Lord Carteret, A.D. one of Pitt's bitterest foes, was the ruling spirit in the Cabinet. On Wilmington's death in the end of 1743, Walpole had sufficient influence with the King to effect the removal of Carteret. **The Pelhams**¹ then took the helm of the State, which, partly by aristocratic influence and partly by bribery, they contrived to hold nearly as long as Walpole.

QUESTIONS.—1. How long did Walpole continue in power? What was the secret of his long continuance in office? In what did his chief talent lie?

2. What was one of the first troubles with which Walpole had to deal? What measures did Walpole take?

3. What was the cause of the disturbance about Wood's halfpence? How did it end? Who wrote the "Drapler Letters"? With what view?

4. How did the death of George I. affect Walpole's power? By whose influence was he retained in power?

5. How old was the new King? Which party retained the ascendancy? Who had a majority in the new Parliament?

6. Over what was the first great battle

of Walpole's Administration fought? What was the object of the Bill? Who opposed it? What was Walpole obliged to do?

7. When did Queen Caroline die? What other difficulties beset Walpole?

8. What was the origin of the Spanish War? How was the war disastrous to England?

9. Who was sent to relieve Vernon? When did he return to England? What feat had he accomplished?

10. Whose attacks began to tell against Walpole? What was the state of parties in the Parliament of 1741? When did Walpole resign? With what title did he retire? What changes in the Ministry followed?

CHAPTER VI. THE 'FORTY-FIVE.

1. The War of the Austrian Succession.
2. Landing of Charles-Edward.
3. The Prince at Holyrood.
4. Cope at Dunbar.
5. Battle of Prestonpans.
6. Invasion of England.
7. Derby—The Return.

8. Falkirk.
9. Culloden Moor.
10. The Highland Onset.
11. Flight of the Prince.
12. His Wanderings and Escape.
13. The Sufferers.
14. The Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

1. WHILE Walpole was yet in power a new European war—the **War of the Austrian Succession**—had broken out.

¹ *The Pelhams.*—Henry Pelham and his brother, the Duke of Newcastle.

Charles VI. of Austria, dying in 1740, had left a will by which he bequeathed all his dominions to his daughter Maria-Theresa. The Elector of Bavaria demanded Hungary; Frederick II. of Prussia seized Silesia; and Louis of France denied her right to any part of her inheritance. England was alarmed at this union of France with Prussia, and sent an army across the Channel in defence of the young Queen. George II., **1743** leading in person,¹ routed a French army near the village of **Dettingen**² on the Main. Two years later (1745), at **Fontenoy**³ in Belgium, his second son, the Duke of Cumberland, was defeated in almost the only victory won by the armies of Louis XV.

2. England, however, was chiefly affected by an episode of this war—"The 'Forty-five." As an act of retaliation, France encouraged the exiled Stewarts to make a bold push for the English throne. On July 25, 1745, Charles-Edward Stewart⁴—the "Bonnie Prince Charlie" of Jacobite song—landed from Aug. 19, a French brig on the coast of Inverness-shire. He came with only seven officers to conquer the British Islands; **1745** but at five-and-twenty hope is strong in the human A.D. breast. Many Highland chieftains hastened to his side. At the head of 700 clansmen he commenced a southward march.

3. Sir John Cope, the Royalist leader, had incautiously moved to Inverness, and the road was open. At Perth, Charles was proclaimed Regent for his father, "James VIII." When **Sept. 17.** he reached Edinburgh, his little army had swelled to more than 1,000 men. The citizens gladly opened their gates to the young Stewart, who took up his abode in the Palace of Holyrood.

4. The same day Cope, having sailed southward, was landing his troops at Dunbar. Charles resolved to give battle at once. Moving, therefore, with a force of 2,500 men, he had reached Carberry Hill when he saw the Royalist army in the narrow plain next the sea.

¹ The last occasion on which an English Sovereign was under fire.

² *Dettingen*.—In Bavaria; 18 miles east of Frankfurt-on-the-Main.

³ *Fontenoy*.—Twenty-four miles north-west of Mons.

⁴ *Charles-Edward*.—Son of James Stewart, the old Pretender, and therefore grandson of James II. He is also known as the "young Pretender," and the "Chevalier Douglas." He claimed the throne for his father.

5. The great difficulty before the Highlanders was the passage of a deep morass which spread between the hosts. A safe pathway, however, was discovered; and at dawn the armies faced each other on the same level field. In about six minutes more the Highlanders had won the Battle of **Preston-Sept. 21, 1745**
pana.¹ One rush did all. Having first discharged their pistols, they dashed on with the claymore and threw their enemies into confusion. The Royalist army broke in two. A few dragoons galloped off to Edinburgh, but the main body of the army fled, with Sir John at its head, to the shelter of Berwick walls. **A.D.**

6. If Charles had then pressed on to London, the throne of the House of Brunswick might have fallen. But his ranks were thin, and six weeks passed before he could muster 5,000 men. On the evening of the last day of October, Charles **Oct. 31.** left Holyrood for the purpose of **invading England.** After the capture of Carlisle, the southward march was continued in two divisions—one under the Prince himself, the other under Lord George Murray.

7. **Derby** was reached on the 4th of December, but further Murray and the other officers refused to go. There had been no English rising, no French descent. Their little force was almost hemmed in by three armies numbering 30,000. The only way open to them was the way back again to Scotland. Charles yielded, sorely against his will, and the homeward march was at once begun.

8. With dejected hearts and a disappointed leader the army reached the heart of Scotland. A slight success at **Falkirk** roused their hopes for a time; but they were still **Jan. 17, 1746**
driven northward, and had to seek shelter among the **A.D.** Grampians. Cumberland—known by the unenviable name of "The Butcher"—had already arrived in Scotland, and had made Perth his head-quarters. Meanwhile Charles approached Inverness from the south-east.

9. Cumberland marched to Aberdeen, then skirted the coast, and reached Nairn on the 14th of April. From Culloden House, where Charles had fixed his head-quarters, the High-

¹ *Preston pana.*—Eight and a half miles east of Edinburgh.

landers marched to surprise the Royalists in a night attack ; but the darkness misled them, and they were forced to fall back, and draw up in line of battle on **Culloden Moor**.¹

10. At eleven the foe began to appear in dark masses on the horizon. Cumberland drew up his men in three lines, April 16, with cavalry on each wing. **Murray** got leave from 1746 the Prince to make an onset with the right and the A.D. centre.

Through the regiments of the front line the Highlanders went ; but beyond the broken array they rushed on a living wall, which burst into a sheet of flame at their approach, and hurled them scorched and reeling back.

11. Following up the effect of their volley, the royal troops charged the exhausted rebels and swept them in pitiable rout from the scene of their short success. A faithful adherent named O'Sullivan, seizing the bridle of the Prince's horse, forced him to leave the hopeless scene. Eight days after the battle, Charles put to sea in a small boat, and succeeded in reaching South Uist.² It proved a place of danger ; but he was saved by the devotion of **Flora Macdonald**, who took him over to Skye in the disguise of her servant.

12. Going thence to the mainland, he endured terrible hardships for some months. At last he heard that two French ships were waiting at the coast to take him off. Travelling only in the dark, he reached the shore in safety ; and on the 20th of September he gladly reëmbarked for France. Running in a fog through the English cruisers, he landed on the 29th on the coast of Brittany.

13. About eighty suffered death for their devotion to his cause, among whom were the Scottish Lords Kilmarnock and Balmerino. Charles-Edward spent his later days at Rome, under the title of **Duke of Albany**. The gallant young soldier, of whom so much has been said and sung, sank in later life into a broken-down drunkard. He died of apoplexy in 1788 ; and nineteen years later died his brother Henry, Cardinal of York, —the last male of the Royal Stewart line.

14. The war still lingered on the Continent. In 1745 Maria-

¹ *Culloden Moor*, or *Drumossie Moor*, 8 miles north-east of Inverness.

² *South Uist*. — One of the Outer Hebrides ; 20 miles from Skye.

Theresa had triumphed, her husband, Francis-Stephen, Grand-Duke of Tuscany, being chosen Emperor. Three years later the Treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*¹ was signed by 1748
A.D.
the other belligerents. The Protestant succession in England was guaranteed; and the Pretender and his family were excluded from France.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the origin of the War of the Austrian Succession? What victory did King George gain? Who was defeated at Fontenoy?

2. By what episode of the war was England chiefly affected? Who was Charles-Edward? Where did he land? Who joined him? What army had he? In what direction did he march?

3. Who was the Royalist leader? What mistake had he made? What took place at Perth? Where did he reside at Edinburgh?

4. Where was Cope the day on which the Prince reached Edinburgh? On what did Charles resolve?

5. What was the great difficulty? How was it overcome? When did the battle begin? How was it won?

6. What prevented Charles from pressing on to London? What English town did he first take?

7. When was Derby reached? Why did the officers refuse to go further? What did Charles do?

8. Where had Charles a slight success? Where had his army to seek

shelter? Who had gone to Scotland to conduct the war? Where meanwhile was Charles?

9. To what town did Cumberland march? Where had Charles fixed his head-quarters? On what plan did the Prince resolve? What frustrated it? Where was the Highland army drawn up?

10. How did Cumberland arrange his army? What was the result of the Highland attack? What checked it?

11. What became of the Jacobite army? What became of the Prince? To what island did he escape? Who rescued him? Where did she take him?

12. Where did he go from Skye? What news reached him at last? When did he land in France?

13. How many suffered death for this rebellion? What two lords were among these? Where did Charles-Edward spend his later days? Into what did he degenerate? When did he die?

14. When did Maria-Theresa triumph? By what treaty was general peace secured? What were its chief terms?

CHAPTER VII.

THE GREAT COMMONER.

1. Rise of Pitt.
2. Pitt in Office.
3. The Seven Years' War.
4. The Devonshire-Pitt Ministry.
5. The Newcastle-Pitt Ministry.
6. The English and the French in India.
7. The Black Hole of Calcutta.
8. Clive in Bengal.
9. The Battle of Plassey.

10. English and French in America.
11. Campaign of 1759.
12. Reverses.
13. Landing at Wolfe's Cove.
14. The Battle.
15. Death of Wolfe and of Montcalm.
16. Influence of Bute.
17. The Family Compact.
18. Popular Sympathy with Pitt.

1. EVER since the retirement of Walpole, the man who had been most steadily coming to the front in English politics was

¹ *Aix-la-Chapelle*. — In Rhenish Prussia, on the frontier of Belgium;

40 miles south west of Cologne. German name, Aachen.

William Pitt, "**the Great Commoner.**" He had served for a short time as a cornet in the Life Guards Blue ; but, entering the House of Commons in 1735, he soon became so troublesome to the Ministry that Walpole had him dismissed from the army. Thenceforward he devoted himself to politics. In 1746 he became **Paymaster of the Forces.** Two years previously, the old Duchess of Marlborough, the bitter enemy of Walpole, had rewarded Pitt with a legacy of £10,000.

2. Pitt had made himself offensive to the King by his anti-Hanoverian prejudices ; but after taking office he was discreetly silent about them. When the Prince of Wales died in **1751** 1751, his opposition to the King's policy almost died out. By the same event Prince George of Wales, the King's grandson, a boy in his thirteenth year, became heir-apparent to the throne.

3. The death of Mr. Pelham (March 1754) dissolved the Ministry. The **Duke of Newcastle**, Pelham's brother, succeeded him as Premier. The **Seven Years' War** opened under the Newcastle Administration. It was caused by the ambition of Frederick the Great, who still held Silesia. Maria-Theresa obtained the aid of France, Russia, and Poland ; while England formed an alliance with Prussia.

4. In June 1756, **Minorca** surrendered to a French fleet, after a blockade of two months. Admiral Byng had been sent out to relieve it ; but thinking his force too weak, he had retreated to Gibraltar, and had left Minorca to its fate.

1756 These events excited popular fury against the Ministry, and Newcastle resigned. A Ministry was then formed by the **Duke of Devonshire**, with Pitt as Secretary of State and virtual Premier. During this Ministry Byng was tried and shot, in spite of the remonstrances of Pitt.

1751.—An Act was passed for the Correction of the Calendar, and the New Style of Reckoning was introduced. As each year since the beginning of the Christian era had been reckoned 11 minutes too long, the error amounted to 11 days. To make up for this excess, 11 days were dropped out of the year 1752, —September 3rd was called September 14th. At the same time the first day of January was reckoned the beginning of the year, instead of March 25th.

1757.—Frederick of Prussia defeated the French and the Imperialists at Rossbach (Saxony). This victory was the turning-point in Frederick's career, and the starting-point in the progress which has made Prussia the first power on the Continent of Europe.

5. In April, Pitt was dismissed at the instigation of the Duke of Cumberland. So great a cry of indignation arose in the country that the King was compelled to recall him (June). Newcastle was nominal Premier, but Pitt was really the head of the Government. As **Foreign Secretary**, he undertook the direction of the war. Then followed that remarkable series of successes which made England supreme in both hemispheres.

6. The Governor of Pondicherry,¹ the central station of the French, formed the scheme of conquering all India for France. Holding Madras, he soon overran the whole Carnatic.² But the tide of conquest was turned by **Robert Clive**, a clerk in the East India Company's service, who entered the army in 1746, and soon distinguished himself by the capture of Arcot.³

7. The conquest of Bengal was Clive's most remarkable achievement. Sujah-ad-Dowlah, Nabob or Prince of Bengal, attacked the English settlements by the Ganges in 1756.



He then packed one hundred and forty-six English prisoners into a chamber twenty feet square, known as the **Black Hole** of Calcutta (June 19, 1756). Next morning twenty-three ghastly figures staggered or were lifted, barely living, from the fetid den.

8. Landing at the mouth of the Hoogly in December, Clive forced his way to Calcutta. Early in 1757 Sujah-ad-Dowlah made a determined attack on that town with 40,000 men. Clive had

¹ Pondicherry. — Eighty-six miles south-west of Madras.

² The Carnatic. — A division of Southern India extending along the

east coast; about 550 miles long, and 90 miles broad.

³ Arcot. — Sixty-four miles south-west of Madras.

only 2,400 men, most of them Sepoys.¹ Yet he kept the Nabob at bay, and forced him to come to terms.

9. The decisive battle was fought at **Plassey**,² on June 23rd. Clive had not 4,000 men with him, while the enemy numbered 60,000. The action, beginning at six in the morning, was confined to a double cannonade all day. Toward evening a division of the Nabob's army began to move toward the English lines, evidently with no hostile intention. Clive then hurled his whole force upon the camp, and swept the vast mob in rout before him. Only twenty white men and about fifty Sepoys perished in the fight which secured for England the supremacy of India!

10. In **North America** the French held Canada, while the English settlers possessed the coast of the territory now called the United States. The natural boundary between the settlements was formed by the St. Lawrence and its Lakes. But in 1752 a system of encroachment began on the part of the French. Resolved to keep in French hands the traffic between Canada and the lower Mississippi, they lined the Ohio and the Alleghanys with fortresses. This led to several sharp encounters between the English and the French colonists.

11. In 1756 the outbreak of the Seven Years' War imbittered the strife in the colonies; and during the next year or two affairs bore for the English a gloomy aspect. But Pitt had not long been in the Foreign Office when the clouds began to rise. He himself planned the campaign of 1759. **Quebec** was the point of attack. An expedition, under General James Wolfe, sailed from England against it. Two land expeditions from the south were to converge on the same point. The Marquis Montcalm commanded the French army.

12. Arrived in the St. Lawrence, Wolfe disposed his army partly on the banks of the river and partly on the Isle of Orleans. During July the town was vigorously bombarded; but no impression could be made on the fortress. On the last

1759.—Admiral Hawke gained a splendid victory over the Brest fleet at Quiberon (Brittany).

¹ *Sepoys*.—Hindu soldiers employed by the British army. ² *Plassey*.—Ninety miles north of Calcutta.

day of July, Wolfe attacked Montcalm in his intrenchments on the left bank of the river. Those who first landed began the attack, without waiting for the support of the rest of the force. Overpowered by numbers, they were driven back with heavy loss.

13. At length stratagem was tried. Wolfe concentrated his



army, now reduced to 5,000 men, on the right bank of the river. On the 12th of September, the whole army marched eight miles above Quebec, to where a portion of the fleet was stationed. On the 14th, under cover of night, boats with muffled oars dropped quietly down the stream, bearing the soldiers to a creek above Quebec ever since known as **Wolfe's Cove**. Up the tortuous path which ran from the beach to the top of the rock, Wolfe and his whole army clambered in single file. When day broke on the 15th, 4,800 British soldiers were forming in line of battle on the **Plains of Abraham** overlooking Quebec.

14. The French were completely surprised, yet they advanced with great show and bravery. Wolfe, who was on foot with his Grenadiers, counselled his men not to fire until they saw the eyes of the foe. When the French columns were within forty yards the red lines poured forth one simultaneous volley of musketry. It was decisive:

Sept. 15,
1759
A.D.

the militia fled,—the French columns, shattered and reeling, wavered. Wolfe gave the word to advance. As he led the way he fell, wounded in three places, and was borne to the rear. The French soldiers broke into irretrievable flight, and sought safety under the cannon of the ramparts. Montcalm fell mortally wounded, and was borne into Quebec.

15. A Grenadier officer who knelt beside Wolfe and supported him, called out, "See, they run!"—"Who run?" asked Wolfe.—"The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere."—"Now,

Sept. 8, God be praised! I die happy." Montcalm died next morning. Quebec capitulated on the 18th of September. **1760** Montreal surrendered on the 8th of September 1760, A.D. and Canada passed into the hands of the English.

16. **GEORGE III.**¹—On the 25th of the following month George II. died suddenly of heart disease, in the seventy-seventh year of his age. George III., his successor,

1760 then in his twenty-second year, was, unlike the two A.D. preceding kings, an Englishman by education and sympathy. Pitt still remained in power, but it ere long became evident that the young King was entirely under the influence of the Earl of Bute, his former tutor. A Secretary of State resigned in order to give Bute a seat in the Cabinet.

17. Then arose the question of a new war. The **Family Compact**,² made by the Bourbon monarchs of France, Spain, and Naples, had become known to Pitt. Foreseeing an

1761 inevitable war, he boldly proposed to strike the first A.D. blow against the colonies of Spain. The King, influenced by Bute, refused to follow his advice; and then

(October 6) Pitt resigned the seals of office. The statesman would receive nothing for himself, but accepted a peerage for his wife, with a pension of £3,000 a year for three lives.

18. The people took a public opportunity of showing their feeling in the matter. Scarcely casting a look at George and his young bride, as they went in state to the city on Lord Mayor's Day, they overwhelmed the Great Commoner with

¹ *George III.* — Son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, and grandson of George II. Married Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. Reigned 60 years.

² *Family Compact.* — Louis XV. of France, Charles III. of Spain, and Ferdinand of Naples, were all descended from Louis XIV. of France.

acclamations. **Bute**, who succeeded Pitt as Premier, had to surround his coach with a band of pugilists.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the Great Commoner? When did he enter the House of Commons? To which party did he attach himself? How did he suffer for that? What post did he obtain in 1746? Who left him a legacy?

2. How did Pitt conduct himself in office? What event almost extinguished his opposition to the King? When did the Prince die? Who then became heir-apparent?

3. What dissolved the Ministry? Who became Premier? What war opened under the new Ministry? Which power did England join?

4. What events excited popular fury against the Ministry? What led Newcastle to resign? What Ministry was then formed? What position had Pitt in it? Who suffered death during its continuance?

5. When was Pitt dismissed? At whose instigation? What led to his recall? What Ministry was then formed? What office did Pitt hold? What followed?

6. What scheme did the French governor of Pondicherry form? How far was he successful? Who turned the tide of conquest?

7. What was his greatest achievement? What cruelty did Sujah-ad-Dowlah perpetrate? How many perished?

8. When did Clive land in Bengal? What was the result of the Nabob's attack on Calcutta in 1757?

9. Where was the decisive battle fought? To what was it confined all

day? What decided the day? What was the loss in Clive's army? What was the result of the victory?

10. What were the relative positions of the English and the French in North America? What was the natural boundary between them? Who encroached on this boundary? Where did they erect fortresses?

11. What embittered the strife in the colonies in 1756? How did affairs look for the English? What changed the aspect of affairs? What was the plan of the campaign of 1759?

12. How did Wolfe dispose his army? How was July occupied? What took place on the last day of that month?

13. By what stratagem were the Plains of Abraham gained? How many men had Wolfe there at daybreak?

14. What was the effect on the French? What counsel did Wolfe give to his Grenadiers? What effect had this? What happened to Wolfe? What happened to Montcalm?

15. What were Wolfe's last words? When did Montcalm die? When did Quebec capitulate? When did Montreal surrender?

16. When did George II. die? Who succeeded him? Under whose influence was the young King?

17. Why did Pitt advise the declaration of war? Why did he resign? Of what did he accept?

18. How did the people show their regard for him? Who succeeded him as Premier?

CHAPTER VIII.

LIFE IN ENGLAND—THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

1. The Streets.
2. Ladies' Dress.
3. Gentlemen's Dress.

4. Promenades.
5. Amusements.
6. Manners in Church—Education.

1. **THERE** were hackney-coaches in London in the eighteenth century, but the **Sedan-chair** was still the most fashionable mode of conveyance. At night the streets were badly lighted

with oil-lamps; and it was customary for those who walked abroad after dark to hire link-boys to carry torches before them in order to show the way.

2. The most remarkable part of a **lady's dress** was the **Hoop**, a kind of cage on which the flowered brocade of the skirt was extended to an enormous size. Ladies' faces were spotted with black patches, which at one time had a political significance, Tories wearing the spots on the left temple, and Whigs on the right.

3. The **dress** worn by a **gentleman** was stiff and artificial. A huge perwig, white being most prized, flowed with bushy curls on his shoulders at the beginning of the period. This gave way to powdered hair, tied behind in an enormous queue. His coat was of claret velvet, or blue silk, heavily bordered with gold or silver lace—his vest of flowered silk extended its flaps half way to the knee—knee-breeches, silk stockings, and diamond-buckled shoes completed his costume.

4. The usual dinner-hour was between two and five. After that meal the **favourite promenades** began to fill, and fashionable life was in full flood about seven. Vizards or masks of black velvet were commonly worn; and it was customary to speak to any one, no ceremony of introduction being necessary.

5. At the **evening parties**, which were called *ridottos* or *drums*, gambling was practised to a shameful extent. It was indeed the great vice of the age. Duels constantly resulted from these evening assemblies: the usual place for deciding these "affairs of honour" were Hyde Park Ring, and the grassy space behind Montague House. The **theatre** began to fill at four. The actors wore the dress of their own time, and not the costume suitable to the parts they acted. The gallery was filled with the footmen of the persons of quality who sat in the boxes.

6. The demeanour of people **in church** contrasted strongly with the decorous behaviour now usual. Many persons went there only to stare about, and to greet their friends. Very different, however, was the demeanour of the large congregations that listened eagerly to the appeals of Wesley and the thrilling eloquence of Whitfield. **Education** was at a low ebb. The only schools were the grammar-schools of the six-

teenth century. The rural population was allowed to grow up in utter ignorance.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the modes of conveyance in use in the eighteenth century? What sort of lamps were there? Who were the "link-boys"?

2. What was the "hoop"? What significance had patches often?

3. Describe the dress worn by gentlemen at this period.

4. When was the usual dinner-hour? What places were resorted to afterwards?

5. What was the vice of the age? Where were duels fought? Describe the audience at the theatre.

6. What peculiar habits displayed themselves at church?

CHAPTER IX.

AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

1. The War of the Family Compact.
2. Wilkes and *The North Briton*.
3. Triumph of Wilkes.
4. The American Stamp Act.
5. New Taxes.
6. Boston Harbour.

7. Commencement of Hostilities.
8. The Declaration of Independence.
9. Saratoga.
10. Death of Chatham.
11. Yorktown—Independence.

1. As Pitt had foretold, Spain declared war, in terms of the Family Compact. In the short war which followed, England had many brilliant successes. Soon both France and Spain sought peace. Bute was so alarmed by the increase of the National Debt that he readily yielded to their desire, **1763** and the Peace of **Paris** was concluded in February 1763. A.D. It confirmed the cession of Canada to England. Pitt denounced the Peace. Both the Peace and the Ministry became unpopular; and Bute was so alarmed by the rising tide of popular dislike, that he resigned his office. **The Honourable George Grenville** was his successor.

2. In his speech, in closing the session of Parliament (March 1763), the King declared the Peace to have been both honourable and beneficial. Thereupon **The North Briton**, a weekly paper edited by John Wilkes, a Member of Parliament, in its famous **No. 45** charged the King with uttering a lie from the throne. Wilkes was at once arrested on a general warrant.¹

1763.—The Peace of Hubertsburg (Saxony) terminated the Seven Years' War.

¹ *A General Warrant.* — A warrant which does not specify the name of the accused.

issued against the "authors, printers, and publishers." Chief-Justice Pratt declared general warrants illegal. Notwithstanding this, Wilkes was expelled from the House of Commons, and was subsequently outlawed (1764).

3. Returning from France in 1768, he was elected for Middlesex by a large majority. But the House of Commons refused to admit him. Four times did the men of Middlesex return him to Parliament, and as often did the House of Commons reject him. But in the end Wilkes triumphed, and was allowed to take his seat. He afterwards became Lord Mayor of London (1774).

4. Meanwhile events had occurred which led to the great **American War**. Grenville, desirous to meet the cost **1765** of the last war, proposed to tax certain papers used in A.D. America; and the **Stamp Act** was therefore passed.

The Colonists replied, that since they had no representatives in the British Parliament, they would pay no taxes to Great Britain. At the same time they offered to vote voluntary contributions to the imperial treasury.

5. Grenville at once resigned, and the Stamp Act was repealed. The Duke of Grafton, and Pitt, now Earl of Chatham, were next called to office; and, in spite of the warnings of the great statesman,¹ **new taxes**—on tea, lead, glass, paper, and painters' colours—were laid on the Colonists, whose discontent grew hourly greater. In 1768 Chatham retired; and **1770** two years later the Duke of Grafton gave place to A.D. **Lord North**, a Tory Premier, under whom chiefly the American War was conducted.

6. The taxed tea was still sent to America. Some twenty daring spirits, dressed and painted like Indians, boarded the tea-ships which lay in **Boston² Harbour**, and emptied **1773** the cargoes into the sea (December). The British A.D. Government then shut up the port of Boston, and removed the Custom-house to Salem.³ Then the States met in Congress at **Philadelphia**,⁴ and sent an address to the

¹ Pitt was at the time in bad health, and was hardly accessible even to the members of Government.

² Boston.—A sea-port, and the capital of Massachusetts (United States).

³ Salem.—Sixteen miles north-east of Boston.

⁴ Philadelphia.—On Delaware river, in Pennsylvania; formerly capital, and

King, in which they asked that the oppressive taxes should be removed. The petition was slighted. To the eloquent warnings of such men as Lord Chatham and **1774**

Edmund A.D.

Burke the ministers closed their ears.

7. After ten years of wordy strife, actual war began. It continued with varying success during eight campaigns.

The first outbreak **April 19, 1775** was at A.D.

Lexington,¹ between Boston and Concord, where a few American riflemen attacked a detachment of English soldiers



that was marching to seize some warlike stores. More importance attaches to the attempt of the Americans to seize and fortify **Bunker Hill**, overlooking Boston. The attempt failed, but it proved to the Colonists that it was possible for undisciplined patriots to meet on equal terms the best troops England could send against them. Henceforth the success of the Revolution was assured. Two days previously Congress had unanimously appointed **George Washington**² Commander-in-chief. He immediately joined the army at Boston.

8. Early in the second campaign, General Howe was **com-**
still the second city, of the Union. (See the Map.)

¹ Lexington.—Eleven miles northwest of Boston.

² George Washington.—Born in Vir-

ginia, 1732; a major, Virginia militia, 1751; Commander-in-chief of the American Army, 1775. First President of the United States, 1789; reelected, 1793. Retired, 1797; died, 1799.

pelled to evacuate Boston and to sail for Halifax;¹ and then was issued, by the Congress at Philadelphia, the famous document called "**The Declaration of Independence.**" In August, General Howe seized Long Island,² drove Washington from New York, and planted the English flag on its batteries.

9. At the opening of the third campaign the Americans obtained aid in men and money from France. A victory at the Brandywine river, and the capture of Philadelphia, raised hopes in England that the subjugation of the Colonists was not far distant. But a great humiliation changed all these hopes into fears. General Burgoyne, marching from Canada, was so hemmed in by the American troops at **Saratoga**,³ that he was forced to surrender (October 16, 1777). Thenceforward America had decidedly the best of the war.

10. In the fourth year of the war, the venerable Chatham, while thundering, in spite of age and illness, against a proposal to grant the Colonies independence, fell in a fit on the floor of the House of Lords, and was carried to a bed whence he never rose. He died five weeks afterwards.

11. No event of note occurred after this till the seventh campaign, when a second great disaster befell the British arms. Lord Cornwallis was, by the skilful movements of Washington, shut up in **Yorktown**,⁴ and compelled to surrender with 7,000 men. This was the decisive

1779.—Spain and Holland joined France against England. Russia, Sweden, and Denmark formed an Armed Neutrality. The great Siege of Gibraltar began. It lasted from July 16, 1779, till January 20, 1783. During that time many attacks were made by the besiegers, and many sorties by the garrison, which was commanded by General Elliot. The final attack was made in September 1782; the repulse of the besiegers was complete.

1780.—The Gordon No-Popery Riots took place in London. Chapels were destroyed. Jails were stormed, and the prisoners set free. The cause of the riots was the repeal of certain penal laws against Roman Catholics. Gordon was sent to the Tower, but was acquitted; twenty-one of the rioters were executed.

¹ *Halifax*.—Capital of Nova Scotia. It is nearly 500 miles from Boston by sea.

² *Long Island*.—Opposite New York, between New York Bay and the Atlantic. It is 115 miles long and 20 broad. Brooklyn, in the south-west, is an im-

portant suburb of New York. The channel between them is about 2 miles broad.

³ *Saratoga*.—In New York State; 32 miles north of Albany, and the same distance from Lake Champlain.

⁴ *Yorktown*.—In Virginia; 50 miles south-east of Richmond.

blow; for although the war lingered through another campaign, the American Colonies were now virtually severed from England. The Independence of the **Thirteen United States** was after some time formally acknowledged by **1783** the Treaty of Versailles; and they became a Republic, **A.D.** governed by an elected President, George Washington being the first to hold the office.

QUESTIONS.—1. How was Pitt's prophecy fulfilled? What induced Bute to listen to proposals of peace? What treaty was concluded? What led to Bute's retirement? Who succeeded him?

2. For what was Wilkes arrested? How was he treated by the House of Commons?

3. What showed his popularity in 1768? How often did the House of Commons reject Wilkes? How did the struggle end?

4. What Act, relating to America, was now passed? How did the Americans reply to the proposal to tax them?

5. How did Grenville act? Who were next called to office? What new taxes were then imposed? Who retired in 1768? Who became Premier in 1770?

6. What daring act was committed at Boston? How did the Government retaliate? What were the proceedings

of the States in 1774? How was this petition received?

7. When did actual war break out? Where was the first skirmish? What affair was more important? What did the attempt prove? Whom did Congress appoint Commander-in-chief?

8. What success was obtained by the Americans early in the campaign of 1776? What famous document was issued on the 4th of July? What advantages were gained by the English in the following month?

9. What aid did the Americans receive in 1777? What raised hopes that the Colonies would be eventually subdued? What event changed the current of affairs?

10. What lamentable event befell Chatham in the year 1778?

11. What was the second great disaster to the English arms? When was the independence of the States acknowledged? What form of government was chosen by them?

CHAPTER X.

INDIA.

1. Lord Clive, Governor of Bengal.
2. The First Governor-General.
3. War in the Carnatic.
4. Fox's India Bill.

5. Pitt Premier.
6. The Board of Control.
7. Impeachment of Warren Hastings.
8. Mysore Subdued.

1. **AFTER** Clive's departure from India (1760) things went wrong. The East India Company's servants practised extortion; the service became disorganized; the native princes began to throw off their allegiance. In these circumstances Clive, now **Lord Clive** of Plassey, was induced to return to India in 1765, as **Governor of Bengal**. He set himself vigorously to reform

the service, and he concluded a favourable treaty with the Mogul Emperor. But his health again gave way, and he finally left India in 1767.

2. Clive's departure was followed by a long succession of disasters. To strengthen the government, Lord North passed in 1773 the **Regulating Act**, by which the Governor of Bengal was made superior to the Governors of Madras and Bombay; and Warren Hastings was appointed first **Governor-General of India**. In the same year General Burgoyne led an attack on Clive's character in the House of Commons, which signally failed. Though actually acquitted, the stain cast on his good name preyed on his mind, and drove him to lay violent hands on himself, November 1774.

3. Hastings was not over-scrupulous in the means he adopted for filling his treasury. From the first, however, his administration was marked by the greatest vigour. In 1780 Hyder Ali overran the **Carnatic** and threatened Madras. Hastings made peace with the **Mahrattas**,¹ and hurled against Hyder the whole of his available forces under Sir Eyre Coote. Coote gained two brilliant victories over him in 1781, and finally crushed him at Arnee² in 1782. Hyder died before the end of that year, and in 1783 his son Tippoo Saib made peace with the English.

4. Though the country was pledged to peace with the United States, the treaty was everywhere unpopular, and led to a change of Government. The Coalition Ministry was then formed by the Duke of Portland and Fox.³ The chief subject that engaged the attention of this Ministry was the government of India. Fox, in his **India Bill**, prepared by himself and Burke, proposed to vest the government of India for five years in a Commission appointed by Parliament and independent of the Crown. The Commons passed the measure; but it was violently opposed by the King, through whose influence the Lords rejected it.

5. The Portland Ministry was then dismissed (December), and Pitt⁴ became Premier and Chancellor of the Exchequer

¹ *Mahrattas*.—They originally belonged to the north-west of the Deccan. They were subdued by England in 1818.

² *Arnee*.—Eighty miles west-south-west of Madras.

³ *Fox*.—Charles James Fox, a son of Lord Holland. Born 1749; died 1806.

⁴ *Pitt*.—William Pitt, the younger, second son of the Earl of Chatham. Born 1759; died 1806.

in his twenty-fifth year. His task was one of great difficulty; for he had to contend with a hostile majority led by the most experienced Parliamentary tacticians of the day, and he had not a single able speaker on his side. For four months he fought with matchless skill and unflinching courage. **1784** The King supported him. The mass of the nation was **A.D.** in his favour. Gradually the majority dwindled down. When it had been reduced from 104 to 1, he dissolved Parliament (March 24).

6. In the new Parliament, Pitt had an overwhelming majority, which insured his supremacy during the remainder of his life. One of the first uses he made of it was to settle the government of India. This he did in 1784 by a Bill erecting the **Board of Control**, which consisted of six Privy Councillors appointed by the Crown, the principal Secretaries of State, and the Chancellor of the Exchequer. This Board, which continued till the Company was abolished in 1858, was an Indian Commission sitting in London and exercising supreme authority over the government of India and the affairs of the Company.

7. Warren Hastings finally quitted India in 1785; and he left it in a state of unexampled peace. At first he was received at home with marked favour; but by-and-by murmurs of detraction began to be heard, and eventually he was **impeached** before the House of Lords. The chief charges against him were,—that he had hired out English troops to crush certain free native tribes; and that he had extorted large sums of money from native princes. The trial commenced in 1788. It lasted seven years, and in



the end Hastings was acquitted. But the expenses of the trial had ruined him, and he received a pension from the Company which enabled him to pass the close of his life in comfort.

8. Hastings was succeeded as Governor-General by Lord Cornwallis, under whom the war against Tippoo Saib was so vigorously prosecuted that in 1792 the latter was forced to submit. A few years later, however, a change in the government encouraged the Rajah to resume hostilities. In 1799 a powerful army was despatched to Mysore under General Harris. Seringapatam was stormed by Sir David Baird, and Tippoo was slain. Colonel Arthur Wellesley¹ (afterwards the great Duke of Wellington), who had taken a prominent part in the campaign, was then appointed English Governor of Mysore.

QUESTIONS.—1. What occurred after Clive left India? To what post was he appointed in 1765? When did he finally leave India?

2. What led to the passing of the Regulating Act? What was its chief provision? Who was the first Governor-General? Who led the attack on Clive in the House of Commons? What was its issue? What effect had it on Clive?

3. What was the character of Hastings' administration? How did he deal with the war in the Carnatic? Where was Hyder Ali finally crushed? When did his son make peace with the English?

4. What led to a change of Government? Who formed the Coalition Ministry? What led to its dismissal?

5. Who then became Premier? What difficulty beset him? When did he dissolve Parliament?

6. Who had the majority in the new Parliament? What was the special feature of Pitt's India Bill? When was it passed?

7. When did Hastings finally quit India? In what state did he leave it? What charges were brought against him? How long did the trial last? How did it end? How did the East India Company treat him?

8. Who succeeded Hastings as Governor-General? When did Tippoo Saib submit to the English? What encouraged him to resume hostilities? Where was he defeated and slain? When?

CHAPTER XI.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

1. The Revolution.
2. Its Effects in England.
3. The Canada Constitutional Act.
4. The French Republic.
5. English Sympathizers.
6. First Coalition against France.
7. Mutiny at the Nore.

8. Battles of St. Vincent and Camperdown.
9. Battle of the Nile.
10. Acre and Alexandria.
11. Irish Rising.
12. The Irish Union.
13. Resignation of Pitt.

1. THE French Revolution, which began in 1789, was the greatest event of the eighteenth century. During its continu-

¹ Wellesley. — His elder brother, Lord Mornington, afterwards Marquis of India, was then Governor-General of India.

ance, the history of England is to a great extent merged in the general history of Europe. In France, tyranny, royal extravagance, and heavy taxation, had led to confusion in the national finances, and to wide-spread discontent. When redress of grievances was sought in vain, the Paris mob stormed the Bastille, or State prison. The ancient Bourbon monarchy was overturned; the King and the Queen—Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette—were guillotined; and France was drenched in blood.

2. The ferment quickly spread to England, and imbittered party feeling there. Many of the friends of reform were alarmed by the proceedings in France, and became opponents of change. Burke, in particular, denounced the excesses in France, and foretold the overturn of law and order.

3. The effects of the Revolution were seen in the discussions raised by the Canada Bill of 1791. Its object was to divide Canada into two provinces, Upper and Lower, with a separate provincial government in each. Though a Government measure, it was heartily supported by Fox. Burke, on the contrary, denounced it in a violent philippic against republican principles, and declared that he would hold no intercourse with those who defended them. Fox, who had been his life-long friend, whispered, "There is no loss of friendship, I hope?" "Yes," replied Burke, "there is loss of friendship. I know the price of my conduct: our friendship is at an end." The Bill passed, and is known as the **Canada Constitutional Act**. It established a Representative Assembly, a Legislative Council, and a Governor in each province. It did not, however, put an end to the evils which afflicted the colonies.

4. The Republic was established in France in 1792, and one of its first acts was to offer help to the English people against their "tyrannical" Government. When the **1793** blood of Louis stained the scaffold in the following year, A.D. war was declared against the **French Republic** by England, Holland, Spain, Austria, Prussia, and five smaller States. Toulon, a strong fortress on the Mediterranean shore, sur-

1789.—George Washington was elected first President of the United States of America. The city of Washington, named after him, was made the seat of the Government in 1792. The Capitol there was begun in 1793.

rendered to an English fleet. It was retaken by the cannon of the Republic, directed chiefly by a little Corsican officer of artillery named Napoleon Buonaparte.

5. In England, the admirers of the Revolution became bolder, and joined in the cry for a reform of Parliament. The **1794** Government became alarmed, and suspended the *Habeas A.D. Corpus* Act, besides passing an Act against seditious assemblies. Abroad, the English arms were generally successful. Lord Hood took Corsica. Lord Howe defeated the Brest fleet off the west of Brittany. Most of the French settlements in the East and the West Indies were taken.

6. The French, however, had become masters of Flanders, and in 1795 Holland submitted to them. In the same year Prussia made a separate treaty with France, and Spain became her ally. Nevertheless Pitt resolved to prosecute the war with vigour, and succeeded in forming with Russia and Austria the **First Coalition against France**. In the following year Spain declared war against England.

7. In England it was a time of great gloom and distress. A dangerous mutiny broke out in the Royal Navy. The seamen demanded more pay, better food, better attention when sick, and more liberty when in port. At the Spithead¹ they were easily pacified; but at the Nore² the mutineers seized the ships and anchored them across the Thames, in order to shut up the mouth of the river. The men did not return to their duty until the ringleaders had been arrested and hanged.

8. Two great naval victories relieved the gloom of the year. In February, off **Cape St. Vincent**,³ Admiral Jervis and Commodore Nelson, with twenty-one sail, defeated **1797** thirty-two Spanish ships of war. In October the ships of Holland were scattered by Admiral Duncan off the Dutch village of **Camperdown**.⁴ The former victory prevented an invasion of England by the combined French and Spanish fleets; the latter prevented an invasion of Ireland by the Dutch.

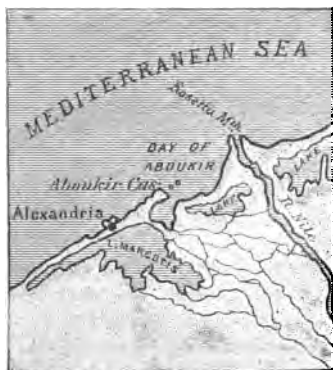
¹ *The Spithead*.—A roadstead opposite Portsmouth, between Portsea Island and the Isle of Wight.

² *The Nore*.—A roadstead on the Thames, opposite Sheerness.

³ *Cape St. Vincent*.—The south-western extremity of Portugal.

⁴ *Camperdown*.—On the coast of Holland; 27 miles north-west of Amsterdam.

9. Buonaparte spent two campaigns in **Egypt** and **Syria**, in a fruitless attempt to open a path to India. Sailing from Toulon with a great fleet and army, he took Malta¹ on his way, and landed at Alexandria.² Then pressing on to Cairo,³ he defeated the Egyptians in the Battle of the Pyramids. But he had been followed by Admiral Nelson, who annihilated his



fleet as it lay in the **Aug. 1, 1798**
Bay of Aboukir.⁴ A.D.
Never was a naval victory more complete than that of the Nile. Of thirteen French men-of-war,

nine were taken and two burned; and of four frigates, two were taken.

10. By this victory the army of Buonaparte was imprisoned in Egypt. Never inactive, he led his soldiers into Syria early in 1799, and laid siege to **Acre**.⁵ So gallantly was it defended by Sir Sidney Smith, that, after repeated efforts to storm its walls during two months, the French were forced to retreat to Egypt. Alarming news from Paris caused Buonaparte to hurry back to France. The army thus abandoned lost spirit, and was finally routed at **Alexandria** in 1801 by Sir Ralph Abercromby, who received a mortal wound during the action.

¹ *Malta*.—An island in the Mediterranean; 54 miles south-west of Sicily. Chief town, Valetta. In 1800 the English took it, and it has ever since continued one of their most important ocean fortresses.

² *Alexandria*.—A city of Egypt, founded by and named after Alexander the Great.

³ *Cairo*.—The chief city of Egypt; 112 miles south-east of Alexandria. The Pyramids are on the opposite side of the Nile from Cairo.

⁴ *Aboukir*.—The bay is east of Alex-

andria, between Aboukir promontory and castle and the Rosetta mouth of the Nile.

⁵ *Acre*.—On the coast of Syria, near the foot of Mount Carmel. It is famous for its sieges. It was taken by the Crusaders in 1104; by the Saracens in 1187; by the Crusaders again, under Richard I., in 1191, after a siege of two years. It was retaken by the Saracens in 1291, when 60,000 Christians were put to death. It was seized by Ibrahim Pasha in 1832. In 1840 it was taken by England.

11. In no part of Europe did the evil example of the French Revolution bear more bitter fruit than in Ireland. In 1791 the society of *United Irishmen* agitated for the separation of Ireland from Great Britain. A secret correspondence was held with France; and, when all seemed ready, a day was fixed for the outbreak. But the Government had received timely notice of the plot, and seized the leaders. Then an aimless and **1798** unsuccessful rising took place. In Antrim and Down A.D. it was slightly felt, but it raged cruelly and fiercely for about two months in Wicklow and Wexford. In the Battle of **Vinegar Hill**¹ General Lake routed the Irish army (June 21).

12. This unsettled state of affairs showed the necessity of binding Ireland more closely to the Empire. After many debates and much opposition in Ireland, the **Union of the Parliaments** was accomplished. Thenceforward the people of Ireland were to be represented in the Imperial Parliament by thirty-two Lords and one hundred Commoners. The **Jan. 1, 1801** Union came into effect on the first day of 1801. For A.D. some time thereafter there was considerable discontent in Ireland.

13. At this time Pitt renounced his early views favourable to Parliamentary Reform. He thought, however, that the Union with Ireland would be more complete and lasting if the Roman Catholics were "emancipated;" that is to say, if they were allowed to sit in Parliament and to hold public offices, **1801** like their fellow-citizens. The King refused to listen to A.D. this proposal, and consequently **Pitt resigned**, after having held office for upwards of seventeen years. He was succeeded by Henry Addington (February).

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the French Revolution begin? What events immediately preceded it? What dynasty was overturned? What followed?

2. What effect had the ferment in England? What alarmed the friends of reform?

3. What discussions showed the effects of the Revolution? What was the object of the Bill of 1791? To

what famous quarrel did it lead? By what name is the Act known? What government did it set up in each province?

4. When was the Republic established in France? What was one of its first acts? What was the first important exploit of Napoleon Buonaparte?

5. What steps did the English Govern-

¹ *Vinegar Hill*, near Enniscorthy, 12 miles north-west of Wexford.

ment take? What island did Hood take? What victory had Lord Howe?

6. How was France strengthened in 1795? What States formed the First Coalition against her?

7. What were the demands of the mutinous seamen? How was the mutiny at the Nore quelled?

8. What two great naval victories were gained in 1797? By whom was each gained? What did each prevent?

9. What was Buonaparte's object in going to Egypt? Where did he defeat the Egyptians? By whom and where was his fleet destroyed?

10. What was the effect of this victory? Where did Buonaparte lead his army? Who drove him from Acre? Where was his army finally routed?

11. What measure was taken in 1791 by the Irish malcontents? How was the plot defeated? What proceedings followed? In what year was the Battle of Vinegar Hill fought?

12. When did the union of Ireland with Great Britain take place? How was Ireland represented in the Imperial Parliament?

13. What views did Pitt renounce at that time? What led to his resignation? Who succeeded him?

CHAPTER XII.

THE CONTINENTAL WARS.

1. Second Coalition against France.
2. The Armed Neutrality League.
3. The Treaty of Amiens.
4. Renewal of the War.
5. Pitt's second Ministry.
6. Third Coalition against France.

7. The Battle of Trafalgar.
8. The Death of Nelson.
9. The Death of Pitt.
10. Fourth Coalition against France—
The Berlin Decree.
11. Seizure of the Danish Fleet.

1. NELSON'S great victory of the Nile (1798) had enabled Pitt to form a **Second Coalition against France** (1799), in which England was joined by Russia, Austria, Portugal, Turkey, and Naples. Three months after that arrangement was completed, Buonaparte suddenly returned from the East, as has been mentioned already, overthrew the Directory, and established the Consulate. He and two others were made Consuls; but he was practically supreme, and, wishing to consolidate his government, he wrote to the King of England proposing peace. Pitt rejected his overtures, and the war continued.

2. Buonaparte then hurled his legions against Austria, humbled her on the fields of Marengo¹ and Hohenlinden,² and forced her to accept of terms of peace. Meanwhile **1801** he had succeeded in detaching Russia from the Coalition; and the Czar formed, with Prussia, Sweden, and Denmark, the **Armed Neutrality League** of the Northern

¹ Marengo.—Near Alessandria; 48 miles south-east of Turin.

² Hohenlinden.—In Bavaria.

Powers. England was thus left almost alone in the struggle with France.

3. The bombardment of **Copenhagen** by Lord Nelson gave a sharp rebuke to the Danes, and seriously damaged the **April 2,** Northern League. It was on this occasion that Nelson, **1801**

A.D. when Admiral Parker signalled to him to cease firing, turned his telescope toward the signal, but held it to his sightless eye, and went on with the attack, desiring his own signal for "closer action" to be nailed to the mast! A second and fatal blow to the League was the death of its originator, the Czar Paul. His successor, Alexander, formed a treaty with England, to which Denmark and Sweden acceded. The way being thus smoothed for a general peace, the Treaty of **Amiens**¹ was concluded and signed on the 27th of March 1802.

March 27, The parties to it were England, France, Spain, and **1802** Holland. The war had raised the National Debt of **A.D.** England to £520,000,000 sterling.

4. The peace was of short duration. The English Government resolved that **Malta** should not be evacuated until it was certain that Buonaparte would not seize it for himself. They proposed to hold it for ten years, and then to restore it to the natives. This *ultimatum*² being rejected, war with

1803 France was declared by the King on the 18th of May **A.D.** 1803. Four days later a decree of the First Consul threw into prison several thousand English tourists, whom the peace had induced to cross the Channel.

5. When the Addington Ministry broke down in 1804, the King commissioned **Pitt** to form a new Cabinet, under **May 10,** the special condition that Fox was to have no place in **1804** it. Pitt further agreed to postpone the question of the **A.D.** Roman Catholic disabilities. Fox led the Opposition in the Commons, and Grenville in the Lords. At the same time

1803.—A Mahratta War—the result of French intrigue—broke out in India. General Arthur Wellesley was victorious at Assaye (north-east of Bombay), and General Lake at Delhi. This war was fatal to French influence in India.

1803.—An insurrection broke out in Dublin, headed by Robert Emmet, a Protestant. He and seventeen of his accomplices were executed.

¹ *Amiens*.—On the Somme; 71 miles | ally regarded as only a truce. — ² *Ulti-*
north of Paris. The treaty was gener- | *matum*.—Last offer or condition.

Buonaparte was proclaimed Emperor of the French, with the title Napoleon I.

6. Pitt then formed—with Russia, Austria, and Sweden—his **Third Coalition against France**. France was joined by Spain. Napoleon meditated an invasion of England, before marching against Austria. His great difficulty was, that he could not get command of the Channel, so watchful were Nelson and the other English Admirals. To decoy Nelson from his post, Napoleon sent his fleet across the Atlantic, to threaten the West Indies. Nelson followed him. The French fleet, escaping Nelson's notice, suddenly returned to Spanish waters. Nelson returned to England to rest; but when he heard that the French and Spanish fleets had taken refuge in Cadiz harbour, where they were watched by Collingwood, he at once tendered his services to Pitt.

7. On the 14th September his flag ran to the top-mast of the *Victory* in Portsmouth harbour. On the 21st October he sighted a great line of vessels between him and the low dark headland of **Trafalgar**. They were the combined fleets of France and Spain, amounting to thirty-three sail of the line and seven smaller vessels. Nelson had twenty-seven first-rates and six others. In two columns, the one led by Nelson in the *Victory*, the other by Collingwood in the *Royal Sovereign*, the line of battle bore down on the enemy, whose ships had drifted out of a straight line into the form of an irregular crescent. Words were then signalled from the mast-head of the *Victory* which have ever since stirred the heart like a peal of national music—"England expects every man to do his duty."

Oct. 21,
1805
A.D.

8. At ten minutes past twelve **Collingwood** reached the centre of the enemy's line, which he succeeded in throwing into confusion. **Nelson** then directed his flag-ship, the *Victory*, against that horn of the French crescent which pointed towards Cadiz. In the midst of the action the rigging of the *Victory* became entangled with that of the *Redoubtable*. Every stage

1805.—Napoleon was crowned King of Italy, May; invaded Germany, August. General Mack surrendered to him at Ulm (Wurtemberg), October; Napoleon entered Vienna, November; defeated the Russians and Austrians at Austerlitz (Moravia), December. Austria made peace at Presburg. Prussia, hoping to obtain Hanover, joined France.

or cradle on the masts of the latter was filled with French riflemen, who fired at the officers and men on the decks of the *Victory*. A one-armed officer with stars on his breast, on the quarter-deck of the English ship, attracted the eye of a rifleman in the mizzen-top. He fired; and **Nelson fell**, shot through epaulet, shoulder, and spine. Three hours later he died, cheered in his last moments by the assurance of a complete victory. Ere the battle ceased, nineteen ships of the line had struck their flags. Nelson was buried in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, the whole nation mourning for its "darling hero."

9. In January 1806 **Pitt** succumbed to the toils of statesmanship. He was only forty-six years of age when he died. **Lord Grenville**¹ became Premier, with Fox as A.D. Foreign Secretary. In September Fox died, aged fifty-seven, and his body was laid in Westminster Abbey, beside that of his rival, Pitt. His place as Foreign Secretary was taken by Lord Howick, afterwards Earl Grey.

10. The new Foreign Secretary succeeded in forming a **Fourth Coalition against France**. It was joined by Russia, Prussia, and Saxony. At Prussia Napoleon resolved to strike the first blow. Within a week of the declaration of war, he inflicted on her the irretrievable defeat of **Jena**.² Napoleon then marched to Berlin, and issued thence his famous **Berlin Decree** against English commerce. This famous Decree was the beginning of Napoleon's Continental System. It declared the British Islands to be in a state of blockade, and ordered all Englishmen in countries occupied by the French to be seized as prisoners of war. The English Government retaliated by issuing **Orders in Council** prohibiting trade with France and her allies (1807).

11. Meantime Grenville had alarmed the King by proposing to admit Roman Catholics into the army and the navy; and the Ministry retired. The new Premier was the **Duke of Portland**, and **Canning** was Foreign Secretary. Canning saw with alarm the union of Napoleon and the Czar. He knew

1806.—London streets were first lighted with gas. Fulton, an American, launched the first regular steamboat on the Hudson river.

¹ *Lord Grenville*.—Son of the Honourable George Grenville, who was Premier from 1763 till 1765.

² *Jena*.—Fifty miles south-west of Leipzig. On the same day the Prussians were defeated 10 miles farther north.

that Napoleon meant to seize the fleets of Denmark and Portugal, and use them in his designs on England. With all speed and secrecy, therefore, he sent out an expedition to Denmark; and a second bombardment of Copenhagen forced the Danes to surrender their fleet.¹

Sept. 5,
1807
A.D.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was the Second Coalition against France formed? By what States? What led Buonaparte to make overtures for peace?

2. What country did he then attack? What victories were gained? What other country did Buonaparte detach from the Coalition? What league was then formed by the Czar?

3. How did Nelson damage the League? What order of Parker's did he disregard? What was the second blow to the Northern League? Where was a general peace concluded? Who were parties to it? To what did the National Debt of England then amount?

4. What led to the renewal of the war? How did Buonaparte treat the English tourists?

5. Who succeeded Addington as Premier? Who led the Opposition? What title did Buonaparte receive?

6. What States formed the Third Coalition against France? What did Napoleon again meditate? What prevented this? What did he do to remove the obstacle? What followed? What led Nelson once more to volunteer his services to the Government?

7. When did Nelson sight the enemy's

fleet? Where? What was the strength of each fleet? How was the English line disposed? What was Nelson's famous signal?

8. In what position was Collingwood's ship placed? What was the effect of his attack? Against what did Nelson direct his attack? With what ship did the *Victory* get entangled? With whom were its "cradles" filled? How had Nelson made himself conspicuous? Where was he wounded? When did he die? What news cheered him before he died? Where was he buried?

9. When did Pitt die? What Ministry succeeded? When did Fox die? Who succeeded him?

10. In what did the new Foreign Secretary succeed? Who joined it? Where was Prussia humbled? What did Napoleon issue from Berlin? What was its object? How did the English Government retaliate?

11. What caused the fall of the Grenville Ministry? Who was the new Premier? And Foreign Secretary? What alarmed Canning? Of what intention of Napoleon's was he aware? What did he therefore do? What was the result of the expedition?

CHAPTER XIII.

THE PENINSULAR WAR.

1. The French in Portugal.

2. The Spanish Crown.

3. Appeal to England.

4. Moore's Retreat.

5. Battle of Corunna.

6. Battle of Talavera.

7. The Walcheren Expedition.

8. The Heights of Torres Vedras.

9. The Burdett Riots—Reform.

10. Wellington at Madrid.

11. Death of Perceval.

12. Vittoria and Toulouse—First Peace of Paris.

13. The Duke of Wellington.

1. Portugal, which had always been the faithful ally of England, was reluctant to accept the Berlin Decree. Napoleon,

¹ The island of Heligoland (off the mouths of the Elbe and Weser) was then seized by England. Its cession was confirmed by treaty in 1814.

annoyed by this show of spirit, resolved to crush the little country by a single blow. He sent General Junot with 30,000 men to take possession of Lisbon. On his approach the Prince-Regent¹ and the Royal Family of Portugal sailed to Brazil. Junot then occupied Portugal in the name of the French Emperor.

2. Meanwhile a quarrel was disturbing the **Royal Family of Spain**. Ferdinand, the heir-apparent to the crown, quarrelled with his father, Charles IV. Partly by artifice and partly by menace, both father and son were induced to resign all their rights to the Spanish throne into the hands of Napoleon. He then made his brother Joseph, who had for some time held the throne of Naples, King of Spain.

3. The national party in Spain rose in arms against this usurpation, and appealed to England for help. Hence **1808** arose the **Peninsular War**, in which Napoleon's ambition received its first serious check. Sir Arthur Wellesley, already distinguished in Indian wars, was sent to the Peninsula with 10,000 men. Landing at **Mondego**² Bay in Portugal, he defeated Marshal Junot at **Vimiera**³ on the 21st of August.

4. Through jealousy at home, Wellesley was recalled. His successor, Sir Hew Dalrymple, allowed the French to evacuate Portugal with all their arms and warlike stores. This foolish lenience cost Sir Hew his command, and **Sir John Moore** took his place. Deceived by Spanish promises, Moore led his army into the heart of Leon; but there he received the alarming news that Napoleon was master of Madrid, and that Marshal Soult was marching to attack the English army. There was no course open to the English leader but a retreat towards the shore of Galicia.⁴

5. When the English, famished and rag-clad, reached **Corunna**,⁵ their ships had not yet arrived, and Soult was

¹ *Prince-Regent*.—His mother, Queen Maria I., had fallen into a state of melancholy and derangement in 1792. On her death in 1818, he succeeded her as John VI., and returned to Lisbon in 1821.

² *Mondego Bay*.—At the mouth of the river Mondego, on the coast of Portugal,

nearly midway between the Douro and the Tagus.

³ *Vimiera*.—Thirty-five miles north of Lisbon.

⁴ *Galicia*.—The north-western corner of Spain.

⁵ *Corunna*.—On the north-western coast of Galicia. For a detailed ac-

close upon them. Facing round, they moved to meet him, and won a brilliant and decided victory. Moore, Jan. 16, killed by a cannon-ball, was buried on the ramparts of Corunna. 1809 A.D.

6. Sir Arthur Wellesley then again took command of the army. Invading Spain, he won a great battle at Talavera,¹ on the banks of the Tagus. For this vic- July 28.



tory he was created Viscount Wellington. But the approaches to Madrid being covered by three French armies, he was obliged to fall back on the frontiers of Portugal.

1809.—A great victory at Wagram (12 miles from Vienna) laid Austria at Napoleon's feet.

count of the battle, see ROYAL READER
No. VI, pp. 18-21.

¹ Talavera.—Seventy-five miles south-
west of Madrid.

7. To aid Austria in her struggle against Napoleon, the ill-fated **Walcheren**¹ expedition was sent to the coast of the Netherlands. Its object was to seize the French batteries on the Scheldt, and destroy the naval works at Antwerp; but on the marshy island of Walcheren disease swept off the troops in thousands, and only a wreck of the splendid force returned to England in December. Canning blamed Castlereagh for this failure, and demanded his dismissal from the Ministry. A duel followed, in which Canning got a slight flesh-wound. This broke up the Ministry, and **Spencer Perceval** became Premier.

8. Portugal was the scene of the next Peninsular campaign. The French strove to drive the English to their ships; but in the Battle of **Busaco**² (September 27) Wellington repulsed Massena with heavy loss. Then, retreating to the heights of **Torres Vedras**,³ some distance north of Lisbon, he took up an impregnable position. Massena then retreated toward Spain.

9. During the greater part of the year 1810, the citizens of London were kept in a ferment by the **Burdett Riots**. Sir Francis Burdett, who had revived the question of Parliamentary Reform in the previous year, published a pamphlet in which he spoke contemptuously of the House of Commons. For this he was arrested amid great excitement, his house in London having to be stormed by constables before he could be captured. During all the time that Burdett was confined in the Tower (from April till June), public meetings were held in the chief towns.

1811.—George, Prince of Wales, was installed as Regent, February. The King, toward the end of 1810, had become incurably insane, and continued so till the end of his reign.

1811.—Destruction of machinery in factories by rioters called Luddites began at Nottingham in November. They took their name from Ned Lud, an idiot, who broke some frames in a fit of passion. The rioters supposed that the introduction of machinery would keep them out of employment. The riots continued till 1818. Many of the rioters were hanged.

¹ *Walcheren* (pronounced Wal'cherën).—An island in the province of Zeeland (Holland), between the east and the west Scheldt.

² *Busaco*.—Thirty miles north-east of

Mondego Bay.

³ *Torres Vedras*.—A village 27 miles north-west of Lisbon. Wellington's line of defences extended from the Tagus to the Atlantic.

10. Wellington invaded Spain for the third time in 1812. *Ciudad Rodrigo* and *Badajoz*, great fortresses which guarded the western frontier of Spain, soon fell before him. The defeat of Marmont at *Salamanca*¹ opened the way to **Madrid**, into which the victor led his troops on the 12th of August; but the approach of two French armies made it advisable for him to retreat on Portugal. July 22, 1812 A.D.

11. In the spring of this year (1812) the Premier, Mr. Perceval, was shot in the lobby of the House of Commons by a merchant named Bellingham, whose business had been ruined by the war. The **Earl of Liverpool** then formed a Ministry, in which Mr. Robert Peel was Chief Secretary for Ireland.

12. Step by step the French were driven toward their own frontier. The decisive battle was fought at **Vitoria**² in Biscay. Then Wellington, entering France, scattered the remnant of Soult's army on the 10th of April 1814 in the Battle of **Toulouse**.³ Six days earlier, Napoleon, routed in the great Battle of *Leipsic*, and followed even into Paris by a victorious host of Russians, Swedes, Germans, Austrians, and Prussians, had abdicated the throne of France. The Bourbons returned to Paris and Madrid. On the 30th of May 1814 the First Peace of **Paris**⁴ was signed. The fallen Emperor retired to the island of Elba.⁵ June 21, 1813 A.D.

1812.—Napoleon invaded Russia. He entered Moscow in September; but the Russians set fire to the city, and Napoleon was forced to retreat. In the return march, the greater part of the French army was destroyed.

1812.—The United States declared war against England. The war originated in Napoleon's Continental System. The right of search for deserters from the navy, claimed by England, aggravated the ill feeling of the Americans. The English Ministry would yield nothing, and war ensued. The most striking incident of the war was the ocean duel between the English *Shannon* and the American *Chesapeake*, in which the latter, though the larger vessel, was boarded and taken in fifteen minutes. The Peace of Ghent (December 1814) put an end to the war without settling the points in dispute.

¹ *Salamanca*.—One hundred and ten miles north-west of Madrid.

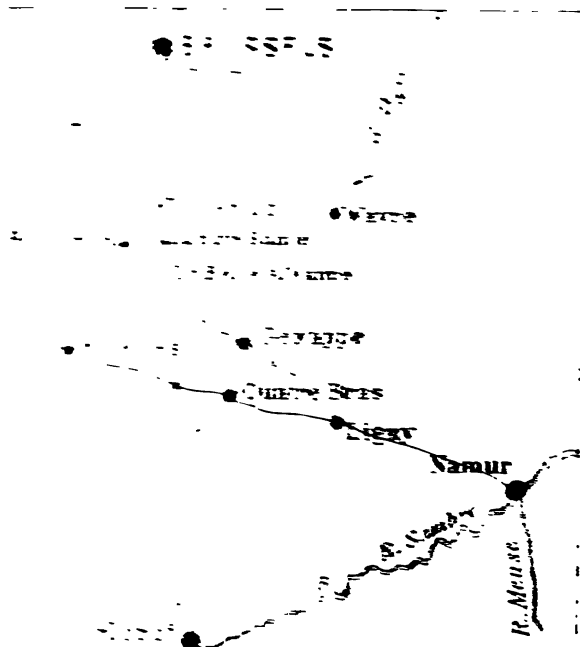
² *Vitoria*.—One hundred and twenty miles north-west of Saragossa, and 80 south of Bilbao, on the Bay of Biscay.

³ *Toulouse*.—A city in the south of France, 139 miles south-east of Bordeaux, and 150 from the Bidassoa. It was the capital of the old province of

Languedoc.

⁴ *First Peace of Paris*.—By this treaty the boundaries of France were to be the same as at January 1, 1792. England retained Malta, Tobago, St. Lucia, and the Isle of France (Mauritius).

⁵ *Elba*.—In the Mediterranean, off the coast of Italy, between Corsica and Tuscany.



began to pour out of Brussels toward Quatre Bras,¹ an important point twenty miles off. There they were attacked on the 16th by Marshal Ney, who strove without success to force the position. But on the same day Napoleon drove the Prussians from Ligny in the direction of Wavre, and sent Grouchy in pursuit with 35,000 men, to cut them off from a union with the army of Wellington.

4. This defeat of the Prussians obliged Wellington to fall back on the village of Waterloo.² Even there Blücher was distant from him nearly a day's march; and Napoleon exulted in the

¹ Quatre Bras. From Ligny. — Twenty miles south of Brussels, 10 from Waterloo, and 7 north-west of Ligny.

² Waterloo. — About 10 miles south of Brussels.

prospect of victory, for he had got, as he thought, between the allied armies, and all that now remained was to defeat them in turn.

5. The Battle of **Waterloo**—called by the French *St. Jean*¹—was fought on Sunday, the 18th. Rain had fallen in torrents during the previous night, and it still continued to drizzle when the troops arose from their comfortless bivouac. The armies faced each other on two gentle slopes, across which ran the high road to Brussels. The army of Wellington numbered 70,000—that of Napoleon about 80,000 men. June 18, 1815
Between, in a slight hollow, lay the farm-house *La Haye Sainte*;² and on an angle of the northern slope, A.D.
serving as a key to the British position, was *Hougoumont*,³ an old red-brick chateau: around these buildings the severest fighting took place.

6. Shortly after eleven o'clock, the first shot was fired from the English guns. The French artillery replied; and then followed such a cannonade as had never been heard on battle-field before. The French battalions dashed on *Hougoumont*, which was held by the Guards. Around this chateau the battle raged furiously for hours. The French took the wood, broke the gate to pieces, but could not withstand the withering fire from the house, and the rain of shells from English howitzers.⁴

7. About four in the afternoon, the head of the **Prussian column** under Bulow began to emerge from the wood to the east. Menacing the right flank of the French position, they obliged Napoleon to make his last desperate effort. This was the advance of the **Old Guard**, which had been kept in reserve in the rear of the French lines. On they went under Ney's command up the face of the ridge near *La Haye Sainte*. When they were within fifty yards of the top, the English Guards,

¹ *St. Jean*.—From *Mont St. Jean*, a slight eminence in front of Waterloo.

² *La Haye Sainte* (Pron. *La Hay Saint*).—South of the village of Waterloo, on the road from Waterloo to Quatre Bras. Opposite to it and on the same road, but within the French lines, was the farm-house of *La Belle All-*

ance. *Mont St. Jean* was between *La Haye Sainte* and Waterloo.

³ *Hougoumont*.—South-west of Waterloo, on the road from Waterloo to Nivelles.—*Chateau* (pron. *shau-toh'*), a French castle; a country mansion.

⁴ *Howitzers*.—Short, light cannon, capable of throwing heavy projectiles.

who had till then lain on the ground, started to their feet and levelled their muskets. Then there was poured in so fearful a fire, that the columns were driven in rout down the hill. "They are mixed!" cried the fallen Corsican, as he rode away to the rear.

8. "Let the whole line advance!" was Wellington's final order, as he galloped to the front. Then the great mass, which with patient resolution had stood on the plateau since early morning, swept forward, and drove the relics of the Grand Army toward the frontier of France. During the three eventful days (June 16, 17, 18) 40,000 French, 16,000 Prussians, and 13,000 British and Germans were killed.

9. Paris, where he abdicated in favour of his son; Rochefort,¹ whence he tried to escape to America; the Roads of Aix,² where, on the quarter-deck of the *Bellerophon*, he cast himself on the mercy of England; the lonely rock of *St. Helena*,³ where for six years he dwelt, imprisoned by the Atlantic waves,—these are the last scenes in the history of Napoleon I. He died on the 3rd of May 1821; and in 1840 his remains were removed to France.

10. By the Second Treaty of Paris, the territory of France, distended far beyond its natural limits by the ambition of Napoleon, collapsed into a kingdom similar in size to that of 1790. The National Debt of England had now reached the enormous sum of £880,000,000. But fast as the debt grew, still faster grew the wealth of the cotton-mills, where steam-power had come to the aid of the spinning-frame and the hand-loom. Without these it might have been impossible for England to bear the long-continued strain and the heavy burden.

QUESTIONS.—1. What intelligence interrupted the Vienna Congress?

2. What measures were immediately taken by the Allies?

3. What was Wellington's plan? How

did Napoleon endeavour to defeat this plan? Where did Wellington receive the news of Napoleon's advance? Where were the Prussians? What two battles took place on June 16th?

¹ *Rochefort*.—A maritime town on the west coast of France; 7 miles from the mouth of the Charente, and 18 south-east of La Rochelle.

² *Roads of Aix*.—Off the island of Aix; 14 miles north-west of Rochefort.

³ *St. Helena*.—An island in the South Atlantic, 1,200 miles from the coast of Africa. Longwood, where Napoleon resided, is in the interior of the island. The house and tomb were purchased by the French Government.

4. To what place did Wellington retreat? What made this necessary?

5. On what day was the Battle of Waterloo fought? Describe the position and numbers of the two armies. Where did the severest fighting take place?

6. When was the first shot fired? What place did the French battalions attack? How were they repulsed?

7. When did the Prussians begin to appear? What did this force Napoleon to do? Who commanded the Old Guard? In what attitude did the English Guards await them? When did

they start to their feet? What was the result?

8. What was Wellington's final order? How had the patience of the English been tried? How many fell during the three days?

9. What were the last scenes in the history of Napoleon? When did he die?

10. What treaty finally closed the war? When was it signed? How did it affect the French territory? To what sum had the National Debt grown? How was England enabled to bear the burden?

CHAPTER XV.

PARLIAMENTARY REFORM.

1. Great Distress in England.
2. The Agitation for Reform.
3. Excitement in the Country.
4. Peterloo.
5. Death of George III.
6. The Cato Street Conspiracy.
7. Free Trade and Roman Catholic Emancipation.

8. Death of Castlereagh.
9. Repeal of the Test and Corporation Acts.
10. The Roman Catholic Relief Bill Passed.
11. Earl Grey Premier.
12. The Reform Bill Passed.
13. The Three Great Changes.

1. THE Proclamation of Peace was followed by **great distress** in England. Commerce was almost stagnant. The weight of taxation was excessive. Food was scarce, and therefore dear. There was little demand for labour, and therefore wages were low. Nevertheless the Government, in order to **1815** favour the English farmers and land-owners, passed a **A.D. Corn-Act**, forbidding the importation of foreign grain until the price of wheat¹ had reached eighty shillings per quarter. This led to riots in the larger towns, which were attended with great destruction of property, especially of machinery, and in some cases with loss of life.

1815.—England assumed complete sovereignty of the Island of Ceylon, which had been ceded to her by the Peace of Amiens in 1802.

1816.—Algiers (North Africa) was bombarded by Lord Exmouth. The Dey or Governor surrendered, and agreed to set free all Christian slaves, and to seize no more. Algiers was seized by France in 1830.

¹ *Wheat*.—During the past ten years the price of wheat has averaged 60s. per quarter. Its highest price since

1815 was 96s. 11d. in 1817. The maximum of the century was 120s. 6d. in 1812.

2. Then arose the cry for a Reform of the House of Commons. The agitation thus resumed,—for it had been in progress before the war began,—continued during the next seventeen years, and ended in the passing of the Reform Act of 1832.

3. The price of wheat continued to rise steadily after the peace. It reached its maximum in 1817—a year of gloom and distress. The Prince-Regent was fired at when returning from the opening of Parliament. No fewer than six hun-

1817 dred petitions for reform—some of them with 30,000

A.D. signatures—were sent to Parliament. In spite of a Royal Proclamation against rioting and unlawful assemblages, both riots and seditious meetings increased. The *Habeas Corpus* Act was suspended; but the riots still continued, and at Derby three of the ringleaders were executed. In May, Burdett introduced in the House of Commons a motion for Reform. It obtained only 77 supporters, while 265 voted for its rejection. Toward the end of the year the death of the Princess Charlotte,¹ only child of the Regent, caused deep national sorrow, and revived for a time the loyalty of the people.

4. During the next two years, the excitement and the discontent continued to spread. In 1818 Burdett's resolution for universal suffrage and annual Parliaments obtained only two votes in the House of Commons. A crisis came in

1819 1819. Riots by the unemployed were common in the

A.D. manufacturing towns. Public meetings in favour of Parliamentary Reform were held everywhere. In St. Peter's Field, Manchester, 100,000 persons assembled to petition for reform. They were dispersed by the military, but not until several had been killed and hundreds wounded. The affair was derisively called the Battle of **Peterloo**.

5. For writing a letter condemning the "Manchester massacre," Sir Francis Burdett was fined £2,000, and was imprisoned for three months. An unusually severe winter added greatly to the sufferings of the poor. In the midst of these troubles the **Princess Victoria**, daughter of the Duke of Kent,

1819.—The first steam voyage was made across the Atlantic by the *Savannah*.

¹ *Princess Charlotte*.—She was the wife of Prince Leopold, afterwards (1830) King of the Belgians. As only child of George, Prince of Wales, the Prince-Regent, she was heir-apparent to the English throne.

fourth son of the King, was born at Kensington Palace (May 24). On the 23rd January following, the Duke of Kent died; and on the 29th the old King, blind as well as insane, also breathed his last. His age was eighty-one, and 1820 his reign of sixty years is the longest in the long list of A.D. English Sovereigns.

6. **GEORGE IV.**¹—The Prince-Regent, who had already ruled for nine years, now became King. A few days after his accession, a plot to murder the Ministers, when they were assembled at an official dinner, was discovered by the police. On the evening fixed for the crime, the police arrested the conspirators in a hay-loft in **Cato Street**, near the Edgeware Road. Thistlewood, the leader, and four others were executed; the rest were transported.

7. The depressed state of commerce still caused much suffering. Complaint was made of the restrictions to which trade was subjected. Thus, side by side with the demand for Parliamentary Reform, there arose the demand for **Free Trade**; and a third question which agitated the public mind at the same time was **Roman Catholic Emancipation**.

8. Neither the prevailing distress nor the threatening attitude of a large section of the people had any effect on the Government or on Parliament. In February 1822, the Commons rejected a motion, proposed by Mr. Brougham, for inquiry into the causes of the national distress. In April it threw out Lord John Russell's motion for Reform. Toward the end of the year, the Marquis of Londonderry—better 1822 known as Lord Castlereagh—committed suicide. He A.D. was succeeded as Foreign Secretary by **Mr. Canning**, under whose influence the Ministry began to assume a more liberal tone.

1820.—A Bill of Pains and Penalties against Queen Caroline, for alleged immorality, was introduced in the House of Lords. The Queen was defended by Brougham and Denman, and the Bill was abandoned amid popular rejoicing. She died in 1821. Riots took place at her funeral.

1824.—War was declared against the Burmese, in consequence of outrages on the English settlements in the East, and Rangoon was taken. The province of Aracan was seized in the following year; and in 1826 Aracan and the coasts of Tenasserim were ceded to England by treaty.

¹ *George IV.*—Son of George III. Married Caroline of Brunswick. Reigned 10 years.

9. In January 1828, the **Duke of Wellington** became Premier, with Peel as Home, and Palmerston as War Secretary. In April the **Test and Corporation Acts**¹ of Charles II. were repealed, on the motion of Lord John Russell, although the measure was opposed both by Peel and by Palmerston. This was the first triumph of the party of progress.²

10. An incident which occurred this year brought the question of the Roman Catholic claims to a crisis. Daniel O'Connell, the great champion of Emancipation, and himself a Roman Catholic, was elected member for Clare county. Government saw that his exclusion from the House would inevitably be followed by a rebellion in Ireland. Wellington and Peel therefore withdrew their opposition, and actually carried through Parliament the **Roman Catholic Relief Bill**. Peel's change of side caused much surprise. His plea was, that the peace of the country was in danger. This was a second triumph to the popular party. On the 26th June 1830, George IV. died, aged 68. He was succeeded by his brother William, Duke of Clarence.

11. **WILLIAM IV.**³—The revolutions of 1830 in France and Belgium gave a new impetus to the agitation for a reform of the House of Commons. The new Parliament, which met in October, contained a large propor-

1825.—A rage for speculation in joint-stock companies brought on a commercial crisis; 60 banks stopped payment; hundreds of merchants became insolvent. The first railway (Stockton and Darlington) was opened for passenger traffic. The first steam voyage to India was made by the *Enterprise*, Captain Johnson.

1827.—The Turkish and Egyptian fleets were destroyed by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia, under Admiral Codrington, at Navarino (south-west of Morea).

1830.—The Liverpool and Manchester Railway, the first locomotive line in the world, was completed and opened.

1831.—Asiatic cholera broke out at Sunderland. Its ravages continued for nearly a year, sweeping off 60,000 persons.

¹ *The Test and Corporation Acts.*—The Test Act (1673) required military officers to be members of the English Church. The Corporation Act (1661) required the same of officers in corporations.

² The insertion, in the new Declaration prescribed by the Act, of the

words, "On the true faith of a Christian," had the unintentional effect of excluding Jews from Parliament till 1858.

³ *William IV.*—Third son of George III. Married Adelaide of Saxe-Meiningen. Reigned 7 years. His two daughters died in infancy.

tion of Liberal members. The Duke of Wellington then resigned, and a Whig Ministry was formed, of which the chief members were **Earl Grey** and Lord John Russell.

12. Two attempts to pass a Reform Bill in 1831 failed. Nothing daunted, the Government brought in a third Bill before the close of the year (December 12). It was passed by the Commons; but the opposition in the Lords grew so strong that Earl Grey proposed a creation of Liberal Peers. The King objected, and Grey resigned. The Duke of Wellington was again called on to form a Ministry; but this he failed to do. Earl Grey was then recalled; the Reform Bill **1832** was reintroduced, and, as about one hundred Tory Peers A.D. absented themselves from the division in the House of Lords, the Bill became law (June 7). The Reform Bills of Scotland and Ireland received the royal assent on the 17th of July, and on the 7th of August.

13. Three great changes were thus made: (1.) The right of sending members to Parliament was taken away from many small and decayed places. (2.) Several towns, such as Birmingham and Manchester, which had lately grown into first-class cities, now received the right of sending members to Parliament. (3.) The franchise, or right of voting, was extended more widely among the middle classes.

QUESTIONS.—1. By what was the peace followed in England? What Act did the Government pass in 1815? To what did this lead?

2. What cry then arose? When had the agitation begun? How and when did it end?

3. When was the price of wheat at its highest? What alarming incidents occurred that year? How many votes did Burdett's motion for Reform obtain? Who died toward the end of the year?

4. In what year did a crisis come? Describe the affair of "Peterloo."

5. For what was Burdett punished? Who was born in the midst of these troubles? When did her father die? When did George III. die?

6. Who succeeded to the throne? What conspiracy was discovered a few days after his accession? Where was

the seizure made? What was the fate of the conspirators?

7. What two questions occupied the public mind besides that of Parliamentary Reform?

8. What motions were proposed by Brougham and Russell in 1822? How were they treated? What minister died in 1822? Who succeeded him? What effect had his influence?

9. Who became Premier in 1828? What Acts were repealed in that year?

10. What incident brought the question of Roman Catholic Emancipation to a crisis? What induced Wellington and Peel to withdraw their opposition? How did Peel defend his conduct? When did George IV. die? Who succeeded him?

11. Where did revolutions take place in 1830? What effect had they in Eng-

land? What led Wellington to resign? Who was next Premier?

12. How often was the Reform Bill introduced in 1831? How did Earl Grey propose to overcome the opposition in the House of Lords? What followed? Who was called on to form a

Ministry? What was the result? Who was recalled to the Ministry? When did the Reform Bill become law?

13. What three great changes were made by the passing of the Reform Bills?

CHAPTER XVI.

FINANCIAL REFORM.

1. Emancipation of Slaves.
2. The New Poor Law.
3. The Municipal Reform Act.
4. Accession of Victoria.
5. Rebellion in the Canadas.
6. The Anti-corn-law League.
7. The Chartists.
8. Peel Premier.

9. The Income Tax.
10. The New Tariff.
11. Repeal Agitation in Ireland.
12. The Conquest of Sindh.
13. The First Sikh War.
14. The Potato Blight in Ireland.
15. Repeal of the Corn Laws.
16. Resignation of Peel.

1. **THE** first Reformed House of Commons met in February 1833. The first question which occupied its attention was the **Emancipation of the Slaves** in the English Colonies. The slave-trade had been abolished in 1807, on the motion **1833** of Mr. Fox; but it was not until twenty-six years later **A.D.** that slavery itself was abolished. £20,000,000 was granted to slave-owners as compensation. In 1838 eight hundred thousand slaves received their freedom. Wilberforce, who had begun the agitation forty-five years before, lived just long enough to see the triumph of his life's work. He died in 1833.

2. A difference in the Cabinet on an Irish question led to its reconstruction in 1834. Earl Grey retired, and **Viscount Melbourne** became Premier. The chief work of this Ministry was a new **Poor Law**. The new Act placed the local **1834** boards under the superintendence of Government, and **A.D.** ordered that no aid should be given to able-bodied paupers, unless they chose to go to the poor-houses, and work for their living there.

3. The chief measure of the following session was the **Municipal Reform Act**, by which the Town Councils of **1835** England and Wales were reformed. To the ratepayers **A.D.** and freemen was given the right of appointing the

councillors, who elected the magistrates from among themselves. Similar changes were afterwards made in Scotland and Ireland. The King died on the 20th of June 1837, aged seventy-two. He left no children.

4. **VICTORIA.**¹—The young Queen had just completed her eighteenth year. The change of Sovereign strengthened the Ministry. Instead of the influence of the Crown **1837** being used against it, as in the late reign, the Sovereign **A.D.** was now dependent on the Premier for guidance and advice.

5. One of the earliest events of the new reign was a **rebellion in the Canadas** (December). For years the Colonists had been demanding free institutions and responsible government. The extreme reformers in the two Canadas now coalesced, and rebellion followed. It was short-lived. Before the end of December, the leaders either had fled or had been lodged in jail. These events, however, convinced the English Parliament of the necessity of making concessions. To strengthen the Government of the colony, a **Union Act** was passed in 1840, by which the two Canadas were made one province. In 1848 responsible government was established not only in Canada, but also in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.

6. There were loud complaints in England at this time of the hardships suffered by the mass of the population in consequence of the laws restricting the importation of corn. The movement by which these laws were at last repealed had **1838** its origin in 1838. Then was formed the famous **Anti- A.D.** corn-law League, with Richard Cobden and John Bright as its leaders. There followed a great agitation all over the country.

7. About this time the proceedings of a society of men who called themselves **Chartists** began to attract notice. They took their name from "The people's Charter," a document in which they demanded six sweeping changes in the Constitution :—

¹ *Victoria.* — Alexandrina-Victoria, daughter of Edward, Duke of Kent, fourth son of George III. Married Albert, Prince of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha. Since the *Salle Law* permits no woman to wear the crown of Hanover, by the

accession of Victoria that State was severed from the British dominions; and Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, and brother of William IV., became its King. It was annexed to Prussia in 1866.

- (1.) Universal Suffrage—that every man should have a vote.
 (2.) Vote by ballot. (3.) Annual Parliaments. (4.) That
1838 Members of Parliament should be paid. (5.) That
 A.D. every man, whether owning property or not, should be
 eligible for a seat in Parliament. (6.) That the country
 should be divided into electoral districts.

8. Lord Melbourne resigned in 1839, on finding that his majority in the House of Commons had become very small. Sir Robert Peel, however, declined to take office, as the Queen objected to the removal of the ladies of the bed-chamber,
1841 and Lord Melbourne returned to power. In 1841 Peel
 A.D. carried a vote of want of confidence in the Ministry. Parliament was dissolved, and in the new House of Commons the Conservatives,¹ as the Tories had come to be called since 1830, had a majority of 80. Melbourne at once resigned, and Sir Robert Peel again became Premier.

9. The first question to which Peel turned his attention was the modification of the Corn Laws. In 1842 he carried
1842 a *Sliding-Scale Act*,² by which the duty ranged from
 A.D. one pound to one shilling, as the price of wheat rose from 51s. to 73s. per quarter. This, however, did not satisfy the Free-traders, and the agitation continued to gather strength. To meet the growing deficiency in the national revenue, Peel proposed and carried an **Income Tax** of sevenpence per pound. This, he estimated, would not only make up the deficiency, but

1839.—England, to counteract the influence of Russia, sent an army to Afghanistan to dethrone Dost Mohammed. The army, in retreating from Cabul to Jelalabad, was almost annihilated; but General Pollock forced the Khyber Pass (between Cabul and the Punjab) and relieved the survivors. The English again captured Cabul (1842); Dost Mohammed made alliance with England (1855).

1839.—An English fleet stormed Acre (Syria), and forced the Pasha of Egypt to withdraw his troops from Syria. England interfered because the war between Turkey and Egypt had interrupted the Black Sea trade.

1840.—War was declared against China. The war originated in an edict of the Chinese authorities forbidding the importation of opium, the use of which is very injurious to the natives. The edict was resisted in the interest of English merchants. Peace was concluded in 1842. England gained Hong-kong, and the right to trade with Canton and four other ports, besides an indemnity of four million sterling.

¹ *Conservatives*.—So called because they profess to *conserve* the Constitution from change.

² *Sliding-Scale*.—So called because the tax was gradually reduced as the price of corn rose.

also leave a surplus. This surplus he proposed to devote to the reduction of customs duties on imported articles.

10. With this view he introduced a **New Tariff**, in which the duty on the raw materials used in manufactures was reduced to a merely nominal amount, and the duty on manufactured articles was such as to enable the foreign producer to compete fairly with the home manufacturer. This was the beginning of a new financial policy, which has greatly extended the commerce of the country, and has afforded new openings for industry.

11. In the following year the agitation in Ireland for the **Repeal of the Union** reached its crisis. Monster meetings were held at several places famous in Irish history. **1843** These were in some instances dispersed by the military. A.D. O'Connell¹ and nine others were brought to trial, and sentenced to imprisonment; but they were soon released.

12. War had, in the meantime, broken out again in India. During the Afghan War (1842), **Sindh** was occupied by English troops. The *Ameers* or rulers of Sindh objected to this, and an attack was made on the English Residency at Hyderabad. Major Outram, who had only 100 men, retreating skilfully after a gallant defence, joined the main army under Sir Charles Napier. A few days later the English won the Battle of Meeanee;² and Sindh was annexed to the British dominions.

13. North-east of Sindh lies the great district of the Punjab, which derives its name from Persian words meaning "five waters."³ The country was then held by the **Sikhs**—the Highlanders of India. The death of one of their princes in 1839 caused a bloody strife for the throne. In the course of it, an unprovoked attack was made on an English force stationed at Moodkee,⁴ in which the Sikhs were repulsed with loss. The English army, under Sir Hugh Gough and Sir Henry Hardinge, then moved on the Sikh

Dec. 18,
1845
A.D.

1843.—The Rebecca Riots against toll-bars disturbed Wales. Every turnpike in South Wales was destroyed.

¹ O'Connell.—His influence declined after this. He died at Genoa in 1847.

² Meeanee.—In Sindh; 6 miles north of Hyderabad.

³ Five waters.—It is watered by five rivers—namely, the Indus, and its trib-

utaries, the Jhelum, the Chenab, the Ravee, and the Sutlej.

⁴ Moodkee.—A village 65 miles south-east of Lahore. For this, and other places of importance in the Sikh War, see the Map.

camp at *Ferozeshah*, and took it after two days' hard fighting. The victory of **Sobraon** in February 1846 opened the path of the English soldiers to Lahore, the capital of the Punjab, where a treaty was signed.



14. In 1845 a blight fell on the **potato crop**, which caused sore famine and fever in Ireland during the ensuing winter. Partly by death and partly by emigration, the population was lessened by nearly two million. These events gave a new impetus to the agitation for the repeal of the Corn Laws. Sir Robert Peel had now adopted Free Trade principles, and in the end of 1845 he resigned, in order to give those who had advocated these principles an opportunity of introducing a measure.

15. Lord John Russell attempted to form a Ministry, but failed. Sir Robert Peel then resumed office; and in January 1846 he introduced a measure for the **Repeal of the Corn Laws**, which became law in June. Peel's change of side for the second time alienated from him many of his supporters. These were for a time known as the **Protectionist party**, under the leadership of Lord Stanley, afterwards Earl of Derby.

16. On the very day on which the Lords passed the Repeal Act, the Ministry was defeated on an Irish question by a com-

bination of the Whigs and the Protectionists. Peel at once resigned; and Lord John Russell became Premier, and continued in office during the next six years. Till his death¹ in 1850, Peel gave an independent support to the Whig Ministers in furthering the Free Trade policy which he had inaugurated.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the first Reformed House of Commons meet? What was the first question which occupied it? What was done in 1807? When was slavery abolished? How much did Emancipation cost the country? How many slaves were emancipated? When?

2. Who became Premier in 1834? What was the chief work of his Ministry? What were the chief features of that Act?

3. What was the chief measure of the session of 1835? When did King William die?

4. Who succeeded to the throne? How old was she? What effect had the change of Sovereign on the Ministry?

5. When did the Canadian rebellion take place? What were the demands of the Colonists? What was the issue of the rising? What Act was passed in 1840? What was done in 1848?

6. What laws in England gave rise to loud complaints? What League was formed to secure their removal? When? Who were its leaders?

7. Who were the Chartists? What were the six changes demanded?

8. What prevented Peel from taking office in 1839? When did he become Premier?

9. What Act was passed in 1842? Why did Peel introduce the Income Tax? What did he propose to do with the surplus?

10. What were the chief proposals in Peel's New Tariff? What has been the effect of the change of policy?

11. When did the Repeal agitation in Ireland reach its crisis? Who were seized and punished?

12. Describe the circumstances which led to the conquest of Sindh. Who was the conqueror? What victory completed the conquest?

13. Describe the Punjab. Who were its inhabitants? What outrage did they commit? What victory did the English gain in 1845? What battle was fought in 1846? With what result?

14. What calamity befell Ireland in 1845? What agitation did it encourage? To what views had Peel been converted? What did he therefore do?

15. When were the Corn Laws repealed? Who introduced the measure? What party did the Conservatives who opposed Peel form? Who was their leader?

16. What led to Peel's overthrow? Who succeeded him? How did Peel act during the rest of his life? When did he die?

CHAPTER XVII.

COLONIAL PROGRESS.

1. Responsible Government in Canada.
2. The Young Ireland Party.
3. The Second Sikh War.
4. The First Great Exhibition.

5. The Australian Colonies.
6. The First Derby Ministry.
7. Death of Wellington.
8. The Aberdeen Ministry.

1. THE principle of **Responsible Government**, for which the reformers in the North American provinces had been struggling

¹ *Death of Peel.*—On June 29, 1850, riding in London, and his collar-bone was broken. He died on July 2.

so long and so determinedly, was fairly established in 1847, not only in Canada, but also in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. In that year **Earl Grey**, as Colonial Secretary, **1847** wrote a despatch in which the rule was distinctly laid A.D. down that those who directed the policy of a province should hold office only as long as they had the confidence of the majority of the representative branch. The rule was first put in practice in 1848, and it has been acted on ever since, with the most beneficial results.

2. The year 1848 was stormy over all Europe. In France there was a **third Revolution**. There were tumults at **1848** Vienna, Berlin, and Rome. There were Chartist riots A.D. in England. In Ireland, the more violent members of the Repeal Society, headed by William Smith O'Brien, had formed themselves into the **Young Ireland Party**, and were bent on war. A feeble rising under O'Brien and others took place in Tipperary: it was suppressed by a few policemen.

3. A **second Sikh War** began late in 1848. It originated in a rebellion at Mooltan, where two English officers were murdered. After gaining a victory of doubtful value at *Chillianwalla* on the 13th of January 1849, Lord Gough **1849** utterly routed an immense host of Sikhs at **Goojerat** A.D. on the 21st of February. The Punjab was shortly afterwards annexed to the Indian Government.

4. The **Great Exhibition** of the Industry of all Nations, held in London in 1851, was a striking proof of the development which the resources of the country had lately **1851** undergone. A palace of iron and glass was raised in A.D. Hyde Park, enclosing many acres with its walls, and overarching lofty trees with its crystal roof. There were gathered specimens of the industrial products of almost every land, while visitors from all parts of the world thronged the courts of the vast building from day to day. Similar Exhibitions have since been held at London repeatedly, as well as at Dublin, Paris, Vienna, and Philadelphia.

5. The discovery of gold in **Australia** in the same year gave a great impetus to the colonization and development of that continent. Victoria has from the first yielded more gold than any other colony. **Melbourne**, its capital, is probably the

most extraordinary example of rapid city growth in the history of the world. Where there was in 1835 merely a group of squatters' tents, there is now a city with 200,000 inhabitants, and the reputation of being the greatest sea-port south of the equator.

6. The Russell Ministry was considerably weakened in 1851 by the opposition which its Ecclesiastical Titles Bill provoked. The Bill prohibited the assumption of territorial titles by English priests of the Roman Catholic Church under a penalty of £100. It was never acted on, and was repealed **1852** in 1871. Early in 1852 the Ministry resigned. The **A.D.** **Earl of Derby** then formed a Conservative Ministry, in which Mr. Disraeli was Leader of the House of Commons.

7. On the 14th of September in the same year (1852) the "**Iron Duke**,"—the "Hero of a hundred fights,"—as Wellington was proudly called by his grateful countrymen, died at Walmer Castle, aged eighty-three. On the 18th of November his coffin was borne to St. Paul's, where lay the dust of Nelson.

8. Lord Derby's Ministry, having been defeated on the Budget proposals, resigned in December. **Lord Aberdeen** then formed a Coalition Ministry, consisting of **1852** Whigs and Peelites, and including Lord John Russell, **A.D.** Lord Palmerston, and Mr. William Ewart Gladstone. The new Ministry was pledged to a Free Trade policy and the further development of Peel's principles of finance.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was responsible government established in Canada? In what other provinces at the same time? What rule was laid down in Earl Grey's despatch?

2. What revolution occurred in 1848? In what capitals were there tumults? What occurred in England? Who was the head of the "Young Ireland Party"? What were their proceedings?

3. When did the second Sikh War begin? What was its origin? What doubtful victory did Gough gain? What decisive one? What followed?

4. What was held in London in 1851? Describe the building. What were gathered in it?

5. Where was gold discovered in the same year? What effect had the discovery? Which colony has yielded most gold? What is remarkable in the history of Melbourne?

6. What measure weakened the Russell Ministry in 1851? What was the object of that Bill? When was it repealed? When did the Ministry resign?

7. What was the date of the death of the Duke of Wellington? Where did he die? And where was he buried?

8. When did the Derby Ministry resign? What Ministry succeeded? Who were prominent members of it? What were its principles?

1852.—A second Burmese War ended in the annexation of Pegu to British India.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE CRIMEAN WAR AND THE INDIAN MUTINY.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Quarrel between Russia and Turkey.
2. Invasion of the Crimea.
3. Battle of Balaklava.
4. Battle of Inkermann.
5. Lord Palmerston, Premier.
6. Abandonment of Sebastopol. | 7. The Peace of Paris.
8. Outbreak of the Mutiny.
9. Cawnpore and Lucknow.
10. First Relief of Lucknow.
11. Suppression of the Mutiny.
12. Abolition of the East India Company. |
|--|--|

1. For several years a dispute about the **Holy Places**¹ at Jerusalem had been causing irritation between Russia and Turkey. Suddenly, Russia pushed her troops across the Pruth. This step led Turkey to declare war (October 5). England and France interfered on behalf of Turkey, in order to preserve the balance of power. The Russian Ambassador soon left London, and war was formally declared on the 28th of March 1854.

2. The **Crimea** was the chief theatre of the war. An army of 51,000 men, under Marshal St. Arnaud and Lord Raglan, landed at Eupatoria² on the 14th of September. As they pressed southward along the shore, they found 50,000 Russians lining the steep slopes on the left bank of the **Alma**. In three hours the passage of the river was forced; the southern heights were scaled; and the Russians fell back on **Sebastopol**, their great stronghold. The Allies then took up a position on the south of that city. Behind the English army, some six miles distant, was the port of **Balaklava**, where lay their ships and stores. On the 17th of October, the city was bombarded by land and sea. But the Russians had made good use of their time, and the works, strong before, were now almost impregnable.

3. A Russian attack on the English lines at **Balaklava** was nobly repulsed. Forcing the redoubts, which the Turks failed to hold, the Russians were rapidly breaking in on the lines,

¹ *Holy Places*.—For centuries the Greek and Latin Churches have quarrelled for the possession and guardianship of these places. The territory on which they stand is now the property of Turkey.

² *Eupatoria*.—A Russian sea-port on the west coast of the Crimea; 50 miles north of Sebastopol. For this and for the *Alma*, *Sebastopol*, *Balaklava*, and *Inkermann*, see the map of the Crimea on next page.

when a single Highland regiment—the 93rd, led by Sir Colin Campbell—deployed in a double line, and, with the rifle only, brought the enemy to a stop. The Brigade of Heavy Horse—Scots Greys, Enniskillens, and Dragoon Guards—dashed through a mass of Russian cavalry thrice their number. But an interest more intense clings to the heroic feat of the “Light Brigade.” By a mistake, a band of Light Horsemen, little more in number than six hundred, rode a mile down a slight slope, exposed to a merciless cross-fire, for the purpose of recovering a few captured guns. They reached the battery, sabred the gunners, and rode back again. Not two hundred escaped from the carnage of that charge. A French regiment then coming up, caused a part of the Russian force to retreat, which led to the final rout of the whole.

Oct. 25,
1854
A.D.



4. Near the ruins of **Inkermann**, on the extreme right of the English position, a still more important victory was won in November. Eight thousand British troops, **Nov. 5.** helped by six thousand French, kept the heights of Inkermann against a Russian force four times as great.

5. A motion taxing the Ministry with mismanagement of the war was passed in the Commons by a majority of 157 votes.

The Earl of Aberdeen then resigned, and Lord Palmerston became Premier. More active measures were at once taken for supplying the army with food, clothing, and shelter.

6. The earth-works of Sebastopol, to which the engineers had learned to trust rather than to granite walls, were forced at last. The French, already masters of the Mamelon, **Sept. 8, 1855** took the **Malakoff Tower**¹ with a brilliant dash on the 8th of September. At the same time an English **A.D.** forlorn-hope seized the Redan; but Russian guns, sweeping it from every side, forced them to retreat with heavy loss. During the next night Gortschakoff led the Russian garrison across the harbour to the northern part of the city. Before their flight they sank their ships. All the batteries and dock-yards were blown up by the Allies; and the grand fortress of Southern Russia was left a heap of ruins.

7. During the summer of 1855, Admiral Dundas, in command of the Baltic fleet, inflicted a severe blow on Russia by the bombardment of **Sveaborg**² (August 9–11, 1855). The Russian War raged also in Circassia, where the brave chief, Schamyl, fought against the troops of the Czar. **Crip- 1856** pled both on the Baltic and on the Black Sea, Russia at **A.D.** last sought for peace. The treaty was signed at Paris in March 1856.

8. The Crimean War was quickly followed by the **Indian**

1856.—Dr. Livingstone returned to England, after exploring for two years the basin of the Zambesi, in Central Africa. He made a second expedition from 1858 to 1864. He started on a third expedition in 1865. In 1858 Captains Speke and Grant explored the White Nile as far as the Lake Victoria Nyanza. In 1868 Sir Samuel Baker discovered the Lake Albert Nyanza.

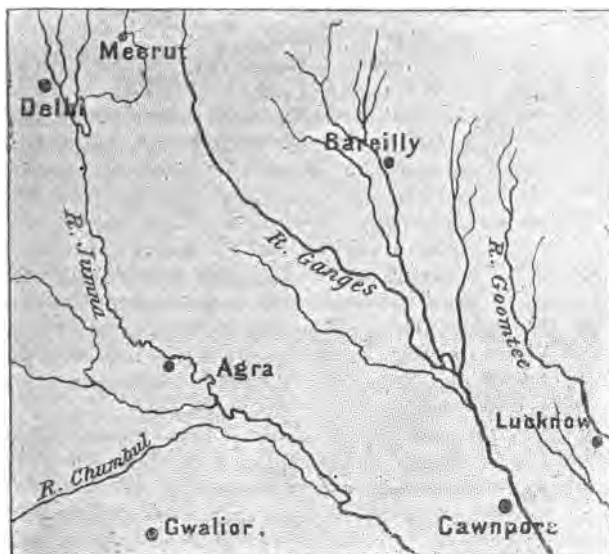
1856.—A new War with China began, in consequence of an outrage offered to the English flag. Canton was captured in 1857. Peace was restored by the Treaty of Tien-tsin in 1858, by which all China was thrown open to Europeans. About the same time a commercial treaty was concluded with Japan.

1856.—The Persians seized Herat (a fortified city of Afghanistan, near the Persian frontier). An English fleet cannonaded Bushire (on the Persian Gulf) and took it. Persia sued for peace, and Herat was restored.

¹ *The Malakoff Tower.*—A strongly fortified tower on a hill of the same name, forming the chief defence of Sebastopol on the southern side. The Mamelon and the Redan were strong works on the same side.

² *Sveaborg.*—A strongly fortified Russian town, built on seven islands, on the north of the Gulf of Finland, nearly opposite Helsingfors. Russia took it from Sweden in 1789, and greatly strengthened its fortifications.

Mutiny. It broke out at **Meerut**¹ on the 10th of May 1857, by the 3rd Bengal Cavalry attacking the prison. There some of their comrades had been confined for **1857** refusing to bite cartridges, which, they alleged, had **A.D.** been greased with cow-fat in order to make the Indians lose caste.² Not content with liberating their comrades, the sepoys set some houses on fire and murdered several Europeans.



The mutineers then marched to Delhi, which was garrisoned by sepoys. Fortunately an English officer blew up the powder magazine there before the rebels could seize it. A similar outbreak took place at Lucknow on the 31st of May. These two capitals became the great centres of the strife.

9. On the 4th of June 1857 the **siege of Delhi** was begun,

¹ *Meerut*.—A town 35 miles north-east of Delhi. *Bareilly* is 110 miles south-east of Meerut. *Lucknow* is 44 miles from *Cawnpore*.

² *Loss caste*.—Be degraded in social

rank. The Hindus are divided, according to their religious laws, into four *castes* or classes. The distinctions among these are preserved with superstitious reverence.

by an army of about three thousand men, almost all Europeans.

June,
1857
A.D. About the same time Sir Henry Lawrence took refuge in the Residency of Lucknow, and was there besieged by sepoys. On the 27th of June a number of Europeans, who had fled out of Cawnpore to a hastily formed intrenchment in the neighbourhood, surrendered to the Mahratta chieftain, generally known as "Nana Sahib," on condition that they should be sent to Allahabad. They were nearly all slain either in the boats or in the barrack-yard.

10. On the 16th of July, Colonel Henry Havelock drove Nana Sahib from Cawnpore, and saw for himself traces of the pitiless cruelty that had been perpetrated there. The relief of Lucknow, whose defender, Sir Henry Lawrence, had already received his death-wound, then became his great task. Accom-

Sept. panied by Sir James Outram, he reached the Residency¹ on the 23rd September, where they were received with joy. It soon appeared, however, that the women and children could not be removed; so that Havelock and Outram were themselves besieged in the place which they had come to succour. The fall of Delhi, on the 20th of the same month, was mainly due to Sir John Lawrence. By almost incredible exertions he gathered forces of every kind, and sent down heavy cannon to breach the walls.

11. Sir Colin Campbell then marched to the relief of Lucknow, which he entered on the 17th of November. From the Residency those who had survived the siege were removed to a place of safety, where, on the 25th, the brave Havelock died, worn out with ceaseless toils. Sir Colin then swept the basin

of the Ganges, gradually trampling out the rebellion.
1858 The fall of Bareilly on the 7th May 1858 was the
A.D. closing act of the terrible drama. For these services the veteran chief received the title of Lord Clyde of Clydesdale, and later the baton of a Field-Marshal. In Feb-

1858.—The Princess Royal was married to the Crown Prince of Prussia,—now the Prince Imperial of Germany (January).

1858.—An Act was passed permitting Jews, on the resolution of the House, to omit certain words in the oath, and to sit in Parliament (July).

¹ *The Residency.*—For an interesting | now, see ROYAL READER No. VI., p. detailed account of this Relief of Luck- | 239.

ruary the Palmerston Ministry had resigned, and Lord Derby became a second time Prime Minister.

12. The India Bill of 1858 extinguished the East India Company, as a ruling body. On the 1st of November in that year, a public proclamation declared that the Queen of England had assumed the direct control and sovereignty of India, which would thenceforth be ruled by a **Viceroy** in her name. The home government of India was intrusted to a Secretary of State and a Council of fifteen.

QUESTIONS.—1. What led Turkey to declare war against Russia? What Powers resolved to aid Turkey? Why?

2. What was the chief theatre of the war? Who commanded the French and the English army? Where did they land? What was the first battle? State its date and result. What position did the Allies take up at Sebastopol? What port did the English hold? When did the bombardment of Sebastopol begin?

3. What battle took place on October 25? What heroic incident occurred that day?

4. What battle was fought on November 5? Who held the heights? Against what Russian force?

5. What charge was brought against the Ministry? What was its result?

6. What movement of the French decided the fate of the city? What fortress did the English attack? When did the Russians evacuate the city? What did they previously do?

7. Describe what took place at Sveaborg. When and where was peace concluded?

8. By what was the Crimean War quickly followed? Where did the Mutiny break out? When? How? Where did the mutineers then march? What was the second centre of the strife?

9. When did the siege of Delhi begin? Who was shut up in Lucknow? Of what cruelty was Nana Sahib guilty?

10. Who drove him from Cawnpore? What then became Havelock's great task? Who accompanied him? When did they reach Lucknow? What then happened to them? When did Delhi fall? To whom was the result due?

11. Who relieved Lucknow the second time? When? Who died a few days later? What was the closing event of the Mutiny? What change of Ministry had taken place?

12. What changes were made in the government of India in 1858?

CHAPTER XIX.

PROGRESS OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

1. Steamships and Railways.
2. The Penny Postage and the Telegraph.
3. Iron-clads and Turret-ships.
4. Steel Guns and Rifles.
5. Iron Bridges and Crystal Palaces.

6. The North-West Passage.
7. African Exploration.
8. The Nile.
9. Australian Exploration.
10. Sanitary Affairs.
11. Minor Improvements.

1. THE application of **steam** to the purposes of locomotion has wrought a marvellous change on the life of the civilized world since the present century began. In 1811, Henry Bell of

Helensburgh launched on the Clyde the **Comet**, a vessel of 25 tons burden, propelled by steam. Four years later, George Stephenson, a native of Northumberland, achieved the construction of a locomotive engine capable of drawing waggons on a railway. In 1830, the same mechanical genius, aided by his son Robert, placed the **Rocket** on the rails of the new line between Liverpool and Manchester; and thenceforward the Railway System grew and expanded over the world.

2. The efforts of Rowland Hill, the son of a Birmingham schoolmaster, resulted in 1840 in the establishment of a general **Penny Postage**, which has had the effect of immensely increasing correspondence. But this was comparatively a slight matter, when viewed beside the achievement of Wheatstone and Cooke, who, in 1837, jointly constructed the **Electric Telegraph**. An inevitable sequel was the invention of the **Submarine Cable**, of which the first idea occurred in 1842 to an American electrician named Morse. The idea was reduced to a practical form in 1851, when a wire wrapped in gutta-percha was laid from Dover to Calais. In 1866 the gigantic enterprise of placing a cable across the Atlantic, between Valentia on the Irish coast and Trinity Bay in Newfoundland, was successfully completed. There are now three cables connecting the New World with the Old.

3. In 1821 an iron ship, put together in a London dock, steamed down the Channel to Havre. The application of iron armour to vessels of war was effected successfully in 1860; and now the old "wooden walls" are being rapidly superseded by **Iron-clads**. Iron armour has been recently applied also to forts. A shot-proof **turret**, or cupola, revolving on a pivot, is generally placed on the iron-clad or iron fort.

4. Steel cannons, not cast, but built ring by ring, are now made, capable of throwing an enormous conical steel shell with such force as to penetrate iron plates several inches thick. In small guns or fire-arms remarkable changes and improvements have been made. The old flint musket has become a **Breech-loading Rifle**, capable of sending a conical bullet with remarkable precision and force.

5. It is well to remember that the modern applications of iron have not been confined to the science of destruction. In

addition to railroads, locomotives, and steamboats, vast bridges, such as the **Britannia Tubular Bridge** across the Menai Strait (1850), and the Victoria Bridge across the St. Lawrence at Montreal, both the work of Robert Stephenson, have been constructed of this metal. It has been applied also to building purposes, of which the **Crystal Palaces**, the first of which was erected for the Great Exhibition of 1851, have been the most notable examples.

6. The secret of the **North-West Passage** from Europe to the Pacific Ocean has been solved by two independent explorers. The earlier was the hapless Sir John Franklin, who left England in 1845 with the *Erebus* and the *Terror*, but who was frozen up with his ships, and perished with all his associates. The relics of the expedition were found at the mouth of the Great Fish River in 1857. Captain Robert Maclure, in the *Investigator*, sailed from Behring Sea to Baffin Sea, in October 1850.

7. In **Africa**, the basin of the Zambesi was explored by David Livingstone, a medical missionary, who dispelled the delusion that Africa north of Cape Colony is an arid tract of barren sand. During his first journey (1849) he discovered Lake Ngami. His second (1852-56) resulted in the discovery on the Zambesi of the Victoria Falls, a cataract larger than Niagara. He then explored Lake Nyassa (1859), and everywhere found a fertile land, inhabited by tribes of some advancement, but blighted by the evil influences of the slave-trade. In his last journey he explored Lake Tanganyika and the water system of Central Africa. He died at Ilala, in May 1873. In 1876 Lieutenant Cameron returned to England, having accomplished the feat of crossing the Continent of Africa from the east to the west coast.

8. The Nile has also received its share of attention from explorers. Captain Speke, an Indian officer, penetrated the continent from Zanzibar, and discovered (1858) a vast lake, which he named *Victoria Nyansa*. As Speke and his intrepid companion Grant were descending the Nile after this triumphant result of their toil, they met Mr. (now Sir Samuel) Baker at Gondokoro. Baker pressed up the stream, and was rewarded by the discovery (1864) of another lake of colossal

size, the *Albert Nyanza*, which has more recently (1875) been explored by H. M. Stanley.

9. The most successful explorer of **Australia** was Captain Stuart, who in 1829 traced the course of the tributaries of the Murray, and in 1847 penetrated the sandy interior of the continent. A tragic interest hangs over the expedition of Burke and Wills in 1860-61. After having reached almost to the shore of the Gulf of Carpentaria, they retraced their steps, but reached Cooper's Creek too much exhausted to proceed. There they died of starvation. In 1862, Stuart succeeded in crossing the continent from south to north.

10. The general use of *Gas* in dwelling-houses—the advance of *Photography* (first applied to taking portraits in 1839)—and the adoption in domestic life of the *Sewing Machine*—may be noted as steps of progress. In *Sanitary* affairs, the removal of cemeteries to the outskirts of cities—the improved ventilation and sewerage of houses—the enforcement of vaccination by law—have done much to abate the virulence of infectious diseases such as cholera and small-pox, and to improve the tone of public health.

11. There is more providence among the working classes; and this has been encouraged by the establishment of *Savings' Banks*, and the increased facilities afforded by *Insurance Companies*. The *Repeal of the Paper Duty* (1861) gave a great impulse to the cause of popular education. The daily newspaper—usually a penny, but in many cases sold at a *halfpenny*—is a marvel of the present age, which would have astonished a previous generation quite as much as a telegram or an express train would have done.

QUESTIONS.—1. What has wrought a wonderful change during the present century? Who launched the *Comet*, and when? Who was the constructor of the *Rocket*?

2. Who originated the Penny Postage? Give the date. Who constructed the first Electric Telegraph? When? Which was the first Submarine Cable? When was the Atlantic Cable successfully completed?

3. When did an iron ship first cross the English Channel? When were war

ships first made of iron? What are they called? How are they armed?

4. How are steel cannons formed? What missile do they throw? What change has taken place in fire-arms?

5. State some of the peaceful applications of iron. Give great instances.

6. Who solved the mystery of the North-West Passage? Tell the fate of Franklin.

7. In what capacity did Livingstone go to Africa? Give his various discoveries, with dates. Where and when

did he die? What feat did Lieutenant Cameron accomplish?

8. State the discoveries of Speke and Baker. Who has lately explored Lake Albert Nyanza?

9. Who was the most successful explorer of Australia? What two expeditions did he undertake? Name the explorers of Australia who perished. How far did they penetrate, and of

what did they die? Who crossed the continent in 1862?

10. What recent inventions may be noted as steps of progress? By what measures has public health been improved?

11. What have encouraged provident habits among the working classes? When was the Paper Duty repealed, and with what results?

CHAPTER XX.

THE CONSTITUTION.

1. Its Composite Character.
2. The Ministry.
3. The Sovereign.
4. The House of Lords.
5. The House of Commons.
6. The Electors.
7. Progress of a Bill.
8. The Second House.

9. The Royal Assent.
10. The Privy Council.
11. The Prime Minister.
12. The Cabinet.
13. Adjournment—Prorogation—Dissolution.
14. Government of the Colonies and Dependencies.

1. THE Government of Great Britain, Ireland, and the English Colonies and Dependencies, is vested in the **Sovereign** and the two Houses of Parliament,—the **House of Lords** and the **House of Commons**. It is thus a mixed Government,—not pure monarchy, nor pure aristocracy, nor pure democracy, but a compound of all three. In this composite character lies its strength.

2. The chief business of the two Houses of Parliament is to make laws, and to vote money for the public service. In theory, the power of administering the laws belongs to the Sovereign; but in practice, this is done in the Sovereign's name by the **Ministry**,¹—a body of advisers chosen from both Houses of Parliament. The Ministry is responsible to Parliament for the conduct of affairs, and for the advice it gives to the Crown; and whenever it ceases to have the confidence of the House of Commons, the Sovereign chooses another body of advisers. Thus Parliament is virtually supreme.

3. The crown is hereditary, and females are not excluded; but the Sovereign must be a Protestant of the Church of Eng-

¹ See p. 198, § 1, and Note.

land. The chief prerogatives of the **Sovereign** are, to make war and peace; and to summon, prorogue, and dissolve Parliament. The assent of the Sovereign is also necessary to every new law. But, as already stated, these prerogatives are now exercised by the Sovereign under the advice of the Ministry for the time being.

4. The **House of Lords**, or Upper House of Parliament, comprises 26 Lords Spiritual and 452 Lords Temporal. The Lord Chancellor, sitting on the woolsack, acts as president or chairman of the Lords.

5. The **House of Commons**, or Lower House of Parliament, consists of 658 representatives of the counties, boroughs, and universities in England and Wales (493), Scotland (60), and Ireland (105). The chairman of the Commons is called the *Speaker*, because he is their spokesman or representative in approaching the Sovereign. Any Bill may be introduced in the House of Commons, and money Bills can originate in that House alone.

6. The **Electors** are—in *boroughs*, all householders rated for relief of the poor, and all lodgers occupying rooms valued at £10 a year unfurnished; in *counties*, owners of freehold property worth £2 a year, or of other property worth £5, and tenants of lands or houses rated at £12 a year (in Scotland £14).

7. The process of law-making is conducted as follows:—The proposed law is introduced in either House in the form of a **Bill**, after leave has been given so to do. It is then nominally read for the *first time*, without opposition. The Bill is then printed and circulated, and a day is fixed for the *second reading*. If it pass the second reading, the House proceeds to consider and vote upon each clause in the Bill separately “in committee.” After the Bill has passed through committee, it is “reported” to the House in its amended form, and is ready for the *third reading*. If it pass this reading, it is then sent to the other House.

8. There it goes through an exactly similar process; three readings, with examination in committee between the second and the third. If amended or altered there, the Bill is sent back to the House in which it originated, which either agrees to the amendments or not, and may demand a conference with the other House to settle differences.

9. When the Bill has finally passed both Houses, the **royal assent** is required before it can become an **Act** or law. This is given either personally or by commission.

10. From very early times, the advisers of the Sovereign have been known as the **Privy Council**. As this body was found to be too numerous, it became customary, after the Revolution of 1688, to intrust the government to a committee of the Privy Council, called the **Ministry**.

11. The head of the Ministry is the **Prime Minister**, or Premier. The Sovereign chooses as Premier the recognized leader of that political party which has the majority in the House of Commons for the time, and intrusts him with the task of forming a Ministry from among his own supporters.

12. The chief ministers form the **Cabinet**, which determines the general policy of the Ministry, and the measures which are to be proposed to Parliament. The Cabinet consists of the Premier or First Lord of the Treasury, the Lord Chancellor, the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the five Principal Secretaries of State, and the President of the Privy Council. Other ministers are also sometimes included in the Cabinet, but that body does not usually consist of more than fourteen or fifteen members.

13. Each House of Parliament may *adjourn* its meetings from day to day. The Sovereign, advised by the Ministry, *prorogues* Parliament from session to session; and *dissolves* it, when a new Parliament is to be elected. The duration of a Parliament is limited by law to seven years.

14. The **Colonies and Dependencies** have their internal affairs administered by resident Governors and Councils, appointed by the Crown, and controlled in London by a Secretary of State, who is a member of the Cabinet. The more populous and older colonies have been placed as much as possible on the footing of self-government; that is to say, there is in each a legislative assembly elected by the people.

QUESTIONS.—1. In whom is the Government of the British Empire vested? Wherein lies the strength of the Constitution?

2. What is the chief business of Parliament? To whom in theory does the power of administering the laws belong? To whom does it belong in practice?

To whom is the Ministry responsible?

3. Under what restriction is the crown inherited? What are the prerogatives of the Sovereign? By whom are they really exercised?

4. What are the two kinds of Lords? How many Lords spiritual are there?

How many Lords temporal? Who is president of the House of Lords?

5. Of whom does the House of Commons consist? How many for England and Wales? For Scotland? For Ireland? How many in all? What is the chairman of the Commons called? Why is he so called?

6. Who are the electors in boroughs? And in counties?

7. What are the steps through which a Bill passes in the House in which it is introduced? Where is the Bill next sent?

8. What takes place there? What is done if the Bill is amended or altered?

9. What step remains to be taken?

10. Who have been the Sovereign's advisers from early times? To whom is the government now intrusted?

11. Who is head of the Ministry? How is he chosen?

12. What ministers form the Cabinet? Of how many members does it usually consist?

13. What is *adjourning*, *proroguing*, and *dissolving* Parliament? How long may a Parliament last?

14. How are the British Colonies and Dependencies governed? On what footing have the older ones been put?

COLONIES AND DEPENDENCIES.

WITH THE DATES OF THEIR ACQUISITION.

I.—IN EUROPE.

Gibraltar.....	1704
Heligoland.....	1807
Malta and Goso.....	1800

II.—IN ASIA.

Aden.....	1839
India—Bombay, Madras, Bengal, Sindh, Punjab, N.-W. Province, Oudh, Assam, Burma, &c., &c.	1800
Ceylon.....	1796
Hong-kong.....	1842
Eastern Straits Settlements.....	1786
Labuan.....	1846

III.—IN OCEANIA.

Australia.....	1770
Tasmania.....	1803
New Zealand.....	1839
Fiji Isles.....	1874

IV.—IN AFRICA.

Cape Colony and Southern Settlements.....	1806
Sierra Leone and Western Settlements.....	1631
Mauritius and Eastern Settlements.....	1810

V.—IN AMERICA.

Dominion of Canada—Quebec, Ontario, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, Manitoba, North-West Territory, and British Columbia	1763
Newfoundland.....	1713
Honduras.....	1763
Bermudas.....	1612
West Indies.....	1655
British Guiana.....	1803
Falkland Islands.....	1765

APPENDIX.

SUMMARY OF RECENT EVENTS.

1859.—The Derby Ministry was defeated on a Reform Bill, and resigned. Lord Palmerston formed his second Ministry. Mr. Gladstone was Chancellor of the Exchequer. A groundless alarm of a French invasion gave rise to the Volunteer movement.

1860.—A third Chinese War occurred. The English and the French marched to Peking, and captured the Summer Palace of the Emperor. They prepared to bombard the city, but it surrendered; and the Convention of Peking was signed, by which Kowloon, a district opposite Canton, was ceded to England.

— A Commercial Treaty was negotiated with France by Mr. Cobden. By this treaty the import duty on wines and other French products was very much reduced, and English manufactures were admitted into France on equally favourable terms. This was the beginning of the financial reforms effected by Mr. Gladstone while Chancellor of the Exchequer. In 1861 he abolished the Paper Duty.

1861.—Albert, the Prince Consort, died of typhoid fever, aged 42.

1862.—The diminished supply of cotton, owing to the American Civil War, stopped the mills, and caused great distress in Lancashire. A relief fund of more than one million sterling was subscribed. This showed the danger of relying on one source alone for the raw material. There was immediately a great increase in the supply of cotton from India, Australia, Egypt, and Italy.

— An International Exhibition was held in London.

— The *Alabama*, a Confederate cruiser, built on the Mersey, but equipped for war on the high seas, inflicted great damage on the shipping of the Northern States, during the Civil War in America. In 1865 the United States Government claimed compensation from the English Government for the loss caused by the *Alabama* and other vessels, on the ground that the latter should have prevented the vessels from leaving English ports. In 1871, a joint-commission met at Washington and signed a treaty referring the claims to arbitration. Its award (September 1872) required England to pay the United States upwards of three million sterling.

1863.—The Prince of Wales was married at Windsor to Alexandra, daughter of the King of Denmark.

1865.—Lord Palmerston died; the Ministry was reconstituted by Earl Russell.—Mr. Gladstone, Chancellor of the Exchequer. The rinderpest, or steppe-murrain, swept away the cattle of England and Scotland in hundreds.

1866.—Owing to the increase of Fenianism the *Habeas Corpus* Act was suspended in Ireland. A great commercial panic occurred in London, owing to extensive failures. A Reform Bill proved fatal to the Russell Ministry. The Earl of Derby formed his third Ministry, with Mr. Disraeli as Chancellor of the Exchequer, July. The Atlantic Cable¹ was successfully laid between Valentia (Ireland) and Newfoundland.

1867.—The Second Reform Act was passed by the Derby Government, extending the franchise, and altering the distribution of seats. Acts for Scotland and Ireland followed. Lord Derby retired; Mr. Disraeli succeeded.

—The British North America Act, for the Confederation of the Provinces there, was passed, March. The Dominion of Canada was proclaimed, July 1. The provinces united were Quebec (Lower Canada), Ontario (Upper Canada), Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick. In 1870 the Hudson Bay Territory was annexed. Part of it was organized as the province of Manitoba, and the remainder was called the North-West Territory. British Columbia (including Vancouver Island) was added to the Dominion in 1871, and Prince Edward Island in 1873. Newfoundland alone stands apart now.

1868.—An English army, under Sir Robert Napier, invaded Abyssinia, and released European captives in the hands of King Theodore. Magdala, Theodore's mountain fortress, was stormed. It was then found that the King had shot himself. Napier was made Lord Napier of Magdala. The expedition cost the country £8,300,000.

—Mr. Disraeli, being in a minority, dissolved Parliament. The elections went against him, and he resigned, December. The Gladstone Ministry was formed. The *Telegraphs Act* was passed, enabling the Postmaster-General to purchase existing telegraphs, July. Telegrams at a uniform rate of one shilling for twenty words to any part of the United Kingdom, were soon introduced. The *Halfpenny Post Card* was introduced in 1870.

1869.—An Act was passed for the disestablishment and disendowment of the Irish Church after January 1, 1871.

1870.—The *Irish Land Act*, securing a more favourable tenure to

¹ An Atlantic Cable was first laid in 1858, but it very soon lost its transmitting power. A cable snapped while being laid in 1865. After the cable of 1866 was laid, that of 1865 was fished up and completed. In 1869, a French Cable was laid from Brest to St. Pierre. There are thus three cables now at work.

tenants, was passed. No tenant can be ejected without compensation. A tenant has also a claim for improvements effected by him during his tenancy.

1870.—An **Elementary Education Act for England and Wales** was passed. The Act provides for the popular election of school boards in places where sufficient provision for education is not made by voluntary effort. The election of a school board in London was compulsory. The Act also provides for school rates being levied, enacts a conscience clause, and allows the adoption of compulsory bye-laws.

1871.—An Act was passed abolishing religious **Tests in the English Universities**,¹ June. A Bill for the **Abolition of Purchase in the Army** (with compensation) was rejected by the Lords. Purchase was then abolished by Royal Warrant,² July.

1872.—An Act was passed introducing **Vote by Ballot** experimentally for eight years, at parliamentary and municipal elections. The restriction of the Act to eight years was inserted in the House of Lords. The same Act abolished the public nomination of candidates.

— An **Elementary Education Act for Scotland** was passed. It established compulsorily a school board in every parish and borough, armed with powers to levy a school rate, and to enforce the attendance of all children of suitable age.

— Lord Mayo, the Viceroy of India, was murdered at Port Blair, in the Andaman Islands, by an Afghan convict. He was succeeded by Lord Northbrook.

1873.—**David Livingstone**, the African missionary-traveller, died at Ilala, in Central Africa, May 4. He was 56 years of age, and he had spent 29 years in exploring different parts of Africa. He was buried publicly in Westminster Abbey in April 1874.

1874.—Prince Alfred (second son of the Queen) was married to the Grand Duchess Marie of Russia, January.

— General Sir **Garnet Wolseley** took and destroyed **Coomassie**, the capital of Ashantee (West Africa). The cause of the war was the interference of the Ashantees with the commerce of neighbouring tribes who were under the English Protectorate. The king renounced by treaty all claim of sovereignty over these tribes.

— The **Fiji Islands**, in the Pacific Ocean, were annexed to England, by request of the natives.

— Mr. Gladstone suddenly dissolved Parliament. The elections gave the Conservatives a large majority. The Gladstone Ministry resigned, and the **second Disraeli Ministry** was formed.

¹ University tests were abolished in the Scottish universities in 1861, and in Trinity College, Dublin, in 1873.

² The abolition of purchase has cost the country over two million sterling.

In 1875 an Act was passed to facilitate Regimental exchanges by payment. It was opposed by the Liberals on the ground that it was a partial return to the system of purchase.

1874.—An Act was passed for the better administration of the law respecting Public Worship, having for its object to check the increase of Ritualism in the Church of England.

— An Act was passed abolishing Lay Patronage in the Church of Scotland, and transferring the election of ministers to the communicants and adherents in each congregation.

1875.—The Prince of Wales visited India and Ceylon. He returned in May 1876.

— The English Government purchased from the Khedive of Egypt, for £3,800,000, about nine-twentieths of the shares in the Suez Canal.

1876.—Lord Lytton succeeded Lord Northbrook as Viceroy of India.

— An Act called the Royal Style and Titles Act was passed, amid considerable popular excitement, empowering the Queen to assume an addition to her title. The new title assumed was "Empress of India."

PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

Ab-ou-kir'	Ab-ou-keer'.	Evée-ham	Evoé-am.
Ag'in-court	Ash'in-koor.	Fe'-camp	Fay'-kang.
Aix-la-cha-pelle'	Aix-la-sha-pel'.	Fon-te-noy	Fon-te-noy/.
An'-ge-vin	An'-je-vin.	Fon-te-vraud'	Fon-te-vro'.
An'-jou'	Ang-shoo'.	Fries-land	Freed'-land.
An'-selm	An'-selm.	Gal'-ga-cus	Gal'-ga-cus.
An'-to-nine	An'-to-nin.	Gas'-cogne	Gas'-coin.
A-qui-taine'	Ak-we-tain'.	Geof'-frey	Ge'f'-rey.
Ar-ras'	Ar-rah'.	Ger'-be-roi	Zher'-b'roa.
Au-gus'-tine	Au-gus'-tin.	Gra-na'-da	Gra-na'-da.
Bal'-iol	Bayl'-yol.	Gul'-do	Ged'-do.
Bay-eux'	Bay-yuh'.	Gul-enne	Ges-en'.
Blü'-cher	Blü'-ker.	Guine'-gate	Geen'-gate.
Bo-a-di-ce'-a	Bo-a-di-ce'-a.	Gulse	Gees.
Bor-deaux'	Bor-dod'.	Haar'-lem	Har'-lem.
Bou-logne'	Bou-lon'.	Ha'-dri-an	Hay'-dri-an.
Bourges'	Boorsh.	Hal'-nault	Hay'-no.
Bou-vines'	Bou-veem'.	Har'-fleur	Har'-fluir.
Bre'-da	Bray'-da.	Her'-e-ford	Hér'-e-ford.
Bre-tagne'	Bre-tan'.	Her'-e-ward	Hér'-e-ward.
Bret-ign'-y	Bret-éen'-ye.	Hert'-ford	Hurt'-ford.
Bruges	Brüzh.	Hol'-stein	Hol'-stine.
Brun'-an-burh	Broon'-an-buro.	Ho-no'-ri-us	Ho-no'-ri-us.
Ca'-en	Kā'en, or Kang.	Hou-gou-mont'	Hoo-goo-mong'.
Cal'-ais	Kal'-lis, or Kal'-ay	Hu'-gue-nots	Hud'-g'no.
Cam-peg'-gio	Cam-peg'-gio.	Jé'-na	Yea'-na.
Ca-nute'	Ca-noot'.	Kirk-cud'-bright	Kir'-koo'-bray.
Cel'-es-tine	Cel'-es-tin.	La Hogue	La Hoag.
Cha-lus'	Sha-loot'.	Lan'-franc	Lan'-frank.
Charl'-e-magne	Sharl'-é-matn.	Lan'-gue-doc	Lan'-ge-doak.
Charle-roi'	Sharl'-rova'.	Leof'-ric	Le'f'-ric.
Chî'-non	Shé-nong.	Li-ège	Lee-ai'zh.
Clau'-di-us	Claw'-di-us.	Lign'-y	Leen'-ye.
Con'-stan-tine	Con'-stan-tin	Li-moges'	Lee-moazh'.
Dane'-lagh	Dané'-law.	Li-mou-sin'	Lee-moo-sang'.
De Ruy'-ter	De Rot'-ter.	Lo'-li-us Ur'-bi-cus {	Lo'-li-us Ur'-bi-cus.
Des Roches	Day Roash.	Lou'-vre	Loo'-v'r.
Def'-tin-gen	Del'-tin-gen. *	Mal-plaq'-uet	Mal'-plak'-ay.
Dev'-e-reux'	Dev'-e-ruh'.	Meaux	Mo.
Ed'-munds-bur-y	Ed'-munds-ber-ry	Mire'-beau	Meer'-bo.
El'-lan-dune	El'-lan-doon.	Mor-lai'	Mor-lay'.
Es'-ta-ples	A-tah'-p'l.		

Moul'-mein.....	Moul'-mean.	Se-chev'-er-ell.....	Se-she'-er-ell.
Na-mur'.....	Na-moor'.	Saintes.....	Saingt.
Nase'-by.....	Nase'-be.	Saw'-tre.....	So'-tray.
Nas'-sau.....	Nas'-so.	Scone.....	Skon.
Nim'-e-guen.....	Neem'-e-gen.*	Se-bas'-to-pol.....	Se-vas'-to-pol.
Or'-le-ans.....	Or'-lay-ang.	Se-ve'-rus.....	Se-ve'-rus.
Oude'-narde.....	Ood'-nard.	Sikh.....	Seek.
Pal-la'-di-us.....	Pa-lay'-di-us.	Sindh.....	Sinn'd.
Pau-li'-nus.....	Paw-lt'-nus.	Singh.....	Sing.
Pec-quign'-y.....	Pe-keen'-ye.	Sluys.....	Slooz.
Plan-ta'-ge-net.....	Plan-tt'-je-net.	So-bra'-on.....	So-bra'-on.
Pol'-te-vin.....	P'wa'-te-vang.	St. Ar'-naud.....	St. Ar'-no.
Poi-tiers'.....	{ Poi-teers',	St. He-le'-na.....	St. He-le'-na.
	{ P'wa'-tyea.	Sue-to'-ni-us.....	Sue-to'-ni-us.
Poi-tou'.....	P'wa'-too'.	Taille'-bourg.....	Talé'-boorg.
Pro-vençe'.....	Pro-vangs'.	Tal-lard'.....	Tal'-lar'.
Pun'-jab.....	Pun'-jaub.	Tenche'-brai.....	Tensh'-bray.
Quatre-bras'.....	Katr'-brah'.	Ten'-er-iffe.....	Ten'-er-iff.
Ra'-legh.....	{ Rat'-lay,	Tou-louse'.....	Too'-loos'.
	{ Rat'-lay.	Tra-fal'-gar.....	Tra-fal'-gar.
Ram-ti-lles'.....	Ram-ti-lees'.	Troyes.....	Ty'-wah.
Rheims.....	Reems, or Rangz.	U'-trecht.....	Oo'-trekt.
Roche'-fort.....	Roash'-for.	Va-len'-ti-a.....	Va-len'-she-a.
Ro-chelle'.....	Ro-shell'.	Ver-neu-il'.....	Ver-nuh-ed'.
Rou-en'.....	Roo-ang'.	Vor-ti-gern.....	Vor-ti-gern.*
Rou'-veral.....	Rod'-vray.	Wal'-cher-en.....	Wal'-her-en.
Rys'-wick.....	Riss'-tk.	Wit-en-a-ge-mot'....	Wit-en-a-ge-moat'.

* g hard.

INDEX.

- Aberdeen, Earl of, 263.
 Abhorrens, 183.
 Aboukir, Battle of, 235.
 Abraham, Battle of Plains of, 221.
 Abyssinian War, 278.
 Acre, Siege of, 235.
 Addington, Henry, 236, 238.
 Æthelbert, of Kent, 29.
 Æthelfled, of Mercia, 39.
 Æthelred II., 41.
 Æthelstan, 40.
 Afghan War, 258.
 Agincourt, Battle of, 112.
 Agricola, Julius, 19.
 Aidan, 31.
 Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaty of, 217.
 Alabama, The, 277.
 Alban, 22.
 Albert, Prince Consort, 277.
 Albin, 30.
 Alexandria, Battle of, 235.
 Alfred, King, 35-38.
 Algiers seized by France, 251.
 Alliance, Triple, 180; Grand, 199; Quadruple, 209.
 Alma, Battle of the, 264.
 Almanza, Battle of, 201.
 American Independence, 225-229.
 Amiens, Treaty of, 238.
 Angevin marriage, The, 72.
 Angles, 25.
 Anne of Cleves, 139.
 Anne, Queen, 199-204.
 Anselm, Archbishop, 69.
 Anson, Lord, 212, 213.
 Argyle, Earl of, 185.
 Argyle, Marquis of, 177.
 Armada, The Invincible, 148.
 Armed Neutrality, 237.
 Arthur, King, 27.
 Ashantee War, 279.
 Aske, Robert, 187.
 Assize, Grand, 76; The Bloody, 186.
 Assize of Arms, 81.
 Athelney, 36.
 Attainder, and Impeachment, 164.
 Atterbury, Bishop, 211.
 Augustine, 28.
 Australia, 262, 272.
 Austrian Succession, War of the, 218.
 Babington's Conspiracy, 148.
 Bacon, Francis, 154, 159.
 Badon, Battle of Mount, 27.
 Balaklava, Battle of, 264.
 Baliol, Edward, 97.
 Baliol, John, 98.
 Bank of England, 196.
 Bannockburn, Battle of, 95.
 Barnet, Battle of, 118.
 Baronetcy instituted, 157.
 Barons, the Crown against the, 83; of the Royal Council, 102.
 Beaufort, Cardinal, 115.
 Becket, Thomas, 79, 80.
 Bedford, Duke of, Regent, 113.
 Benevolences, 122, 158, 161.
 Berkeley Keep, 96.
 Berlin Decree, 240.
 Bernicia, 27.
 Bible, The English, 138.
 Bill of Rights, 194.
 Blenheim, Battle of, 200.
 Bloreheath, Battle of, 117.
 Boadicea, 19.
 Board of Control, 231.
 Boleyn, Anne, 134-138.
 Bolingbroke (Henry St. John), Viscount, 202, 205.
 Bonner, Bishop, 144.
 Bosworth, Battle of, 124.
 Boyne, Battle of, 194.
 Breda, Declaration from, 177.
 Bretigny, Treaty of, 101.
 Bright, John, 257.
 Brougham, Henry (Lord), 253.
 Bruce, Robert (elder), 93.
 Bruce, Robert (younger), 94.
 Brunanburh, Battle of, 40.
 Buckingham, Duke of, 123, 124.
 Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of, 157-161.
 Bunker Hill, Battle of, 227.
 Buonaparte, 234-239. (See *Napoleon I.*)
 Burdett, Sir Francis, 244, 252.
 Burgesses in Parliament, 91, 96.
 Burke, Edmund, 227, 230.
 Burma, War with, 253.
 Bute, Earl of, 222-225.
 Bye Plot, The, 156.
 Byng, Admiral, 218.

- Cabal, The, 181.
 Cabinet, The, 198, 276.
 Cade, Rebellion of Jack, 115.
 Cæsar, Julius, 18.
 Calais, captured, 100; lost, 144.
 Caledonia, 20.
 Calendar, Correction of the, 218.
 Calne, The Witan at, 41.
 Campbell, Sir Colin (Lord Clyde), 268.
 Campeggio, Cardinal, 135.
 Camperdown, Battle off, 234.
 Canada, Conquest of, 222; Constitutional Act, 233; Rebellion in, 257; Responsible government in, 262; Dominion of, 278.
 Canning, George, 240-253.
 Canterbury, 129.
 Canute, 41; King, 43-45.
 Carnatic, War in, 230.
 Caroline of Anspach, 211.
 Caroline, Queen, 253.
 Castlereagh, Viscount (Marquis of Londonderry), 244, 253.
 Castra, 22.
 Catherine of Aragon, 128, 129, 134-137.
 Cato Street Conspiracy, 253.
 Cavalier, 165.
 Cawnpore, 268.
 Caxton, William, 119.
 Cecil, Robert, Earl of Salisbury, 157.
 Cecil, William, Lord Burleigh, 145.
 Celts, 17.
 Ceoris, 51.
 Ceylon, 251.
 Charles-Edward, the Pretender, 214-216.
 Charles V., Emperor, 131.
 Charles VII., of France, 114.
 Charter, of Liberties, 70; The Great, 85-88.
 Chartists, 257.
 Chaucer, Geoffrey, 107.
 China, War with, 268; 266; 277.
 Chivalry, 76.
 Christianity, in Britain, 21; in England, 23.
 Civil War, The, 167-171.
 Clarence, Death of, 123.
 Clarendon Code, 178.
 Clarendon, Constitutions of, 80.
 Clarendon, Hyde, Earl of, 164-179.
 Clive, Robert, 219-230.
 Cloth of Gold, Field of the, 132.
 Cobden, Richard, 257, 277.
 Cobham, Lord of, 111.
 Coffee houses, 190.
 Colonia, 22.
 Colonies and Dependencies, 277.
 Columba, 23.
 Commission, Court of High, 147.
 Commons, House of, 91; Increasing power of, 109; resist Wolsey, 132; ascendancy of, 202.
 Commonwealth, The, 172.
 Conformity, Act against Occasional, 203.
 Constantine the Great, 22.
 Constitution, The, 273-275.
 Conventicle Act, 178.
 Conventicles, 179.
 Copenhagen bombarded, 238; 241.
 Corn Laws, 251; League against, 257; Repeal of, 260.
 Corporation Act, 178; repealed, 254.
 Corunna, Battle of, 242.
 Council of Thirty, 182.
 Covenant, Solemn League and, 177.
 Coverdale, Miles, 133.
 Craumer, Thomas, 136-144.
 Crecy, Battle of, 99, 100.
 Crimean War, 264-266.
 Cromiechs, 18.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 169-175.
 Cromwell, Richard, 175.
 Cromwell, Thomas, 136-139.
 Crown, Ascendency of the, 122; Aggrandisement of the, 126; against the Commons, 160.
 Crusades, 70, 82, 83, 91.
 Culloden, Battle of, 215, 216.
 Cumbria, 27.
 Curfew Bell, 67.
 Danby, Earl of, 181.
 Danelagh, 37.
 Danes in England, 34.
 Darien Scheme, 197.
 David I. of Scotland, 73.
 David II. of Scotland, 96.
 Debt, The National, 196; 250.
 De Burgh, Hubert, 89.
 Declaration of Right, 183.
 Deira, 27.
 Delhi, Siege of, 207.
 De Montfort, Simon, 90.
 Derby, Earl of (Lord Stanley), 260, 263, 269, 278.
 Des Roches, Peter, 90.
 Dettingen, Battle of, 214.
 Devonshire, Duke of, 213.
 Disraeli, Benjamin, 263, 278, 279.
 Domesday Book, 67.
 Dover, Secret Treaty, 180.
 Drama, English, 121.
 Drapier Letters, 211.
 Drogheda, Sack of, 172.
 Dudley, Edmund, 129.
 Dudley, Lord Guildford, 142-144.
 Dunbar Drove, 173.
 Dundee, Viscount, 194.
 Dunstan, 40.
 Dutch Republic, Rise of the, 147.
 Earldoms, Four great, 43.
 East Anglia, 27.
 Ecclesiastical Titles Bill, 263.

- Edgar, 40.
 Edgar the Ætheling, 64-70.
 Edgehill, Battle of, 169.
 Edinburgh, 32.
 Edington, Battle of, 36.
 Edith-Matilda, 71.
 Edmund of East Anglia, 35.
 Edmund Ironside, 42.
 Education (Elementary) Acts, 279.
 Education, Secondary, 154; 224.
 Edward I., 91-94.
 Edward II., 94-96.
 Edward III., 96-103.
 Edward IV., 118-123.
 Edward V., 123-124.
 Edward VI., 139-142.
 Edward, the Black Prince, 98-103.
 Edward the Confessor, 46-49.
 Edward, the Elder, 38; first King of England, 40.
 Edward the Ætheling, 43.
 Edwin of Northumbria Overlord, 32.
 Edwin, Earl of Mercia, 49, 50, 64, 65.
 Edwy, 40.
 Egbert of Wessex Overlord, 33.
 Egfrith, 33.
 Elba, 247.
 Eldermen, 51.
 Elizabeth Woodville, 118.
 Elizabeth of York, 125.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 145-150.
 Ellandune, Battle of, 33.
 Emancipation, Roman Catholic, 253, 254.
 Emma of Normandy, 43, 45.
 Emmet, Robert, 238.
 Empson, Richard, 129.
 England, 27.
 English, 26.
 Essex, 27.
 Essex, Earl of, 149.
 Essex, Earl of (son), 167.
 Estaples, Peace of, 127.
 Evesham, Battle of, 91.
 Excise Bill, Walpole's, 212.
 Exhibition, Great, 262.
 Fairfax, General, Lord, 172.
 Falkirk, Battle of, 94.
 Falkland, 164.
 Family Compact, 222.
 Fenianism, 278.
 Feudalism in England, 66.
 Fiji Islands, 279.
 Finch, Speaker, 161.
 Fire, Great, of London 179.
 Five Boroughs, The, 37.
 Five Members, Impeachment of the, 165.
 Five-Mile Act, 178.
 Flambard, Ralph, 69.
 Flodden, Battle of, 130.
 Fontenoy, Battle of, 214.
 Forest Laws, 68.
 Fox, Bishop of Winchester, 125.
 Fox, Charles James, 230-240.
 Francis I., of France, 131, 133.
 Gardiner, Bishop, 143.
 Gascoigne, Chief-Justice, 109.
 George I., 204-211.
 George II., 211-222.
 George III., 222-253.
 George IV., 253-254.
 Gladstone, William Ewart, 263, 278, 279.
 Glencoe, Massacre of, 195, 196.
 Gloucester, Humphrey, Duke of, 113.
 Gloucester, Richard, Duke of, 123, 124.
 Godolphin, Earl of, 199.
 Godwin, Earl, 44, 47, 48.
 Grafton, Duke of, 226.
 Gramplius, Battle of Mons, 20.
 Gregory, Pope, 29.
 Grenville, Hon. George, 225.
 Grenville, Lord, 238-240.
 Grey, Earl, 240, 255.
 Grey, Lady Jane, 142-144.
 Guinegate, Battle of, 129.
 Gunpowder Plot, The, 156.
 Guthrum, 35, 36.
 Gyrth, son of Godwin, 48, 62.
 Habeas Corpus Act, 182; suspended, 234, 252.
 Halidon Hill, Battle of, 97.
 Halifax (Charles Montagu), Earl of, 198, 205.
 Hampden, John, 162-169.
 Hampton Court Conference, 156.
 Hardicanute, 45.
 Harfleur taken, 112.
 Harley (Earl of Oxford), 201, 203, 205.
 Harold Hardrada, 49.
 Harold I., 45.
 Harold II., 43; King, 49-62.
 Hastings the Dane, 38.
 Hastings, Battle of, 58-63.
 Hastings, Lord, 123.
 Hastings, Warren, 230-232.
 Hatfield, Battle of, 32.
 Havelock, Sir Henry, 268.
 Hedgeley Moor, Battle of, 118.
 Hengest, 24.
 Hengest's Down, Battle of, 34.
 Henry I., 70-73.
 Henry II., 79-82.
 Henry III., 89-91.
 Henry IV., 108-111.
 Henry V., 111-113.
 Henry VI., 113-118.
 Henry VII., 125-129.
 Henry VIII., 129-139.
 Hereward the Outlaw, 68.
 Hertford (Seymour), Earl of, 139.
 Hexham, Battle of, 118.
 Hooker, Richard, 154.
 Horsa, 24.
 Hotspur, 109.

- Howard, Catherine, 139.
Howard, Henry, 139.
Howard of Effingham, 149.

Income Tax, 258.
Independents, 170.
India, 229-232; 238;
Mutiny in, 266-269.
Indulgence, Declarations of, 187.
Inkermann, Battle of, 265.
Interdict, Papal, 85.
Ireland, Invasion of, 80;
Settlement of Ulster, 157; Cromwell in, 172;
Risings in, 236; Union with England, 236;
Agitation for Repeal of the Union, 259, 262;
Church Act, 278; Land Act, 278.

Jacobite Rebellions, The 'Fifteen, 208; The 'Forty-five, 214-216.
Jamaica, 175.
James I. of Scotland, captured, 109; 155-160.
James II., 184-188.
James IV. of Scotland, married to Margaret Tudor, 123.
James VI. of Scotland, 155.
Jeffreys, Chief-Justice, 186.
Jena, Battle of, 240.
Joan of Arc, 114.
John, King, 84-89.
Justice, Circuits of, 81.
Jutes, 25.

Kent, 27, 30.
Killiecrankie, Battle of, 194.
King, The, 51.
Kirke, Colonel Percy, 186.
Knight, The, 76.

La Hogue, Battle of, 196.
Lanfranc, Archbishop, 65.
Langton, Stephen, 85.
Latimer, Bishop, 143, 144.

Laud, Archbishop, 162-169.
League, Anti-Corn-law, 257.
Legion, Roman, 19.
Leicester, Earl of, 148.
Leipsic, Battle of, 245.
Leofric, Earl, 44.
Leslie, Alexander, 162.
Leslie, David, 173.
Lewes, Battle of, 90.
Lexington, Battle of, 227.
Liege, Capture of, 199.
Limerick, Pacification of, 195.
Lincoln, Battle of, 74, 89.
Lincoln, de la Pole Earl of, 125.
Lindisfarne, 81.
Liverpool, Earl of, 245.
Livingstone, David, 266, 271, 279.
Lollards, 104, 111.
London, 19; the Capital, 81; in 17th century, 190.
Londonderry, Siege of, 194.
Lothian, 40.
Lovel, Lord, 126.
Lowestoft, Battle of, 178.
Lucknow, 268.
Luddites, 244.
Luther, Martin, 132.

Macbeth, 48.
Macdonald, Flora, 216.
Main Plot, The, 156.
Malcolm of Scotland, 65.
Malplaquet, Battle of, 201.
Malta, 235, 238.
Margaret Tudor, wife of James IV. of Scotland, 123.
Marlborough, 199-204.
Marston Moor, Battle of, 169.
Mary I., 142-145.
Mary II., 198-197.
Mary, Queen of Scots, 145-143.
Masham, Mrs., 203.
Maud, 73.
Mayo, Lord, 279.
Melbourne, Viscount, 256-258.

Mercia, 27; in the ascendant, 33.
Merk, 70.
Middle Anglia, 27.
Middlesex, 27.
Militia Bill, The, 166.
Milton, John, 172.
Ministry, The, 273, 275.
Monasteries, Suppression of, 137.
Monk, General, 174, 176;
Duke of Albemarle, 177.
Monmouth, Duke of, 185.
Monopolies attacked, 159.
Montrose, Marquis of, 172.
Moore, Sir John, 242.
Morcar, Earl of Northumbria, 49, 59, 64, 65.
More, Sir Thomas, 136.
Mortimer, Lord, 93.
Mortimer, Sir Edmund, 109.
Mortimer's Cross, Battle of, 117.
Morton, Archbishop, 125.
Moscow, Burning of, 245.
Mutiny Act, 193.

Namur, Siege of, 196.
Napoleon I., 239-250.
Naseby, Battle of, 170.
Nelson, Viscount, 234-240.
Nevill's Cross, Battle of, 100.
Newcastle, Duke of, 218.
New Forest, 63.
Nile, Battle of the, 235.
Nile Exploration, 271.
Nore, Mutiny at the, 234.
Norfolk, Duke of, 139-146.
Norman Customs and Norman Life, 76.
Normandy, 39.
Northallerton, Battle of, 73.
Northampton, Treaty of, 96; Battle of, 117.
North Briton, No. 45 225.
North, Lord, 226.
Northumberland, Dudley, Duke of, 142.
Northumbria, 27; in the ascendant, 32.

Oates, Titus, 181, 182.
 Odo, Bishop, 65, 68.
 Offa, of Mercia, Overlord, 83.
 Oldcastle, Sir John, 111.
 O'Neill, Earl of Tyrone, 149.
 Orange, William I., Prince of, 147, 148.
 Orange, William II., Prince of, 187. (See *William III.*)
 Ordainers, Lords, 95.
 Ordeal, 53.
 Orders in Council, 240.
 Ordinance, Self-denying, 170.
 Orleans, Siege of, 113.
 Ormond, Marquis of, 172.
 Otterbourne Battle of, 105.
 Oudenarde, Battle of, 201.
 Oxford, Provisions of, 90.
 Palmerston, Lord, 254, 263, 266, 277, 278.
 Paris, Peace of, 245, 250.
 Parliament, The Good, 102; The Short, 162; The Long, 163; The Rump, 171; Barebone's, 174.
 Patriots, The, 212.
 Patronage Abolition Act, 280.
 Paulinus, 31.
 Pavia, Battle of, 133.
 Peel, Sir Robert, 245-261.
 Pelham, Henry, 213-218.
 Penda of Mercia, 32.
 Peninsular War, 241.
 Perceval, Spencer, 244, 245.
 Peterloo, 252.
 Petitioners, 183.
 Petition of Right, 161.
 Petre, Father Edward, 186.
 Picts, 24.
 Pilgrimage of Grace, 137.
 Pilgrim Fathers, 169.
 Pinkie, Battle of, 140.
 Pitt, William, Earl of Chatham, 212, 218-223.

Pitt, William (the Younger), 230-240.
 Plague in London, 179.
 Plantagenet, Geoffrey, 72.
 Plassey, Battle of, 220.
 Poitiers, Battle of, 101.
 Poor Law, 256.
 Popish Plot, The, 181.
 Porteous Mob, 212.
 Portland, Duke of, 230, 240.
 Potato Blight, 260.
 Poundage, 160.
 Poynings's Law, 128.
 Prestonpans, Battle of, 215.
 Pride's Purge, 171.
 Protectionist Party, 260.
 Protector, Lord, 174.
 Protestants, 136.
 Public Worship Act, 230.
 Puritans, 147.
 Pym, John, 160.
 Quatre Bras, 248.
 Quebec, Siege of, 220-222.
 Queen, 51.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 148, 156.
 Ramilies, Battle of, 201.
 Rastadt, Treaty of, 201.
 Reformation, in Europe, 132; in England, 141.
 Reform, Parliamentary, 251-255, 278; Municipal, 256; Financial, 256-261.
 Regulating Act, Indian, 230.
 Remonstrance, the Grand, 164.
 Restoration, The, 177.
 Revolution, Lancastrian, 108.
 Revolution, of 1688, 187-189.
 Revolutions, French, 232-237, 254, 262.
 Richard I., 82, 83.
 Richard II., 103-108.
 Richard III., 124.
 Richelieu, Cardinal, 161.
 Richmond, Henry, Earl of, 124.

Ridley, Bishop, 143, 144.
 Rivers, Earl, 123.
 Robert, son of the Conqueror, 68-71.
 Rochelle, La, 161.
 Rogers, John, 144.
 Rolf the Ganger, 39.
 Romans in Britain, 18.
 Roses, Wars of the, 117.
 Rouen, Fall of, 113.
 Roundhead, 165.
 Royal assent, The, 150.
 Royal Titles Act, 230.
 Rullion Green, Battle of, 179.
 Runnymede, 86.
 Rupert, Prince, 167.
 Russell, Lord John (Earl), 253-255, 261, 263, 278.
 Rye House Plot, 184.
 Ryawick, Treaty of, 196.
 Sacheverell, Dr., 203.
 Saratoga, Surrender at, 228.
 Sawtre, William, 109.
 Saxons, 21, 25.
 Scotland, Disputed succession in, 93; overrun, 93; independent, 96; Effects of First Union on, 157; Second Union, 202.
 Scots, 24.
 Scutage, 81.
 Sedgemoor, Battle of, 185.
 Senlac Hill, 60.
 Septennial Act, 209.
 Seringapatam, taken, 232.
 Settlement, Act of, 199.
 Seven Bishops, Trial of the, 187.
 Seven Years' War, 218.
 Severus, Emperor, 21.
 Seymour, Jane, 138.
 Shaftesbury, Earl of, 181, 182.
 Shakespeare, William, 154.
 Sheriffmuir, Battle of, 203.
 Shire, 51.
 Shire-reeve, 52.
 Shrewsbury, Battle of, 109.
 Shrewsbury, Duke of, 204.

- Sidney, Sir Philip, 148, 154.
 Sikh War, 259, 262.
 Simnel the impostor, 126.
 Sindh annexed, 259.
 Slaves, 52.
 Slaves, Emancipation of, 256.
 Sluys, Battle of, 98.
 Soobraon, Battle of, 260.
 Social Condition:—Old English period, 51; Norman times, 76; time of the Angevins, 106; fifteenth century, 120; sixteenth century, 151; seventeenth century, 189; eighteenth century, 223; nineteenth century, 269.
 Somerset, Robert Carr, Earl of, 157.
 Somerset (Seymour), Duke of, 139-142.
 South Sea Scheme, 209, 210.
 Southumbria, 27.
 Spanish Succession, War of the, 198.
 Spenser, Edmund, 154.
 St. Albans, Battle of, 117.
 St. Bartholomew, Massacre of, 147.
 St. Brice, Massacre of, 41.
 St. Helena, 250.
 St. Jean (Waterloo), 249.
 St. Vincent, Battle off Cape, 234.
 Stamford Bridge, Battle of, 49.
 Stamp Act, 228.
 Standard, Battle of the, 73.
 Statute of Labourers, 100, 101; of Heretics, 109; of Six Articles, 139.
 Stephen, King, 73-75.
 Stigand, Archbishop, 64.
 Stirling Bridge, Battle of, 94.
 Stoke, Battle of, 127.
 Stonehenge, 18.
 Strafford, Wentworth, Earl of, 162-164.
 Suez Canal, 280.
 Suffolk, Duke of, executed, 115.
 Sunderland, Earl of, 209, 210.
 Supremacy, Act of, 147.
 Sussex, 27.
 Sweyn, 41.
 Tacitus, 20.
 Talavera, Battle of, 243.
 Telegraphs, 270; Act, 278.
 Templars, Knights, 76.
 Tenchebrai, Battle of, 71.
 Test Act, 146, 181; dispensed with, 184; repealed, 254.
 Tests, Abolition of University, 279.
 Tewkesbury, Battle of, 118.
 Thanet, 51.
 Toleration Act, 194.
 Torres Vedras, 244.
 Tory, 183.
 Tostig, Earl of Northumbria, 48.
 Toulouse, Battle of, 245.
 Tournament, The, 76, 152.
 Townshend, Viscount, 206.
 Towton, Battle of, 118.
 Trafalgar, Battle of, 239.
 Triennial Parliaments, 196.
 Troyes, Treaty of, 113.
 Tunnage, 160.
 Tyler's Insurrection, 104.
 Tyndale, William, 138.
 Tyrconnel, Earl of, 186.
 Uniformity, Act of, 147, 178.
 Union, Scottish, 202; Irish, 236; Welsh, 138.
 United States, 229; war with England, 245.
 Utrecht, Treaty of, 201.
 Vane, Sir Harry, 172.
 Victoria, Princess, 252; Queen, 257.
 Vienna, Congress of, 246.
 Vikings, 24.
 Villanage, 120.
 Vinegar Hill, 236.
 Vitoria, Battle of, 245.
 Vortigern, 24.
 Wakefield Green, 117.
 Walcheren Expedition, 244.
 Wales, 27; Conquest of, 98; Union with England, 138.
 Wallace, William, 94.
 Walpole, Robert, 208, 210-213.
 Walworth, Mayor, 104.
 Warbeck, Perkin, 127.
 Warwick, Dudley, Earl of, 189.
 Warwick, Earl of, the "King-maker," 118.
 Warwick, Edward, Earl of, 125.
 Washington, George, 227-229.
 Waterloo, Battle of, 247.
 Wedmore, Peace of, 36.
 Wellington (Arthur Wellesley), Duke of, 232, 238, 242-250, 254-263.
 Wesleyans, 212.
 Wessex, 27, 33.
 Whig, 183.
 White Ship, The, 72.
 Wilberforce, 256.
 Wilkes, John, 225.
 William the Lion, 81.
 William of Normandy, 47; King, 64-68.
 William II., 68-70.
 William III., 193-199.
 William IV., 254-257.
 Wilmington, Earl of, 213.
 Wilton, Battle of, 35.
 Winchester, Treaty of, 75.
 Witena-gemot, 52.
 Wolfe, General, 220-222.
 Wolsey, Thomas, 131-135.
 Worcester, Battle of, 173.
 Wyatt, Sir Thomas, 143.
 Wydlif, John, 103-107.
 York, James, Duke of, 177, 183 (James II.).
 York, Richard, Duke of, 115.
 Yorktown, Capitulation of, 223.

1. 2000

2. 2001

3. 2002

4. 2003

5. 2004

6. 2005

7. 2006

8. 2007

9. 2008

10. 2009

11. 2010

12. 2011

13. 2012

14. 2013

15. 2014

16. 2015

17. 2016

18. 2017

19. 2018

20. 2019

21. 2020

22. 2021

23. 2022

24. 2023

25. 2024

26. 2025

27. 2026

28. 2027

29. 2028

30. 2029

31. 2030

32. 2031

33. 2032

34. 2033

35. 2034

36. 2035

37. 2036

38. 2037

39. 2038

40. 2039

41. 2040

42. 2041

43. 2042

44. 2043

45. 2044

46. 2045

47. 2046

48. 2047

49. 2048

50. 2049

51. 2050

52. 2051

53. 2052

54. 2053

55. 2054

56. 2055

57. 2056

58. 2057

59. 2058

60. 2059

61. 2060

62. 2061

63. 2062

64. 2063

65. 2064

66. 2065

67. 2066

68. 2067

69. 2068

70. 2069

71. 2070

72. 2071

73. 2072

74. 2073

75. 2074

76. 2075

77. 2076

78. 2077

79. 2078

80. 2079

81. 2080

82. 2081

83. 2082

84. 2083

85. 2084

86. 2085

87. 2086

88. 2087

89. 2088

90. 2089

91. 2090

92. 2091

93. 2092

94. 2093

95. 2094

96. 2095

97. 2096

98. 2097

99. 2098

100. 2099

101. 2100

102. 2101

103. 2102

104. 2103

105. 2104

106. 2105

107. 2106

108. 2107

109. 2108

110. 2109

111. 2110

112. 2111

113. 2112

114. 2113

115. 2114

116. 2115

117. 2116

118. 2117

119. 2118

120. 2119

121. 2120

122. 2121

123. 2122

124. 2123

125. 2124

126. 2125

127. 2126

128. 2127

129. 2128

130. 2129

131. 2130

132. 2131

133. 2132

134. 2133

135. 2134

136. 2135

137. 2136

138. 2137

139. 2138

140. 2139

141. 2140

142. 2141

143. 2142

144. 2143

145. 2144

146. 2145

147. 2146

148. 2147

149. 2148

150. 2149

151. 2150

152. 2151

153. 2152

154. 2153

155. 2154

156. 2155

157. 2156

158. 2157

159. 2158

160. 2159

161. 2160

162. 2161

163. 2162

164. 2163

165. 2164

166. 2165

167. 2166

168. 2167

169. 2168

170. 2169

171. 2170

172. 2171

173. 2172

174. 2173

175. 2174

176. 2175

177. 2176

178. 2177

179. 2178

180. 2179

181. 2180

182. 2181

183. 2182

184. 2183

185. 2184

186. 2185

187. 2186

188. 2187

189. 2188

190. 2189

191. 2190

192. 2191

193. 2192

194. 2193

195. 2194

196. 2195

197. 2196

198. 2197

199. 2198

200. 2199

201. 2200

202. 2201

203. 2202

204. 2203

205. 2204

206. 2205

207. 2206

208. 2207

209. 2208

210. 2209

211. 2210

212. 2211

213. 2212

214. 2213

215. 2214

216. 2215

217. 2216

218. 2217

219. 2218

220. 2219

221. 2220

222. 2221

223. 2222

224. 2223

225. 2224

226. 2225

227. 2226

228. 2227

229. 2228

230. 2229

231. 2230

232. 2231

233. 2232

234. 2233

235. 2234

236. 2235

237. 2236

238. 2237

239. 2238

240. 2239

241. 2240

242. 2241

243. 2242

244. 2243

245. 2244

246. 2245

247. 2246

248. 2247

249. 2248

250. 2249

251. 2250

252. 2251

253. 2252

254. 2253

255. 2254

256. 2255

257. 2256

258. 2257

259. 2258

260. 2259

261. 2260

262. 2261

263. 2262

264. 2263

265. 2264

266. 2265

267. 2266

268. 2267

269. 2268

270. 2269

271. 2270

272. 2271

273. 2272

274. 2273

275. 2274

276. 2275

277. 2276

278. 2277

279. 2278

280. 2279

281. 2280

282. 2281

283. 2282

284. 2283

285. 2284

286. 2285

287. 2286

288. 2287

289. 2288

290. 2289

291. 2290

292. 2291

293. 2292

